



# COLLOQUIAL MALAY

A Complete Language Course

Zaharah Othman and Sutanto Atmosumarto





**Colloquial Malay** is easy to use and completely up to date!

Specially written by experienced teachers for self-study or class use, the course offers you a step-by-step approach to written and spoken Malay. No prior knowledge of the language is required.

What makes **Colloquial Malay** your best choice in personal language learning?

- **interactive** – lots of exercises for regular practice
- **clear** – concise grammar notes
- **practical** – useful vocabulary and pronunciation guide
- **complete** – including answer key and special reference section

By the end of this rewarding course you will be able to communicate confidently and effectively in Malay in a broad range of everyday situations.

Two 60-minute cassettes are available to accompany **Colloquial Malay**. Recorded by native Malay speakers, these cassettes can be used on any audio system and complement the book, helping you with pronunciation and listening skills.

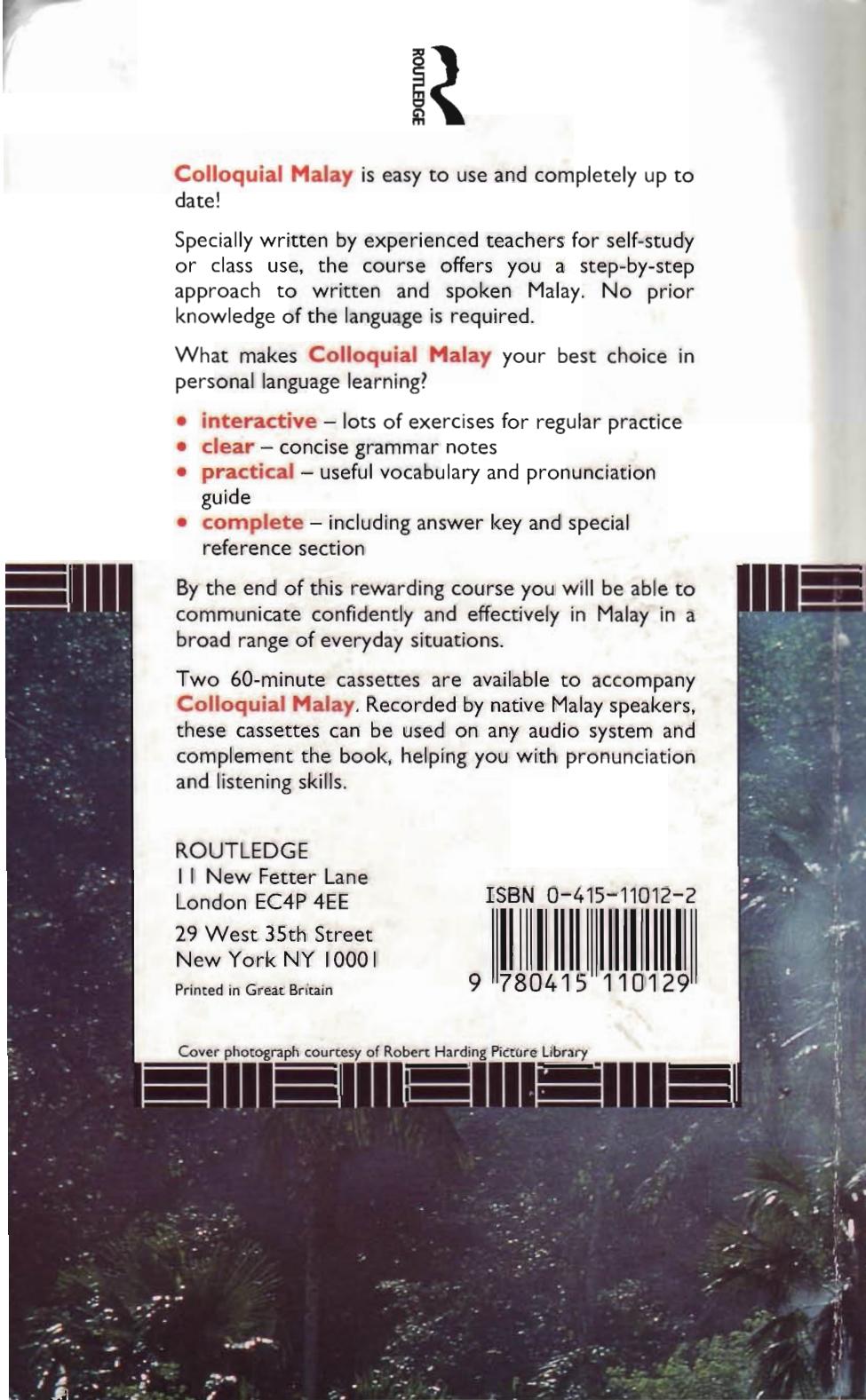
ROUTLEDGE  
11 New Fetter Lane  
London EC4P 4EE  
29 West 35th Street  
New York NY 10001  
Printed in Great Britain

ISBN 0-415-11012-2



9 780415 110129

Cover photograph courtesy of Robert Harding Picture Library



### **The Colloquial Series**

The following languages are available in the Colloquial series:

- |                                       |                            |
|---------------------------------------|----------------------------|
| * Albanian                            | * Indonesian               |
| * Amharic                             | * Italian                  |
| * Arabic (Levantine)                  | * Japanese                 |
| * Arabic of Egypt                     | * Malay                    |
| * Arabic of the Gulf and Saudi Arabia | * Norwegian                |
| * Bulgarian                           | * Panjabi                  |
| * Cambodian                           | * Persian                  |
| * Cantonese                           | * Polish                   |
| * Chinese                             | Portuguese                 |
| * Czech                               | * Romanian                 |
| * Danish                              | * Russian                  |
| * Dutch                               | * Serbo-Croat              |
| * English                             | * Spanish                  |
| * Estonian                            | * Spanish of Latin America |
| * French                              | * Swedish                  |
| German                                | * Thai                     |
| * Greek                               | * Turkish                  |
| * Gujarati                            | * Ukrainian                |
| * Hungarian                           | * Vietnamese               |

\* Accompanying cassette(s) available

# **Colloquial Malay**

## **A Complete Language Course**

**Zaharah Othman and Sutanto Atmosumarto**



**London and New York**

# Contents

First published 1995

by Routledge

11 New Fetter Lane, London EC4P 4EE

Simultaneously published in the USA and Canada

by Routledge

29 West 35th Street, New York, NY 10001

© 1995 Zaharah Othman and Sutanto Atmosumarto

Typeset in Times Ten by Florencetype Ltd, Stoodleigh, Devon

Printed and bound in England by Clay Ltd, St Ives plc

All rights reserved. No part of this book may be reprinted or reproduced or utilized in any form or by any electronic, mechanical, or other means, now known or hereafter invented, including photocopying and recording, or in any information storage or retrieval system, without permission in writing from the publishers.

*British Library Cataloguing in Publication Data*

A catalogue record for this book is available from the British Library

*Library of Congress Cataloguing in Publication Data*

A catalogue record for this book has been requested

ISBN 0-415-11012-2 (book)

ISBN 0-415-11013-0 (cassettes)

ISBN 0-415-11014-9 (book and cassettes course)

<b>Malay transcription and pronunciation</b>	<b>1</b>
<b>1 Nama saya John Stanton</b>	<b>12</b>
My name is John Stanton	
<b>2 Ini bukan anak Susan</b>	<b>22</b>
This is not Susan's child	
<b>3 Ada berapa murid dalam Darjah Satu?</b>	<b>35</b>
How many pupils are there in Standard One?	
<b>4 Di mana Tugu Negara?</b>	<b>50</b>
Where is the National Monument?	
<b>5 Bagaimana rumah anda yang baru?</b>	<b>66</b>
How's your new house?	
<b>6 Anda suka berjalan?</b>	<b>76</b>
Do you like walking?	
<b>7 Hari ini berapa haribulan?</b>	<b>88</b>
What is today's date?	
<b>8 Menunggu siapa?</b>	<b>102</b>
Who are you waiting for?	
<b>9 Kembali ke kolej</b>	<b>115</b>
Back to college	
<b>10 Pembangunan di Malaysia</b>	<b>129</b>
Development in Malaysia	
<b>11 Surat saya sudah ditaip?</b>	<b>143</b>
Has my letter been typed?	
<b>12 Tolong ambilkan saya surat</b>	<b>152</b>
Please get me the letters	
<b>13 Mana yang lebih baik?</b>	<b>164</b>
Which is better?	

<b>14 Ramai orang mengerumuni kawasan rumah itu</b>	
Many people gathered in the compound	177
<b>15 Ayam terlepas keluar</b>	
The chickens have escaped	191
<b>16 Bermaaf-maafan di Hari Raya</b>	
Asking for forgiveness on the Day of Eid	207
<b>Grammar summary</b>	225
<b>Key to the exercises</b>	243
<b>Malay–English glossary</b>	273

# Malay transcription and pronunciation

For speakers of European languages, Bahasa Melayu (the Malay language) is perhaps among the easiest of oriental languages to learn, mainly because Malay is written in roman characters. Moreover all syllables are pronounced almost equally and it is not a tonal language.

The basic intonation of Malay (the ‘music of the language’) is conventional, that is, it uses a rising intonation for yes–no questions and a falling intonation for *who*, *what*, etc. questions and statements, just like English.

Pronunciation, however, can be a problem. There are five vowels in Malay and none of them has an exact equivalent in English. Of the twenty-four consonants, six – namely /f/, /m/, /n/, /l/, /s/ and /y/ – can be pronounced roughly the same as English. In the following section, however, the Malay sounds are described in terms of the closest English sounds. The English referred to is Standard British English.

## Word stress

In Malay a word is segmented into syllables, all of which receive almost equal stress, e.g. **ma/kan** (two syllables), **mi/nu/man** (three), **per/kah/wi/nan** (four), etc.

A sequence of stresses and non-stresses causes fluctuation(s) in utterance. In a stream of English speech, unstressed syllables are slurred or pronounced almost inaudibly whilst the stressed ones are accented, hence creating a wave of contractions. This is not the case with Malay speech. Because all syllables have to be pronounced almost equally, one by one, a sentence in Malay takes a longer time to read or say compared with an English sentence. However, Malay speakers have a way of cutting or dropping a

syllable or even a word which they find disposable in an utterance. Here are some examples:

<i>full/formal form</i>	<i>short form</i>
<b>tetapi</b> ('but')	<b>tapi</b>
<b>Saudara hendak ke mana?</b> (‘Where do you want to go?’)	<b>Nak ke mana?</b>
<b>masuk ke dalam bilik</b> (‘to enter the room’)	<b>masuk bilik</b>
<b>bukan</b> (question tag)	<b>kan</b>
<b>Saudara mahu makan apa?</b> (‘What do you want to eat?’)	<b>Mau makan apa?</b>

Also the prefix **me** attached to a verb is often partially chopped off. Only the root verb is used. For example:

<b>Dia memukul gendang.</b> (‘He is beating the drum.’)	<b>Dia pukul gendang.</b>
<b>Saya hendak menulis surat.</b> (‘I want to write a letter.’)	<b>Saya nak tulis surat.</b>
<b>Dia mencuci baju</b> (‘She is washing clothes.’)	<b>Dia cuci baju.</b>

## Intonation

In normal speech one can distinguish four levels of pitch: very low (symbolized by 1); low, which is the usual voice level at the beginning of an utterance (2); high (3) and very high (4). A varied combination of these pitch levels, plus a pause, makes up the intonation of an utterance. It should not be much of a problem for an English speaker to learn basic Malay intonation because it is similar to that of English:

### Statements (falling intonation)

<b>Saya / makan.</b> 2 3 3 1	I'm eating.
<b>Orang itu / minum susu.</b> 2 2 31 / 2 2 3 1	That person is drinking milk.
<b>Dia / tidak mau duduk.</b> 2 3 / 2 2 2 2 3 1	He doesn't want to sit.

### Yes–No questions (rising intonation)

<b>Orang itu / datang?</b> 2 2 23 / 2 3	The man came?
<b>Datangkah / orang itu?</b> 2 2 3 / 2 2 23	Did the man come?

### 'Who', 'what' etc. questions (falling intonation)

<b>Bila / orang itu / pergi?</b> 2 3 / 2 2 23 / 3 1	When did the man go?
<b>Apa / kerja anda?</b> 2 3 / 2 2 3 1	What's your job?
<b>Siapa / menulis surat itu?</b> 2 23 / 2 2 2 23 31	Who wrote that letter?
<b>Saudara / makan apa?</b> 2 23 / 2 2 31	What are you eating?

## Reading and writing

Let's note the definition of the linguistic word ‘phoneme’. A phoneme is a minimal distinctive sound unit, sufficient to distinguish a word from one otherwise similar. For example /t/ in *time* and /d/ in *dime* are two distinctive sound units or phonemes. Similarly /i:/ in *deed* and /ɪ/ in *did* are two different vowel phonemes.

English phonemic transcription is very different from the regular writing – the former is for linguists and the latter is for everybody. In English, words with the same vowel sounds can be written in very different ways, for example the phoneme /eɪ/ is in the words *make*, *weight*, *plain*, all of which, though pronounced in a similar fashion, are spelt quite differently.

There is a more consistent relationship between Malay phonemes and their written forms. Normally, for one Malay phoneme there is one written form, namely one of the letters in the Latin alphabet. This applies to vowels as well as to consonants. In Malay it is the consistency of the one-to-one relationship between sound and symbol that makes the reading and writing of the language relatively straightforward. There is therefore no problem with spelling.

## Pronunciation

In Malay, there are five basic vowel phonemes: /a/, /e/, /i/, /o/, and /u/. Diphthongs or glides are made by combining one with another.

### Vowels

#### /a/

The Malay /a/ is pronounced in two ways depending on its position. When **a** is in word-initial position (which is normally accented) or when it is between two consonants, it is pronounced like the *a* in the English word *father*:

<b>taman</b>	garden	<b>makan</b>	eat
<b>banyak</b>	many/much	<b>dapak</b>	can/get
<b>balas</b>	reply	<b>bayar</b>	pay
<b>akar</b>	root		

The second way to pronounce **a** occurs in word-final position, in which case it is pronounced as *a* in the English word *china*. In this position, **a** is usually unaccented:

<b>ada</b>	to exist/to have	<b>bahawa</b>	that
<b>apa</b>	what	<b>tanda</b>	sign
<b>acara</b>	programme	<b>kata</b>	word

Note: **a** can combine with **i** or **u** to produce the diphthongs **ai** (as in the English *my* and *tie*) and **au** (as in the English *cow* and *bow*):

<b>air</b>	water	<b>haus</b>	thirsty
<b>cair</b>	watery	<b>maut</b>	death
<b>lain</b>	different	<b>laut</b>	sea
<b>kait</b>	hook	<b>daun</b>	leaf

#### /e/

The Malay /e/ has two different sounds. One is pronounced like the English *a* in *ago* and *again*. The other sounds somewhere between the *e* in *bed* and the *a* in *bad*.

<i>e</i> in <b>ago</b>		<i>e</i> between <b>bed</b> and <b>bad</b>	
<b>emas</b>	gold	<b>enak</b>	delicious
<b>kertas</b>	paper	<b>elak</b>	avoid

<b>serbu</b>	attack	<b>beza</b>	differ
<b>entah</b>	don't know	<b>elok</b>	nice
<b>beras</b>	rice	<b>ejaan</b>	spelling

#### /i/

The Malay /i/ is pronounced much like the English vowel sound in *feet*, *meat* and *be*:

<b>itu</b>	that	<b>beli</b>	buy
<b>ikan</b>	fish	<b>beri</b>	give
<b>kira</b>	count	<b>sunyi</b>	quiet
<b>kita</b>	we	<b>mandi</b>	bathe
<b>gila</b>	mad	<b>tinggal</b>	stay

Note: The **i** can combine with **u** or **o** to produce diphthongs **iu** (no English equivalent) and **io** (as in the English *kiosk*).

<i>iu</i>		<i>io</i>	
<b>tiup</b>	blow	<b>biola</b>	violin
<b>siul</b>	whistle	<b>Tioman</b>	(an island)
<b>cium</b>	kiss		
<b>liur</b>	saliva		

#### /o/

The Malay /o/ is different from the English /o/. Generally the English /o/ in an open syllable is long, as if being followed by *u* at the end whereas the Malay /o/ is short, the nearest to English being like the *o* in *go* and *so*. In a closed syllable the Malay /o/ is very much like the vowel sound in *more*, *saw* or *door*.

(An open syllable has a vowel ending the syllable. A closed syllable has a consonant ending the syllable, for example, in **ti/dur** ('to sleep'), the first syllable **ti** is open and the second syllable **dur** is closed.)

<b>so/to</b>	soup	<b>kotor</b>	dirty
<b>ko/ko</b>	cocoa	<b>botol</b>	bottle
<b>kuno</b>	old	<b>kosong</b>	empty
		<b>tonton</b>	to watch

Note: If there are two **os** in a word, both should be pronounced the same. If in a word one **o** is in an open syllable and the other in a closed syllable, the **o** in the closed syllable is dominant. So both **os** in each word in the right-hand column above are pronounced as the vowel sound in *more*, *saw* and *door*.

## /u/

The Malay /u/ in an open syllable is pronounced like the English *oo* in *tooth*, *boom* or *shoot*. All **us** in the two columns below are pronounced the same.

<b>buku</b>	book	<b>dulu</b>	first, before
<b>susu</b>	milk	<b>suhu</b>	temperature
<b>cucu</b>	grandchildren	<b>sudu</b>	spoon
<b>kuku</b>	fingernail	<b>tuju</b>	towards

In a closed syllable /u/ is pronounced much like the Malay short /o/ above. This applies to the second syllable of the words below. The /u/ in the first syllable, however, is pronounced long as in *tooth*, *boom* and *shoot* above.

<b>tumpul</b>	blunt	<b>gunung</b>	mountain
<b>musuh</b>	enemy	<b>umum</b>	public
<b>urus</b>	to manage	<b>untuk</b>	for
<b>sudut</b>	corner	<b>masuk</b>	enter

The **u** can combine with **a** to produce the diphthong **ua** (no English equivalent):

<b>muat</b>	load	<b>suatu</b>	a or an
<b>kuat</b>	strong	<b>buat</b>	make
<b>buah</b>	fruit	<b>suara</b>	voice
<b>kuasa</b>	power	<b>suami</b>	husband

## Consonants

There are twenty-four consonants in Malay. A few technical terms have to be used to describe their pronunciation.

<i>aspirated</i>	with a puff of air
<i>voiced/voiceless</i>	with/without vibration of the vocal cords in the Adam's apple
<i>unreleased</i>	no explosion in the production of /t/, /d/, /p/, /b/, /k/, /g/ in the final position

## /t/ and /d/

Unlike the English /t/, the Malay /t/ is not aspirated when it occurs in syllable-initial position (no puff of air) like the English sound /t/ in *time*. As in English, the Malay /d/ is the counterpart of /t/: /d/ is voiced whereas /t/ is voiceless. Note the contrast of meaning when one replaces the other in the following pairs of words:

### Initial position

<b>tari</b>	dance	<b>dari</b>	from
<b>tahan</b>	endure	<b>dahan</b>	branch
<b>tua</b>	old	<b>dua</b>	two
<b>titik</b>	dot	<b>didik</b>	teach
<b>alam</b>	tray	<b>dalam</b>	inside

### Final position

/d/ is usually devoiced (voiceless) when it occurs at the end of a word/syllable, whereas /t/ is pronounced unreleased.

<b>abad</b>	century	<b>cepat</b>	quick
<b>murid</b>	pupil	<b>tempat</b>	place
<b>Ahad</b>	Sunday	<b>sempit</b>	narrow
<b>abjad</b>	alphabet	<b>rumput</b>	grass

## /p/ and /b/

Both bilabial sounds, as in English, /p/ is voiceless and /b/ is voiced. The main feature of Malay /p/ is that, unlike the English sound /p/ in *pin*, it is never aspirated. It is also unreleased when it occurs in the final position in a word. As in English, in Malay /b/ is the counterpart of /p/. The /b/ is voiced whereas /p/ is voiceless. Note the contrast of meaning in the following pairs of word when /p/ is replaced by /b/ or vice versa:

<b>pagi</b>	morning	<b>bagi</b>	for
<b>pedas</b>	hot	<b>bedah</b>	operate
<b>parang</b>	large knife	<b>barang</b>	thing
<b>puluh</b>	ten	<b>buluh</b>	bamboo
<b>palang</b>	cross	<b>balang</b>	big bottle

In the final position in a word, both /p/ and /b/ are pronounced unreleased.

<b>tetap</b>	constant	<b>biadab</b>	rude
<b>lengkap</b>	complete	<b>sebab</b>	because
<b>sikap</b>	attitude	<b>bab</b>	chapter
<b>cukup</b>	enough	<b>lembab</b>	damp
<b>tutup</b>	close	<b>Arab</b>	Arab

### /k/ and /g/

When the Malay /k/ occurs initially it is different from the English /k/ in that it is not aspirated. In a final position /k/ is pronounced unreleased, making it into a glottal stop. As in English, the Malay /g/ is the counterpart of /k/: the /g/ is voiced whereas /k/ is voiceless. In initial position the pronunciation of Malay /g/ is very much like the English /g/ in *game*. Note the contrast of meaning in the following pairs of words when /k/ is substituted by /g/ or vice versa:

<b>kelas</b>	class	<b>gelas</b>	glass
<b>kakak</b>	sister	<b>gagak</b>	crow
<b>kalah</b>	defeated	<b>galah</b>	pole
<b>karang</b>	compose	<b>garang</b>	fierce

/k/ in syllable-final position is pronounced unreleased or serves as a glottal stop.

<b>anak</b>	child	<b>busuk</b>	rotten
<b>adik</b>	younger sibling	<b>mogok</b>	to strike
<b>selidik</b>	investigate	<b>pokok</b>	tree

/g/ does not occur in syllable-final position.

### /c/ and /j/

Malay /c/ is pronounced much like the English *ch* in *chair*, *cheat* or *cheese*. The Malay /j/ is pronounced much like the English *j* in *Jack* or *Jill*. The difference between them is that /j/ is voiced whereas /c/ is voiceless. C never occurs in the final position. Note the contrast of meaning in the following pairs of words when /c/ is replaced by /j/ or vice versa:

<b>cari</b>	find	<b>jari</b>	finger
<b>cucur</b>	cake	<b>jujur</b>	honest
<b>acar</b>	pickle	<b>ajar</b>	teach

### /h/

The Malay /h/ is pronounced very much like the English /h/ in *hen*, *home* or *hay*. It is found in initial, medial and final positions. Attention needs to be drawn to the fact that in the final position the /h/ must still be pronounced audibly, otherwise the meaning changes:

<b>guru</b>	teacher	<b>guruh</b>	thunder
<b>buru</b>	to hunt	<b>buruh</b>	labour
<b>dara</b>	virgin	<b>darah</b>	blood
<b>muda</b>	young	<b>mudah</b>	easy
<b>kera</b>	monkey	<b>kerah</b>	to ‘mobilise’
<b>tua</b>	old	<b>tuah</b>	good fortune

In the medial position, flanked by two different vowels, the /h/ is optionally audible:

<i>written</i>	<i>spoken</i>	<i>meaning</i>
<b>tahu</b>	<b>tau</b>	to know
<b>pahit</b>	<b>pait</b>	bitter
<b>mahu</b>	<b>mau</b>	to want
<b>dahi</b>	<b>dai</b>	forehead

When **h** is flanked on both sides by the same vowel, the /h/ is clearly pronounced:

<b>sihir</b>	witchcraft	<b>mohon</b>	request
<b>leher</b>	neck	<b>dahan</b>	branch

### /ng/

These two letters represent one sound. It is pronounced much like the English *ng* in *ring* or *sing*. The /ng/ in the initial and medial positions is difficult for foreign learners.

<i>initial position</i>	<i>medial position</i>
<b>ngeri</b>	fear
<b>ngantuk</b>	sleepy
<b>nganga</b>	to open the mouth wide
<i>final position</i>	
<b>terbang</b>	fly
<b>barang</b>	thing
<b>datang</b>	to come
<b>pulang</b>	to return
<b>hilang</b>	to lose
<b>abang</b>	big brother

## Combined /ng/ and /g/

The three-letter combination **ngg** should be pronounced very much like the English *ng* in *angle*, *congress* and *tango*.

<b>ganggu</b>	to disturb	<b>tunggu</b>	to wait
<b>panggung</b>	cinema	<b>bangga</b>	to be proud of
<b>singgah</b>	to stop over		

## /ny/

The two letters **ny** represent one phonemic unit. It is pronounced much like the English *ny* in *canyon* and *Kenya*.

<b>nyanyi</b>	to sing	<b>nyamuk</b>	mosquito
<b>tanya</b>	to ask	<b>kenyang</b>	full
<b>banyak</b>	many	<b>sunyi</b>	quiet

## /r/

The Malay /r/ is similar to the English /r/, although it should be rolled very slightly when in syllable-final position.

<i>initial position</i>	<i>syllable-cluster</i>	<i>syllable-final</i>
<b>rasa</b>	<b>praktik</b>	<b>sabar</b>
<b>rumah</b>	<b>drama</b>	<b>air</b>
<b>ramah</b>	<b>pra</b>	<b>khabar</b>
<b>roda</b>	<b>pro</b>	<b>tukar</b>

## /w/

The Malay /w/ differs from the English /w/ in that it is pronounced with much less rounding of the lips.

<b>wajib</b>	obligatory	<b>warna</b>	colour
<b>wanita</b>	women	<b>wayang</b>	film show
<b>waktu</b>	time	<b>walaupun</b>	even if
<b>warkah</b>	letter	<b>warisan</b>	heritage

## /kh/

The two letters **kh** are represented by one phonemic unit /kh/. It is pronounced like *ch* in the Scottish *loch*. It occurs at both the

beginning and the end of a syllable. Many of the following words are originally from Arabic.

<i>initial</i>		<i>final</i>	
<b>kuatir</b>	worried	<b>tarikh</b>	date
<b>khabar</b>	news	<b>akhirat</b>	end of the world
<b>khutbah</b>	sermon	<b>makhluk</b>	creature

## /m/, /n/, /l/, /s/, /sy/, /f/, /v/ and /y/

The remaining consonants **m**, **n**, **l**, **s**, **sy**, **f**, **v** and **y** are phonemically similar to their counterparts in English, though never quite the same.

	<i>as in English</i>	<i>Malay examples</i>
/m/	<i>mother</i>	<b>makan</b> , <b>minum</b> , <b>main</b> , <b>marah</b>
/n/	<i>no</i>	<b>nama</b> , <b>nasi</b> , <b>nada</b> , <b>niat</b> , <b>nombor</b>
/l/	<i>lip</i>	<b>lupa</b> , <b>lepas</b> , <b>laku</b> , <b>lampu</b> , <b>lapar</b>
/s/	<i>say</i>	<b>saya</b> , <b>siapa</b> , <b>asap</b> , <b>tugas</b> , <b>sepi</b>
/sy/	<i>she</i>	<b>syukur</b> , <b>syurga</b> , <b>syarat</b> , <b>isyarat</b>
/f/	<i>fun</i>	<b>fasal</b> , <b>fasih</b> , <b>fajar</b>
/v/	<i>television</i>	<b>televisyen</b>
/y/	<i>yet</i>	<b>yang</b> , <b>daya</b> , <b>saya</b>

## Bahasa baku

There is an official move to standardise Malay pronunciation. This standard dialect is known as **bahasa baku**. In **bahasa baku**, for example, **a** in final position is pronounced as the *a* in *star*, rather than the *a* in *china*. However, please note that everyday Malay pronunciation has been used throughout this book and the accompanying cassettes.

# 1 Nama saya John Stanton

## My name is John Stanton

In this lesson you will learn about:

- Personal and possessive pronouns (i.e. 'I', 'my', 'you/your', etc.)
- Compound nouns
- Simple questions using **apa** ('what') and **siapa** ('who')
- The phrases **maaf** and **apa khabar**

### Nama saya John Stanton

*John Stanton is at a Malaysian function, where he finds himself a total stranger. He gets himself a drink and decides to get to know a few people*

- JS: Apa khabar? **Nama saya** John Stanton. Saya orang Inggeris. Saya **pegawai bank**.  
 S: Khabar baik, terima kasih. Saya Siti dan **saya setiausaha**.  
 JS: Maafkan saya, nama anda siapa?  
 AB: Saya Ahmad. Saya **pengurus kedai pakaian**.  
 JS: Dan ini . . . isteri anda?  
 AB: Ya, **ini isteri saya**, Aishah. Dia bekerja di pejabat pos. Itu anak lelaki saya, Abdul. Dia bekerja dengan saya. Abdul, ini John Stanton.  
 JS: Apa khabar, Abdul?

### Vocabulary

<b>apa</b>	what	<b>baik</b>	fine/good
<b>apa khabar</b>	(lit.) What news?	<b>nama</b>	name
	How are you?	<b>saya</b>	I/me/my
<b>khabar baik</b>	(lit.) good news	<b>orang</b>	people/person

<b>terima kasih</b>	thank you	<b>itu</b>	that
<b>pegawai</b>	officer	<b>isteri</b>	wife
<b>maaf</b>	excuse me	<b>anak</b>	child
<b>anda</b>	you/your/yours	<b>anak lelaki</b>	son
<b>siapa</b>	who	<b>Inggeris</b>	English
<b>kedai</b>	shop	<b>dia</b>	he/him/his she/her/hers
<b>dan</b>	and	<b>di</b>	at/in
<b>ya</b>	yes	<b>pejabat</b>	office
<b>pos</b>	post	<b>bekerja</b>	to work
<b>dengan</b>	with	<b>pengurus</b>	manager
<b>pakaian</b>	clothes/clothing	<b>setiausaha</b>	secretary
<b>ini</b>	this		

### My name is John Stanton

- JS: How are you? My name is John Stanton. I am English. I am a bank officer.  
 S: Fine, thank you. I am Siti and I am a secretary.  
 JS: Excuse me, what is your name?  
 AB: I am Ahmad. I am a manager of a clothes shop.  
 JS: And this . . . is your wife?  
 AB: Yes, this is my wife Aishah. She works at the post office. That is my son, Abdul. He works with me. Abdul, this is John Stanton.  
 JS: How are you, Abdul?

### Language points

#### Personal and possessive pronouns

In Malay, the same form is used for both personal (e.g. 'I', 'you') and possessive (e.g. 'my', 'your') pronouns:

<b>saya</b>	I, me, my
<b>anda</b>	you, your
<b>dia</b>	he, him, his she, her
<b>kami</b>	we, our (excluding the person spoken to)
<b>kita</b>	we, our (includes the person spoken to)
<b>mereka</b>	they, their, them

## Examples

<b>Saya setiausaha.</b>	I am a secretary.
<b>Dia bekerja dengan saya.</b>	He works with <i>me</i> .
<b>Ini kedai saya.</b>	This is <i>my</i> shop.
<b>Anda pengurus.</b>	You are a manager.
<b>Ini kerusi anda.</b>	This is <i>your</i> chair.

For more on personal pronouns, see Lesson 3.

subject	noun predicate	subject	noun predicate
<b>Ini</b>	<b>Abdul</b>	This is	Abdul.
<b>Dia</b>	<b>pengurus</b>	He is	a manager.
<b>Itu</b>	<b>Aishah</b>	That is	Aishah.

As you can see from the examples above, colloquial Malay sometimes dispenses with the use of the verb ‘to be’ and the articles (i.e. ‘a’/‘an’) as used in the English language. This will be discussed further in Lesson 4.

## Compound nouns

A noun can be qualified by another noun or nouns to produce a compound noun. In English the qualifiers come before the noun they modify but in Malay it is the reverse. The rule is, if the English word order is 1, 2, 3, then the sentence in Malay is 3, 2, 1:

my name (1, 2)	<b>nama saya</b> (2, 1)
my wife (1, 2)	<b>isteri saya</b> (2, 1)
bank officer (1, 2)	<b>pegawai bank</b> (2, 1)
clothes shop manager (1, 2, 3)	<b>pengurus kedai pakaian</b> (3, 2, 1)
post office clerk (1, 2, 3)	<b>kerani pejabat pos</b> (3, 2, 1)

This rule often applies to verbs and adjectives which serve as the qualifier (for the noun):

noun	verb	noun	adjective
<b>meja</b>	<b>makan</b>	dining table	
<b>mesin</b>	<b>taip</b>	typewriter	
<b>bilik</b>	<b>tidur</b>	bedroom	
<b>ruang</b>	<b>duduk</b>	lounge	
<b>rumah</b>	<b>rehat</b>	rest house	
		<b>beg</b>	red bag
		<b>rumah</b>	white house
		<b>kopi</b>	black coffee
		<b>budak</b>	clever child
		<b>teh</b>	sweet tea
		<b>merah</b>	
		<b>putih</b>	
		<b>hitam</b>	
		<b>pandai</b>	
		<b>manis</b>	

## Simple questions using ‘what’ and ‘who’

A statement can be changed into a question by the use of **apa** (‘what’) and **siapa** (‘who’) in place of the subject being queried. There are various ways of forming a question, as illustrated below. However, note that, as in English, **apa** is used only when referring to objects and **siapa** for people.

(statement)	<b>Itu buku.</b>	That is a book.
(question)	<b>Itu apa?</b>	(lit.) That is <i>what</i> ?
(alternative)	<b>Apa itu?</b>	What is <i>that</i> ?
answer	<b>Itu buku.</b>	That is a book.
(statement)	<b>Itu buku Inggeris.</b>	That is an English book.
(question)	<b>Itu buku apa?</b>	(lit.) That is <i>what</i> book?
answer	<b>Itu buku Inggeris.</b>	That is an English book.
(statement)	<b>Ini meja makan.</b>	This is a dining table.
(question)	<b>Ini apa?</b>	(lit.) This is <i>what</i> ?
(alternative)	<b>Apa ini?</b>	What is this?
answer	<b>Ini meja makan.</b>	This is a dining table.
(statement)	<b>Ini meja makan.</b>	This is a dining table.
(question)	<b>Ini meja apa?</b>	(lit.) This is <i>what</i> table?
answer	<b>Ini meja makan.</b>	This is a dining table.
(statement)	<b>Ini Aishah.</b>	This is Aishah.
(question)	<b>Ini siapa?</b>	(lit.) This is <i>who</i> ?
(alternative)	<b>Siapa ini?</b>	Who is this?
answer	<b>Ini Aishah.</b>	This is Aishah.
(statement)	<b>Ini anak Aishah.</b>	This is Aishah’s child.
(question)	<b>Ini siapa?</b>	(lit.) This is <i>who</i> ?
(alternative)	<b>Siapa ini?</b>	Who is this?
(alternative)	<b>Ini anak siapa?</b>	(lit.) This child is <i>who</i> (se)?
answer	<b>Ini anak Aishah.</b>	This is Aishah’s child.

## Interrupting and apologizing

When interrupting and apologizing, use the word **maaf**. **Maaf** literally means, ‘forgive’. The phrase **maafkan saya** (‘forgive me’) is also commonly used.

Both of these phrases are equivalent to ‘excuse me’ and ‘sorry’. As in English, they are normally used at the beginning of the sentence:

<b>Maaf, nama anda siapa?</b>	Excuse me, what is your name?
<b>Maafkan saya, anda siapa?</b>	Excuse me, who are you?
<b>Maaf, sekarang pukul berapa?</b>	Excuse me, what is the time now?
<b>Maafkan saya, saya mesti pergi sekarang.</b>	I'm sorry, I must go now.
<b>Maafkan saya, saya terlupa.</b>	I'm sorry, I forgot.
<b>Maaf, boleh saya lalu? terlupa</b>	Sorry, can I pass through? forgot

## Selamat pagi

*John Stanton meets an old friend, Ahmad, while he is doing his shopping. He stops for a chat and asks after Ahmad's family*

- JS: Selamat pagi, Ahmad. Apa khabar?  
AHMAD: Selamat pagi, John. Khabar baik dan anda bagaimana?  
JS: Saya juga sihat, terima kasih. Anak dan isteri sihat?  
AHMAD: Ya, mereka semua sihat. Terima kasih. Mereka di rumah. Bagaimana kerja di pejabat?  
JS: Baik. Oh, maaf, saya mesti pergi sekarang. Selamat tinggal.  
AHMAD: Baiklah, selamat jalan!

### Vocabulary

<b>selamat</b>	(lit) safe	<b>rumah</b>	house/home
<b>pagi</b>	morning	<b>mesti</b>	have to/must
<b>selamat pagi</b>	good morning	<b>sekarang</b>	now
<b>juga</b>	also/too	<b>selamat tinggal</b>	goodbye
<b>sihat</b>	well/fine/healthy	<b>baiklah</b>	all right/okay
<b>selamat jalan</b>	safe journey/farewell	<b>pergi</b>	to go
<b>semua</b>	all	<b>maaf</b>	sorry
<b>bagaimana</b>	how	<b>mereka</b>	they

## Good morning

- JS: Good morning, Ahmad. How are you?  
AHMAD: Good morning, John. I'm fine and how are you?  
JS: I'm well too, thank you. The children and wife are well?  
AHMAD: Yes, they are well. Thank you. They are at home. How's work at the office?

- JS: Fine. Oh, sorry, I must go now. Goodbye.  
AHMAD: All right. Safe journey!

## Language points

### Selamat

**Selamat** on its own means 'safe'. Used in a phrase, it conveys a message of goodwill, whatever the occasion. Here are a few common examples:

- |                                   |   |
|-----------------------------------|---|
| <b>Selamat pagi, Ahmad</b>        | Good morning, Ahmad.                            |
| <b>Selamat tengah hari, Abdul</b> | Good afternoon, Abdul. (from 12 noon to 2 p.m.) |
| <b>Selamat petang, Aishah</b>     | Good afternoon, Aishah. (from 2 p.m. to 6 p.m.) |
| <b>Selamat malam, John</b>        | Good night, John.                               |

Note that **selamat malam** is never used to greet someone in the evening. As in English, it is used to wish someone a good night's sleep or to accompany 'goodbye' at night.

- Selamat tinggal, Ali.** Goodbye, Ali.

**Selamat tinggal** is normally used by the person leaving.

- Selamat jalan.** Safe journey, farewell.

**Selamat jalan** is normally used by the person left behind.

- |                         |                  |
|-------------------------|------------------|
| <b>Selamat datang.</b>  | Welcome!         |
| <b>Selamat makan.</b>   | Enjoy your food. |
| <b>Selamat berjaya.</b> | Good luck.       |

## Exercises

### Exercise 1

Read and try to understand the following sentences. Refer to the word list below for help with any unfamiliar words. Wherever possible, try to infer the meaning from the context.

- 1 Saya Jack Smith. Saya orang Amerika.
- 2 Nama saya Ali. Saya pelajar.

- 3 Ini Samad. Dia kawan saya.  
 4 Itu Henry. Dia kawan dari pejabat.  
 5 Ini Tuan dan Puan Smith. Mereka guru bahasa Inggeris.  
 6 Kami pegawai bank. Nama kami John dan Jane.  
 7 Anda pelajar bahasa Malaysia. Saya juga pelajar bahasa Malaysia. Kita pelajar bahasa Malaysia.

<b>pelajar</b>	student	<b>dari</b>	from
<b>kawan</b>	friend	<b>bahasa</b>	language
<b>guru</b>	teacher		

## Exercise 2

Introduce these people to a newcomer at your local club. The newcomer is Aziz from Singapore. If you have any problems with new words, refer to the list below.

- 1 John Stanton, a bank manager  
 2 Siti, a secretary at a bank  
 3 Mary Jones, an English language teacher  
 4 Gopal, a restaurant manager  
 5 Tan, a clerk at a post office  
 6 John Smith and his wife, Jane, who are both English teachers. They are American. (*lit.:* American persons)  
 7 Anne Johnson, a tourist from England  
 8 Your husband/wife  
 9 Susan, John's daughter

<b>restaurant</b>	<b>restoran</b>
<b>tourist</b>	<b>pelancong</b>
<b>husband</b>	<b>suami</b>
<b>daughter</b>	<b>anak perempuan</b>
<b>clerk</b>	<b>kerani</b>

## Exercise 3

Below are answers; what were the questions that prompted them?

- 1 Saya Susan.  
 2 Itu guru saya.  
 3 Dia setiausaha John Stanton.  
 4 Ini meja makan.  
 5 Nama dia Samy.  
 6 Nama saya Sonny.

- 7 Itu bilik tidur.  
 8 Ini isteri Bakar.  
 9 Mereka pelajar Amerika.

## Exercise 4

Translate these sentences into Malay. Refer to the list of words below if you are in any difficulty.

- 1 Excuse me, what is your name?  
 2 My name is Hassan. I am Asiah's husband.  
 3 We are students here.  
 4 This is a Malaysian restaurant.  
 5 His wife is a doctor at that clinic.  
 6 Who is the manager of this bank?  
 7 Good afternoon. I am Wong, the manager of this hotel.  
 8 Bill is a post office clerk and Mary is a teacher.  
 9 Good morning. I am Susie's friend.  
 10 What is your husband's name?

<b>clinic</b>	<b>klinik</b>	<b>doctor</b>	<b>doktor</b>
<b>hotel</b>	<b>hotel</b>		

## Exercise 5

Use the appropriate phrases for the following occasions:

- 1 when a friend arrives at your home  
 2 when you're leaving a party  
 3 when your wife/husband is leaving on a long journey  
 4 when you meet your friend Anthony in the morning  
 5 when everyone is about to eat  
 6 when your child is sitting for an examination

## Exercise 6

A colleague is busy working on his computer. You would like to interrupt him to ask a few questions. How would you approach him to ask the following:

- 1 the name of his manager  
 2 the name of his manager's wife  
 3 where he lives  
 4 where the manager comes from

5 who the manager's secretary is

live                    **tinggal**  
where                **di mana**

### Exercise 7

Make apologies for the following:

- 1 You have to leave a party.
- 2 You do not know about something that is being asked.
- 3 You're late.
- 4 You forgot someone's name.

know	<b>tahu</b>	forget	<b>lupa</b>
late	<b>lambat</b>	not	<b>tidak, tak</b> ( <i>short form</i> )

### Conversations

The following are a few conversations in colloquial Malay. Study them for understanding first, then read them aloud.

- 1 A: Siapa nama ayah Abdul?  
B: Nama dia Bakar.  
A: Dia bekerja di mana?  
B: Dia bekerja di bank.
- 2 C: Selamat pagi, Tommy.  
D: Selamat pagi, Hassan.  
C: Itu kereta anda?  
D: Ya, itu kereta saya.
- 3 A: Apa khabar, Aishah?  
B: Khabar baik, Susan. Anda juga sihat?  
A: Ya, sihat. Terima kasih. Ini siapa?  
B: Ini anak saya, Fatimah.
- 4 C: Selamat datang, Chan.  
D: Terima kasih. Ini isteri anda?  
C: Oh, ya, maaf. Ini isteri saya, Yen.  
D: Apa khabar?

5 A: Maafkan saya, siapa nama anda?

B: Nama saya Abidin.  
A: Ini kedai anda?  
B: Ya, ini kedai saya. Saya jual buku.

6 C: Siapa pengurus anda?  
D: Pengurus saya Encik Bakar.  
C: Siapa setiausaha pengurus anda?  
D: Setiausaha Encik Bakar ialah Susan.

7 A: Maaf, itu bilik siapa?  
B: Itu bilik tamu  
A: Siapa tamu anda?  
B: Tamu saya, Francis dari England.

8 C: Ini kopi manis.  
D: Anda minum kopi manis?  
C: Ya, saya suka kopi manis.  
D: Saya tidak suka kopi manis.

9 A: Asmah bekerja di mana?  
B: Asmah bekerja di pejabat pos.  
A: Asmah bekerja dengan Atan?  
B: Ya, Asmah dan Atan bekerja di pejabat pos.  
A: Oh, mereka pekerja pejabat pos!

10 C: Karim kerani di bank.  
D: Isteri Karim siapa?  
C: Isteri Karim, Sofiah.  
D: Sofiah bekerja di mana?  
C: Sofiah juga bekerja di bank.

<b>jual</b>	to sell	<b>kopi</b>	coffee
<b>pekerja</b>	employee/worker	<b>manis</b>	sweet (adj)
<b>kereta</b>	car	<b>minum</b>	to drink
<b>buku</b>	book	<b>suka</b>	to like
<b>tamu</b>	guest		

# 2 Ini bukan anak Susan

## This is not Susan's child

### In this lesson you will learn about:

- Negative sentences with **bukan** or **tidak/tak**
- Verbs and tenses
- Questions with yes–no answers
- The phrases **silakan**, **silalah**
- The use of the suffix **lah** after a verb

### Ini bukan anak Susan

Susan is celebrating a homecoming for one of her friends, Annie, who has been abroad for the past twenty years. She has invited some of their very close friends from school who were delighted to meet Annie again, and her four children. It was a very enjoyable moment for Susan and her friends as they watched their children play with each other, just as they had themselves played together more than twenty years ago.

ANNIE: Susah hendak percaya. Kita semua sudah ada anak! Yang pakai baju merah itu anak Susankah?

SUSAN: Itu Suhana. Dia **bukan** anak saya. Dia anak Ramlah. Anak perempuan saya, Zainah **tidak ada** di sini. Dia pergi ke rumah datuknya. Dia akan balik esok.

ANNIE: Ramlah ada anak lelaki?

SUSAN: Ada, tapi dia **bukan budak** lagi. Dia sekarang sudah bekerja. Annie **tak ada** anak lelaki?

ANNIE: Tak. Anak saya semua perempuan.

SUSAN: Anak-anak perempuan Annie **nakal** tak macam Annie dulu?

ANNIE: Nakal juga macam emaknya!

SUSAN: Nasib baik juga anak-anak saya **tidak gemuk** macam saya dulu. Mereka **tak makan** banyak macam saya.

ANNIE: Itu anak bongsu Marykah?

SUSAN: **Bukan**, dia **bukan anak bongsu** Mary. Dia anak Mary yang kedua.

Note: when addressing a person in Malay, the person's name is used. Saying 'you' and 'yours' is almost always avoided.

### Vocabulary

<b>yang</b>	that, which	<b>bongsu</b>	youngest
<b>hendak</b>	to want	<b>percaya</b>	to believe
<b>susah</b>	hard	<b>baju</b>	dress
<b>merah</b>	red	<b>bukan</b>	no/not ( <i>in front of nouns</i> )
<b>datuk</b>	grandparent		
<b>tidak</b>	no/not ( <i>in front of verbs or adjectives</i> )	<b>dulu</b>	before
		<b>gemuk</b>	fat
<b>tak</b>	shorter form of <b>tidak</b> – most commonly used	<b>kedua</b>	second
		<b>pakai</b>	to wear
<b>nakal</b>	naughty	<b>sudah</b>	already
<b>macam</b>	like	<b>banyak</b>	much
<b>ada</b>	to have/to be	<b>esok</b>	tomorrow
		<b>nasib baik</b>	is fortunate

### This is not Susan's child

ANNIE: It's hard to believe. We've all got children! The one in the red dress is Susan's child?

SUSAN: That's Suhana. She's not my child. She's Ramlah's child. My daughter, Zainah is not here. She's gone to her grandparents' house. She will come back tomorrow.

ANNIE: Has Ramlah any sons?

SUSAN: She has, but he is no longer a child. He is now working. Annie hasn't any sons?

ANNIE: No. All my children are girls.

SUSAN: Are your children as naughty as you were?

ANNIE: They are naughty too, like their mother.

SUSAN: It's fortunate that my children are not as fat as I was before. They don't eat as much as I did.

ANNIE: Is that Mary's youngest child?

SUSAN: No. She's not Mary's youngest (child). She's her second child.

## Language points

### Negation

The English ‘does not’/‘is not’/‘was not’ etc. have two equivalents in Malay: **tidak** and **bukan**. The former is used to negate a verb or an adjective, the latter is to negate a noun. Note that **tak** is more commonly used in place of **tidak**.

#### Negating nouns

<b>Saya guru sekolah.</b>	I am a school teacher.
<b>Saya bukan guru sekolah.</b>	I am <i>not</i> a school teacher.
<b>Dia anak abang saya.</b>	She is my brother’s child.
<b>Dia bukan anak abang saya.</b>	She is <i>not</i> my brother’s child.
<b>Itu kereta Mansur.</b>	That is Mansur’s car.
<b>Itu bukan kereta Mansur.</b>	That is <i>not</i> Mansur’s car.

#### Negating verbs

<b>Susan berjalan ke pejabat.</b>	Susan walks to the office.
<b>Susan tidak berjalan ke pejabat.</b>	Susan does <i>not</i> walk to the office.
<b>Mereka makan di restoran.</b>	They ate at the restaurant.
<b>Mereka tidak makan di restoran.</b>	They did <i>not</i> eat at the restaurant.

#### Negating adjectives

<b>Anak itu malas.</b>	The child is lazy.
<b>Anak itu tidak malas.</b>	The child is <i>not</i> lazy.
<b>Kereta itu mahal.</b>	The car is expensive.
<b>Kereta itu tidak mahal.</b>	The car is <i>not</i> expensive.

## Verbs

Unlike English, in spoken Malay the verb does not change its form according to the time referred to.

<b>Saya makan di restoran.</b>	I eat at the restaurant.
<b>Saya sudah makan di restoran.</b>	I have eaten at the restaurant.
<b>Saya sedang makan di restoran.</b>	I am eating at the restaurant.

**Saya akan makan di restoran.** I will eat at the restaurant.

Note that **sudah** for past tense, **sedang** for continuous tense and **akan** for future tense can easily be dropped when there is indication of time elsewhere in the sentence:

**Saya makan di restoran** I ate at the restaurant yesterday.

**kelmarin.**

**Saya makan di restoran esok.** I will be eating at the restaurant tomorrow.

**Dia pulang bulan depan.** He comes back next month.

Compare the English and the Malay versions:

Amran eats all the time. This morning he ate some bread. He is now eating some rice and he will be eating the pudding later in the afternoon.

**Amran makan setiap masa. Pagi tadi dia makan roti. Sekarang dia makan nasi dan dia makan pudding petang nanti.**

### Yes–no questions

A yes–no question is the kind of question that demands the answer ‘yes’ or ‘no’. In Malay, a sentence can be turned into this type of question simply by the tone of the voice. This is particularly the case with spoken Malay where the intonation makes redundant the use of other words which indicate a question.

Sometimes the word **tak** (short for **tidak** (‘not’)) is used after the verb or at the end of the sentence to form a question. Also a suffix **kah** may be used after a noun or a verb to turn a statement into a question:

statement	question
<b>Susan bekerja esok.</b>	<b>Susan bekerja esok?</b>
Susan is working tomorrow.	Is Susan working tomorrow?
<b>Ini anak Susan.</b>	<b>Ini anak Susan?</b>
This is Susan’s child.	Is this Susan’s child?
<b>Ahmad seorang guru.</b>	<b>Ahmad seorang guru?</b>
Ahmad is a teacher.	Is Ahmad a teacher?
	<b>Ahmad seorang gurukah?</b>

## Silakan duduk! Duduklah!

*Mary has toothache, and she turns up at the dentist's without making an appointment*

- MARY: Maaf, saya tidak telefon. Tapi saya perlu jumpa doktor.
- PEN YAMBU TAMU: Tak mengapa. **Silakan duduk.**
- MARY: Terima kasih. Lama tak saya mesti tunggu?
- P.T.: Mungkin tidak.  
(Tidak berapa lama kemudian)
- P.T.: Puan Mary Tan, **silakan masuk sekarang.**
- DOKTOR: Sila masuk Puan Tan. **Duduklah!**
- MARY: Terima kasih.

### Vocabulary

perlu	need	jumpa	to see
Tak mengapa.	It's all right.	duduk	to sit
tunggu	to wait	mungkin	may be
lama	long	mesti	have to, must
telefon	to phone	sekarang	now
tapi (short for tetapi – commonly used when speaking	but		

### Take a seat! Do sit down!

- MARY: *I'm sorry I didn't phone. But I need to see the dentist.*
- RECEPTIONIST: *It's all right. Take a seat.*
- MARY: *Thank you. Do I have long to wait?*
- RECEPTIONIST: *Maybe not.*  
(A few minutes later)
- RECEPTIONIST: *Mrs Mary Tan, please go in.*
- DOCTOR: *Please come in, Mrs Tan. Do sit down!*
- MARY: *Thank you.*

In Malay a dentist is called **doktor gigi** (*lit.* ‘teeth doctor’) and is addressed as ‘doktor’.

## Language points

### Silakan

**Silakan** is a polite form of requesting a person to do something. It is equivalent to the word ‘please’ in English (or even the rather formal ‘do’, as in ‘Do sit down’). The root word is **sila**. The suffix **kan** is used simply to stress the polite nature of the request. **Sila** on its own can be used without causing offence.

<b>Sila/kan duduk!</b>	<i>Please sit down!</i>
<b>Sila/kan masuk!</b>	<i>Please come in!</i>
<b>Sila berdiri!</b>	<i>Please stand!</i>
<b>Sila minum!</b>	<i>Please drink!</i>

Occasionally, **sila** is used with the suffix **lah**. Here, the function is to persuade or to stress the intention. For example, **Silalah makan** meaning ‘please eat’. Although the Malay equivalent of ‘please eat’ is **sila makan**, it is not impolite to drop **sila** and just use the suffix **lah** after **makan**. The intonation used shows that it is a gentle and polite request:

<b>Makanlah.</b>	<i>Do eat.</i>
<b>Tidurlah.</b>	<i>Please go to sleep.</i>
<b>Janganlah.</b>	<i>Please don't.</i>
<b>Jalanlah cepat sedikit.</b>	<i>Please walk a little faster.</i>
<b>Janganlah marah.</b>	<i>Please don't be angry.</i>
<b>Bawalah ibu datang ke rumah.</b>	<i>Do bring your mother to the house.</i>

### Terima kasih and sama-sama



**Terima kasih** (‘thank you’) literally means ‘to receive with love’.

Although **sama** means ‘the same’, **sama-sama** is usually used to mean ‘you’re welcome’ or ‘not at all’ as a response to ‘thank you’:

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| A: <b>Boleh saya bertanya, Pak Cik?</b>    | A: Can I ask a question, Uncle?                    |
| B: <b>Boleh, silakan.</b>                  | B: You can, please go ahead.                       |
| A: <b>Pak Cik tinggal di mana?</b>         | A: Where do you live?                              |
| B: <b>Saya tinggal di Kampung Bahagia.</b> | B: I live in Kampung Bahagia.<br>(Bahagia Village) |
| A: <b>Terima kasih, Pak Cik.</b>           | A: <i>Thank you, Uncle.</i>                        |
| B: <b>Sama-sama.</b>                       | B: <i>Not at all.</i>                              |

**Pak Cik** ('uncle') is normally used to address an elderly man whose name you do not know. Avoiding the word 'you' is a form of respect for the older people in Malay. For an elderly woman, the correct form of address is **Mak Cik**.

## Exercises

### Exercise 1

Fill in the blanks using **bukan** or **tidak/tak**.

- 1 Harris \_\_\_\_\_ pergi ke sekolah hari ini. Dia masih sakit.
- 2 Susan \_\_\_\_\_ adik Mary. Dia kakak Mary.
- 3 Mereka \_\_\_\_\_ lapar sebab mereka sudah makan tadi.
- 4 Dia \_\_\_\_\_ tahu Amir \_\_\_\_\_ ketua pejabat itu.
- 5 Betty anak John? \_\_\_\_\_ Betty \_\_\_\_\_ anak John. Dia anak Tom.
- 6 Saya \_\_\_\_\_ beli kereta baru. Harganya \_\_\_\_\_ mahal.
- 7 Shirley \_\_\_\_\_ gemuk. Dia \_\_\_\_\_ suka makan banyak.
- 8 \_\_\_\_\_ ada orang di rumah Tom. Semuanya sudah pulang.
- 9 Kalau Harry \_\_\_\_\_ datang, siapa gantinya?

<b>masih</b>	still	<b>beli</b>	to buy
<b>lapar</b>	hungry	<b>harga</b>	cost
<b>ketua</b>	head/chief	<b>mahal</b>	expensive
<b>ganti</b>	replace	<b>pulang</b>	to go home
<b>sekolah</b>	school	<b>kalau</b>	if
<b>hari ini</b>	today	<b>datang</b>	to come
<b>adik</b>	younger sibling	<b>sakit</b>	sick/ill
<b>kakak</b>	elder sister	<b>tadi</b>	just now/earlier on
<b>sebab</b>	because	<b>baru</b>	new
<b>makan</b>	to eat		

### Exercise 2

Alison is interviewing Gopal, an applicant for the post of a clerk at the bank. She asks him about his work experience and qualifications. Write out their conversation covering the following points:

Alison wants to know where Gopal was previously employed.  
Gopal replies that he had previously worked as a school clerk.  
Alison wants to know if he was the chief clerk there.

Gopal says he was not.

Alison asks whether he had enjoyed his work there.

Gopal answers yes but he wants to try working in a bank.

Alison wants to know whether Gopal smokes and if he minds others smoking.

Gopal says he doesn't smoke or drink, but he doesn't mind if others do so.

previously	<b>bekerja sebelum</b>	to smoke	<b>merokok</b>
employed as	<b>ini sebagai</b>	others	<b>lain-lain</b>
to enjoy	<b>suka</b>	to mind	
to try	<b>cuba</b>		<b>marah</b>

Remember, questions requiring a 'yes' or 'no' answer can remain in the form of a statement, with a slight change of intonation.

### Exercise 3

Roger Tan has been transferred to a small town where he will be the new editor of the local newspaper. He is taken on a guided tour of the office by Aman, the outgoing editor, before he starts work. Roger is full of enthusiasm and asks a lot of questions about the people he will be working with. Write out their conversation covering the following points:

Roger asks about the lady who sits near the window.

Aman replies that she is Mary Ong.

Roger asks whether she is the columnist for the newspaper.

Aman says yes.

Roger asks whether she is a staff or a freelance journalist.

Aman says she is not a staff but a freelance journalist who writes once a week.

Roger asks about the man who is working on his computer at the end of the room.

Aman replies that he is Azlan.

Roger wants to know whether he is the chief editor.

Aman says no. He adds that the chief editor, Susan, is attending a meeting.

Roger asks about the lady who is walking around with her camera.

Aman says that she is Mary the photographer.

Roger wants to know whether she works every day.

Aman says no. She works only three days a week.

Roger asks who takes photographs on the days Mary is not working.

Aman says Maniam is the other photographer for the newspaper.

woman/lady	<b>wanita</b>	writes	<b>menulis</b>
sits	<b>duduk</b>	once a week	<b>seminggu sekali</b>
near	<b>dekat</b>	staff	<b>kakitangan</b>
window	<b>tingkap</b>	end of the room	<b>hujung bilik</b>
columnist	<b>penulis kolumn</b>	news editor	<b>pengarang berita</b>
freelance journalist	<b>wartawan bebas</b>	meeting	<b>mesyuarat</b>
attending	<b>menghadiri</b>	who	<b>yang</b>
camera	<b>kamera</b>	photographer	<b>juru gambar</b>
every day	<b>setiap hari</b>	photographs	<b>gambar-gambar</b>
newspaper	<b>akhtar</b>		

#### Exercise 4

Rosemary is interviewing a student who has applied for a scholarship to study overseas. Write out the interview, which runs roughly as follows. i Interviewer, c Candidate.

- i: invites C to enter the interviewing room and asks her to sit down.
- c: says thank you.
- i: asks what her name is.
- c: answers that her name is Helen Tan.
- i: asks what her interests are.
- c: replies that she wants to work as a doctor.
- i: asks whether she is interested in the field of science.
- c: says yes.
- i: asks whether her parents are doctors.
- c: says no. She tells her that her parents are teachers.
- i: asks whether she wants to study in America.
- c: says no. She wants to study in England.
- i: asks whether she will work as soon as she passes her examinations.
- c: says yes.

interest(n)	<b>minat</b>	passes	<b>lulus</b>
parents	<b>ibu bapa</b>	examinations	<b>peperiksaan</b>
study(v)	<b>belajar</b>	field (of study)	<b>bidang</b>
as soon as	<b>sebaik saja</b>	science	<b>sains</b>

#### Exercise 5

How would you say the following in Malay using **sila**, **silakan** or **silalah?**

- 1 You invite someone to come to your house for a birthday party.
  - 2 You ask someone to enter the house
  - 3 You want someone to sit down
  - 4 You want someone to eat
  - 5 You want someone to stand up
- |          |                   |
|----------|-------------------|
| birthday | <b>hari jadi.</b> |
| to stand | <b>berdiri</b>    |

#### Exercise 6

What are the following in Malay?

- 1 Thank you. I will come to the party.
- 2 Yes, thank you.
- 3 Where? Here or there?
- 4 Sorry, I don't smoke and I don't drink.
- 5 Yes, thank you. It's delicious.
- 6 Excuse me, can I talk to you?

party	<b>majlis</b>	here	<b>sini</b>
there	<b>sana</b>	delicious	<b>sedap</b>
talk	<b>bercakap</b>		

#### Exercise 7

These are some answers. What were the questions that prompted them?

- 1 Ya, Susan pengurus bank.
- 2 Bukan, Anwar bukan pelajar. Dia sudah bekerja.
- 3 Ya, Amran suami Hasnah.
- 4 Bukan, Peter bukan kerani pejabat. Dia budak pejabat.
- 5 Tidak. Rumah Asmah tidak besar. Rumah dia kecil.
- 6 Ya, dia pergi ke sekolah pagi tadi.
- 7 Tidak, Ariffin tidak datang ke pejabat hari ini.
- 8 Bukan, Lily bukan anak Richard. Dia anak Thomas.
- 9 Tidak, mereka tidak suka makan roti. Mereka suka makan nasi.
- 10 Ya, dia sakit semalam.

<b>budak pejabat</b>	office boy	<b>roti</b>	bread
<b>nasi</b>	(cooked) rice	<b>sakit</b>	ill
<b>besar</b>	big	<b>kecil</b>	small

### Exercise 8

Ahmad is looking for a partner for his catering business. He knows of a number of very interested parties and he wants to know more about them. He asks an old friend Kassim, who knows them all. Ask these questions in Malay, either by changing the tone of your voice or by using the words **tak** and **kah**:

- 1 Is Henry Tan a supplier of fresh fruit?
- 2 Does he export the fruit?
- 3 Is Maniam's instant bread popular?
- 4 Does he supply for parties?
- 5 Does he supply gravy for the bread?
- 6 Is Maniam a reliable supplier?
- 7 Has he got a big staff?

supply	<b>bekal</b>	fresh fruit	<b>buah segar</b>
supplier	<b>pembekal</b>	popular	<b>terkenal</b>
overseas	<b>luar negeri</b>	instant bread	<b>roti segera</b>
gravy	<b>kuah</b>	reliable	<b>boleh dipercayai</b>
export	<b>eksport</b>		

### Exercise 9

Atan was reading a book when the phone rings. At the end of the line was a very familiar voice, but he could not put a name to it. It was in fact Chong, an old acquaintance who had returned after five years in England. Complete the conversation between the two. Use the appropriate words given here: **dari**, **khabar**, **terima kasih**, **bila**, **kerja**, **sila**.

- AMIR: Helo, Amir bercakap.  
 CHONG: Helo, Amir. Apa \_\_\_\_\_?  
 AMIR: Khabar baik? Ini siapa?  
 CHONG: Tak tahukah? Ini kawan lama \_\_\_\_\_ London.  
 AMIR: Ini Chongkah? Selamat pulang. \_\_\_\_\_ balik ke Malaysia?  
 CHONG: Saya sampai di sini minggu lepas.  
 AMIR: Chong sudah dapat \_\_\_\_\_?  
 CHONG: Belum. Saya masih mencari.

AMIR:	_____	datang ke rumah saya.
CHONG:	_____	Saya akan datang esok.
<b>bila</b>	when	<b>selamat pulang</b>
<b>semalam</b>	last night	<b>belum</b>
mencari	to find/to search	<b>minggu lepas</b>
		welcome back not yet last week

### Conversations

Study the following conversations, then read them aloud.

- 1  
 JOHN: Saya John. Anda Simonkah?  
 SIMON: Ya, saya Simon.  
 JOHN: Wanita itu isteri anda?  
 SIMON: Bukan, dia bukan isteri saya. Dia isteri Terry.

- 2  
 HARRY: Siapa itu, Tony?  
 TONY: Itu Encik Kassim.  
 HARRY: Dia pengurus bankkah?  
 TONY: Ya, dia pengurus bank.  
 HARRY: Diakah yang menang golf kelmarin?  
 TONY: Tidak, dia tidak menang golf. Dia kalah.

**menang** to win      **kalah** to lose

- 3  
 MARIAM: Itu kereta siapa?  
 ANNE: Itu kereta saya.  
 MARIAM: Kereta itu mahal, tak?  
 ANNE: Tidak, kereta itu tak mahal. Harganya murah.  
 MARIAM: Anda pandu laju tak?  
 ANNE: Ya, saya suka pandu laju.  
 MARIAM: Anda tidak takutkah?  
 ANNE: Tak, saya tak takut.

**pandu** to drive      **takut** to feel scared  
**laju** fast

- 4  
 IDRIS: Apa khabar, Darus?  
 DARUS: Oh, Idris. Khabar baik. Silalah masuk.  
 IDRIS: Terima kasih.  
 DARUS: Sila duduk. Nanti saya ambil minuman.

IDRIS: Janganlah susah-susah. Saya sudah minum tadi.  
 DARUS: Ah, ini pun kopi. Sila minum.  
 IDRIS: Terima kasih. Saya mahu pergi ke Kuala Lumpur petang ini. Jadi saya mahu ucap selamat tinggal.  
 DARUS: Ya, selamat jalan dan selamat kembali.

<b>minuman</b>	drinks	<b>ambil</b>	to take
<b>ucap</b>	to wish	<b>mahu</b>	to want
<b>janganlah</b>	don't trouble	<b>selamat kembali</b>	safe return
<b>susah-susah</b>	(yourself)	<b>jadi</b>	so

5

DIN: Maaf, Pak Cik. Boleh saya tanya?  
 OMAR: Boleh.  
 DIN: Ini rumah Rahim?  
 OMAR: Ya, ini rumah Rahim.  
 DIN: Rahim yang berkerja di Pejabat Daerah?  
 OMAR: Oh, bukan. Rahim yang bekerja di Pejabat Daerah tak tinggal di sini. Dia tinggal di rumah itu. Rahim yang tinggal di sini bekerja di Pejabat Pos.  
 DIN: Terima kasih, Pak Cik.  
 OMAR: Sama-sama

**boleh** can      **Pejabat Daerah** District Office

### 3 Ada berapa murid dalam Darjah Satu?

**How many pupils are there in Standard One?**

**In this lesson you will learn about:**

- The two meanings of **ada**
- Plural of nouns
- The functions of **yang**
- Numbers

#### **Ada berapa murid dalam Darjah Satu?**

*Mrs Ong has just been appointed the headteacher of the Utama Primary School. On her first day of work, she inspects the classes with one of the senior teachers, Mr Rahman. Mrs Ong wants to know the size of each class*

MRS ONG: Encik Rahman, **ada berapa murid** dalam Darjah Satu?  
 MR RAHMAN: Dalam Darjah Satu **ada dua puluh lima murid**.  
 MRS ONG: Dalam setiap Darjah **ada berapa orang pengawas**?  
 MR RAHMAN: Dalam setiap darjah **ada dua orang pengawas**.  
 MRS ONG: Darjah Dua **ada berapa orang murid**?  
 MR RAHMAN: Dalam Darjah Dua **ada tiga puluh orang murid**.  
 MRS ONG: Dan Darjah Tiga, Empat, Lima dan Enam?  
 MR RAHMAN: Darjah Tiga, Empat dan Lima masing-masing **ada tiga puluh lima** murid dan dalam Darjah Enam **ada dua puluh satu** murid.  
 MRS ONG: Jadi dalam sekolah rendah ini **ada sejumlah seratus lapan puluh satu murid** dan **dua belas orang pengawas** dan **sepuluh orang guru**.

## Vocabulary

<b>Darjah Satu masing-masing</b>	Standard One each	<b>pengawas sekolah rendah</b>	monitor primary school
<b>setiap dalam murid enam seratus</b>	every/each in pupils six one hundred	<b>dua puluh lima tiga tiga puluh empat lima</b>	twenty-five three thirty four five

## How many pupils are there in Standard One?

MRS ONG: *Mr. Rahman, how many pupils are there in Standard One?*

MR RAHMAN: *There are twenty-five pupils in Standard One.*

MRS ONG: *How many monitors are there in every class?*

MR RAHMAN: *There are two monitors in every class.*

MRS ONG: *How many pupils are there in Standard Two?*

MR RAHMAN: *There are thirty pupils in Standard Two.*

MRS ONG: *And how many pupils are there in Standard Three, Four, Five and Six?*

MR RAHMAN: *Standard Three, Four and Five each have thirty-five pupils and there are thirty-one pupils in Standard Six.*

MRS ONG: *So, there is a total of one hundred and eighty-one pupils, twelve monitors and ten teachers in this primary school.*

## Language points

### Ada ('there is/are')

As used in the above conversation **ada** is equivalent to 'there is' or 'there are'. **Ada** can be used at the beginning of the sentence or in the middle of the sentence:

**Ada dua orang guru dalam bilik itu** *There are two teachers in that room.*

**Dalam rumah itu ada dua budak kecil.** *In that house there are two small children.*

**Tidak ada orang dalam pondok itu.** *There is no one in that hut.*

**Di atas pokok itu ada seekor kucing.** *There is a cat on the tree.*

**Tidak ada masalah kalau dia mahu tukar sekolah.** *There's no problems if he wants to change school.*

In the sentences below **ada** functions as the verb 'to be' ('is/are'). In this situation, the use of **ada** is optional because the preposition indicates the location.

<b>Dia (ada) di pejabat.</b>	He is in the office.
<b>Kasut saya (ada) di mana?</b>	Where are my shoes?
<b>(Ada) di dalam bilik.</b>	(It is) in the room.

## Berapa ('how much/how many?')

**Berapa** is a question word which asks about a number or a quantity. To use it, simply slot it into the statement sentence. (For more on this see Lesson 5.)

statement	question
Sekarang pukul sepuluh.	Sekarang pukul berapa?
Ada tujuh hari dalam seminggu.	Ada berapa hari dalam seminggu?
Harga buku itu lapan ringgit.	Harga buku itu berapa?

## Informal personal pronouns

Informal personal pronouns are used between close friends and members of the family. Note the possessive pronouns that derive from them:

**aku (subject) ('I')**

**Aku makan.** *I eat. I ate.*

**ku (possessive) ('my')**

**Siapa ambil kasutku?** *Who took my shoes?*

**kamu (subject) ('you')**

**Kamu malas.** *You are lazy.*

**mu (possessive) ('your')**

**Kakakmu pandai.**

*Your sister is clever.*

**engkau (subject) ('you')**

**Bila engkau balik?**

*When did you come back?*

**kau (possessive) ('your')**

**Isteri kau sihat?**

*Is your wife well?*

Note that other pronouns such as **dia** ('he/she'), **kami/kita** ('we/our') and **mereka** ('they/their') which were dealt with in Lesson 1, can serve as both informal and formal pronouns.

## Dia ada kereta, tapi tak ada lesen

*Mr and Mrs Harris have retired and have three grown-up children. The Harris's circumstances are as follows*

Encik dan Puan Harris sudah **mempunyai** rumah, kereta, tiga anak dan dua cucu. Henry, anak nombor satu, laki-laki, sudah bekerja. Dia **ada** isteri dan dua anak. Dia juga **ada** rumah sendiri.

Harry, anak nombor dua, laki-laki, juga sudah bekerja, tetapi dia **belum ada** rumah. Dia sudah **ada** kereta, tapi **belum ada** lesen.

Hayati, anak nombor tiga, perempuan belum berkahwin, tapi sudah **ada** tunang. Dia masih belajar di universiti.

Keluarga Encik Harris tidak kaya, tapi tidak juga miskin.

### Vocabulary

cucu	grandchildren	<b>mempunyai</b>	to have
<b>rumah sendiri</b>	own house	<b>nomor</b>	number
<b>lesen</b>	licence	<b>tunang</b>	fiancé
<b>berkahwin</b>	married	<b>kaya</b>	rich
<b>miskin</b>	poor	<b>tapi/tetapi</b>	but
<b>universiti</b>	university		

### He's got a car but he hasn't got a licence

*Mr and Mrs Harris have a house, a car, three children and two grandchildren. Henry, child number one, a son, has got a job. He has a wife and two children. He has his own house.*

*Harry, child number two, a son, is also working but he hasn't got a house. He has got a car but he still hasn't got a licence.*

*Hayati, child number three, a daughter, is not yet married, but she has a fiancé.*

*The Harris family are not rich but they are not poor.*

### Language points

#### Ada ('to have/own')

**Ada** as used in this passage is another word for **mempunyai**, that is 'to have', or 'to own'. They are used interchangeably:

**Mr Anderson mempunyai keluarga besar.** Mr Anderson *has* a large family.

**Alan ada abang tapi tidak ada kakak.** Alan *has* an older brother but not an older sister.

**Mariam sudah mempunyai Sijil Perguruan tapi belum ada pekerjaan** Mariam *has* got a Teaching Certificate but she still hasn't got a job.

**Dia ada masalahkah?** Has he *got* a problem?

**Mereka ada rumah di tepi pantai.** They *own* a house near the beach.

### Plural of nouns

A countable noun is a noun that you can count (e.g. books, sheep, houses). Making the plural of countable nouns is very simple: just repeat the noun when it is not preceded by a number or a quantity word:

repetition	number/plural word
<b>kereta-kereta</b>	<b>tiga kereta</b> three cars
<b>budak-budak</b>	<b>enam budak</b> three children
<b>pegawai-pegawai</b>	<b>banyak/ramai</b> many officers
<b>beg-beg</b>	<b>pegawai</b>
<b>guru-guru</b>	<b>beberapa beg</b> several bags
	<b>sepuluh guru</b> ten teachers

Uncountable nouns are – you guessed it – those nouns that you generally don't or can't or wouldn't count (e.g. rice, paint and, surprisingly, money). Put another way, these are nouns that don't

generally have a plural form. Since uncountable nouns don't really have a plural form, no repetition is required. To express quantity, just put **banyak** ('much', 'a lot') or **sedikit** ('little') in front of the nouns.

wang, duit	money
<b>Dia ada sedikit wang.</b>	He has <i>a little</i> money.
<b>Dia ada banyak duit.</b>	He has <i>a lot of</i> money.
garam	salt
<b>Sarah bubuh garam dalam kari.</b>	Sarah puts salt in the curry.
<b>Sarah bubuh banyak garam dalam kari.</b>	Sarah puts <i>a lot of</i> salt in the curry.
kuah	gravy
<b>Kuah tumpah ke atas bajunya.</b>	The gravy spilt on to her dress.
<b>Sedikit kuah tumpah ke atas bajunya.</b>	<i>A little</i> gravy spilt on to her dress.

## Di mana barang-barang Din, Mak? ●●

Din is the eldest in a family of six. Although he is by nature a very tidy person, his boisterous brothers and sisters are forever messing up his room. He is getting ready to go on a school trip but can't find most of his stuff. His mother is helping him

- DIN: Di mana barang-barang Din, Mak?
- EMAK: Tentu ada di dalam bilik itu. Mak akan tolong cari.
- DIN: **Beg galas yang baru** di mana?
- EMAK: Mak nampak (ada) di bawah katil adik semalam.
- DIN: **Seluar tidur** Din (ada) di mana?
- EMAK: Sudah Mak cuci. (Ada) dalam almari.
- DIN: **Kasut yang hitam** (ada) di mana, Mak?
- EMAK: (Ada) di dalam **kotak yang biru**.
- DIN: **Berus gigi** Din tak ada dalam **bilik mandi**!
- EMAK: Siapalah hendak guna berus gigi Din? Masing-masing ada berus gigi sendiri!

### Vocabulary

<b>beg galas</b>	rucksack	<b>hitam</b>	black
<b>nampak</b>	to see	<b>biru</b>	blue
<b>seluar tidur</b>	pyjama trousers	<b>bilik mandi</b>	bathroom/toilet
<b>almari</b>	cupboard	<b>bawah</b>	under

<b>barang-barang</b>	things	<b>kasut</b>	shoes
<b>tentu</b>	surely	<b>kotak</b>	box
<b>katil</b>	bed	<b>berus gigi</b>	toothbrush
<b>cuci</b>	to wash	<b>guna</b>	to use

## Where are my things, Mum?

- DIN: *Where are my things, Mum?*
- MOTHER: *(They are) surely there in that room. I'll help to find them.*
- DIN: *Where's the new rucksack?*
- MOTHER: *I saw it under your brother's bed last night.*
- DIN: *Where are my pyjama trousers?*
- MOTHER: *I have already washed them. (They are) in the cupboard.*
- DIN: *Where are the black shoes, Mum?*
- MOTHER: *In the blue box.*
- DIN: *My toothbrush is not in the bathroom!*
- MOTHER: *Who would want to use your toothbrush? Each (person) has his (her) own toothbrush!*

### Language points

#### Yang ('who is', 'which is', 'that is')

##### Yang + adjective

When the qualifier of a noun is an adjective such as 'white' as in 'white dress' and 'clever' as in 'clever student', the Malay equivalent often has **yang** inserted between the noun and the adjective. Thus **baju yang putih**, is literally translated as 'the dress that is white' and **pelajar yang pandai** is literally translated as 'the student who is clever'. In this way, the speaker points more clearly to the object being referred to. This is especially necessary when the speaker is being comparative:

<b>beg yang baru</b>	the new bag ( <i>lit. the bag that is new – not the old one</i> )
<b>kasut Din yang hitam</b>	Din's black shoes ( <i>lit. Din's shoes which are black – not white</i> )
<b>jam yang rosak</b>	the faulty watch ( <i>lit. the watch that is faulty – not the one that is still working</i> )

### Yang + verb

A relative pronoun is a ‘wh’-word such as ‘who’, ‘which’ (and, note, ‘that’) used to introduce a relative clause. A relative clause is a phrase used to give more information about someone or something mentioned in the main clause. **Yang** can serve as a relative pronoun when it is followed by a verb:

<b>budak yang berdiri di sana</b>	the child <i>who</i> is standing there
<b>telefon yang berbunyi di atas meja</b>	the phone <i>that</i> is ringing on the table
<b>emak saudara saya yang sakit di rumah sakit</b>	my aunty <i>who</i> is sick in hospital

### Cardinal numbers

Memorize the basic numbers from 1 to 10. For numbers between 11 and 19 a **belas** ending is used. You can think of this as being similar to ‘-teen’ in English.

Note that **se** in **sepuluh** ('10'), **seratus** ('100'), **seribu** ('1,000') means one. For 20, 300, 4,000, etc., merely substitute **se** with **dua**, **tiga**, **empat**, etc. Added to single digits, they form combined or mixed numbers: see numbers 21 to 29 as an example.

1 <b>satu</b>	21 <b>dua puluh satu</b>
2 <b>dua</b>	22 <b>dua puluh dua</b>
3 <b>tiga</b>	23 <b>dua puluh tiga</b>
4 <b>empat</b>	24 <b>dua puluh empat</b>
5 <b>lima</b>	25 <b>dua puluh lima</b>
6 <b>enam</b>	26 <b>dua puluh enam</b>
7 <b>tujuh</b>	27 <b>dua puluh tujuh</b>
8 <b>lapan</b>	28 <b>dua puluh lapan</b>
9 <b>sembilan</b>	29 <b>dua puluh sembilan</b>
10 <b>sepuluh</b>	30 <b>tiga puluh</b>
11 <b>sebelas</b>	100 <b>seratus</b>
12 <b>dua belas</b>	200 <b>dua ratus</b>
13 <b>tiga belas</b>	300 <b>tiga ratus</b>
14 <b>empat belas</b>	1,000 <b>seribu</b>
15 <b>lima belas</b>	2,000 <b>dua ribu</b>
16 <b>enam belas</b>	3,000 <b>tiga ribu</b>
17 <b>tujuh belas</b>	1,000,000 <b>sejuta</b>
18 <b>lapan belas</b>	2,000,000 <b>dua juta</b>
19 <b>sembilan belas</b>	3,000,000 <b>tiga juta</b>
20 <b>dua puluh</b>	

### Combined numbers:

27	<b>dua puluh tujuh</b>
38	<b>tiga puluh lapan</b>
94	<b>sembilan puluh empat</b>
110	<b>seratus sepuluh</b>
874	<b>lapan ratus tujuh puluh empat</b>
1,046	<b>seribu empat puluh enam</b>
3,991	<b>tiga ribu sembilan ratus sembilan puluh satu</b>
7,565,278	<b>tujuh juta lima ratus enam puluh lima ribu, dua ratus tujuh puluh lapan</b>

### Ordinal numbers

Rule: to form an ordinal number just add **ke** to any number, except number 1.

1st	<b>pertama</b>	<b>anak (yang) pertama</b>	the first child
2nd	<b>kedua</b>	<b>kumpulan (yang) kedua</b>	the second group
3rd	<b>ketiga</b>	<b>cucu (yang) ketiga</b>	the third grandchild
4th	<b>keempat</b>	<b>meja (yang) keempat</b>	the fourth table
5th	<b>kelima</b>		
6th	<b>keenam</b>		
7th	<b>ketujuh</b> etc.		

### Exercises

#### Exercise 1

Identify whether **ada** in these sentences means ‘there is/are’ or ‘to own/have’:

- Pegawai baru itu ada banyak pengalaman kerja.
- Ada banyak pelancong yang datang dalam musim ini.
- Tidak ada siapapun yang mahu pergi ke pesta itu.
- John ada kucing comel.
- Ada empat bilik dalam rumah itu. Semua ada bilik mandi.
- Di atas meja itu ada beberapa buku yang belum saya baca.
- Siapa ada kereta?
- Amin ada beberapa tugas yang baru.
- Menon tak ada masa untuk belajar.
- Tak ada apa yang harus anda bimbang.

<b>pengalaman</b>	experience	<b>beberapa</b>	several
<b>harus</b>	should	<b>masa</b>	time
<b>bimbang</b>	to worry (about)	<b>comel</b>	cute
<b>pesta</b>	fair	<b>kucing</b>	cat
<b>untuk</b>	to	<b>tugas</b>	task
<b>musim</b>	season		

## Exercise 2

The personal circumstances of your friend Hassan are as follows. Say them in Malay, using **ada** or **mempunyai**.

- 1 As a student Hassan has many friends.
- 2 He has a part-time job.
- 3 He has no brothers or sisters.
- 4 He also hasn't got a lot of money.
- 5 He has no expensive clothes.
- 6 He has a room of his own.
- 7 And he has only an old bicycle.

old only	<b>buruk</b> <b>hanya</b>	part-time bicycle	<b>sambilan</b> <b>basikal</b>
-------------	------------------------------	----------------------	-----------------------------------

## Exercise 3

How would you say the following in Malay?

- 1 How many people are there in the office?
- 2 What is the population of Malaysia?
- 3 What is the age of your son?
- 4 How much did I borrow from you?
- 5 Not many people came to the party.
- 6 What is the price of the book that you bought?
- 7 How many years have you lived in this country?
- 8 What is the number of the car that you saw?
- 9 What year is this?
- 10 What is the number of her room?

population to borrow age	<b>penduduk</b> <b>pinjam</b> <b>umur</b>	country years	<b>negara</b> <b>tahun</b>
--------------------------------	---	------------------	-------------------------------

## Exercise 4

How would you say these numbers in Malay?

- 4, 9, 11, 12, 18
- 20, 23, 28, 29, 35
- 54, 67, 70, 77, 82
- 88, 89, 90, 96, 100,
- 110, 123, 131, 159, 242
- 682, 751, 800, 920, 999
- 1 001, 1 900, 2 533, 4 050, 5 211, 6 928
- 10 400, 26 972, 41 324, 11 423 212, 51 321 365

## Exercise 5

Give the Malay equivalent of the following (and watch out for the plural form):

- 1 The children are at school.
- 2 Ali has three children and six grandchildren.
- 3 There are lots of food stalls along the roadside.
- 4 She drinks a lot of water but she doesn't drink coffee.
- 5 Houses in my area are expensive.
- 6 There's a lot of sugar in my tea.
- 7 There are lots of newspapers on the table.
- 8 She tries not to eat too much bread, but she eats lots of rice.
- 9 They have many relatives in Seremban.
- 10 Ariffin has a lot of problems at the office.

food stalls	<b>gerai makanan</b>	newspapers	<b>surat khabar</b>
area	<b>kawasan</b>	relatives	<b>saudara mara</b>
children	<b>anak-anak/anak</b>	sugar	<b>gula</b>
water	<b>air</b>	problems	<b>masalah</b>
roadside	<b>tepi jalan</b>	too	<b>terlalu</b>

## Exercise 6

Answer these questions with the given cue words:

- 1 Berapa anak Pak Amir? (7) Pak Amir ada \_\_\_\_\_
- 2 Berapa umur Udin? (2 tahun) Umur Udin \_\_\_\_\_
- 3 Berapa jauh Kuala Lumpur dari sini? (100 km) Kuala Lumpur \_\_\_\_\_
- 4 Sudah berapa lama Tony belajar di sana? (2 tahun) Tony belajar di sana sudah \_\_\_\_\_

5 Sudah berapa tahun dia berkahwin? (11 tahun)	Dia berkahwin sudah _____
6 Berapa harga rumah itu? (RM143,504)	Harga rumah _____
7 Berapa nombor telefon pejabat talikom?(2119683)	Nombor telefon pejabat talikom _____
8 Dia bangun pada pukul berapa? (7 pagi)	Dia bangun pada pukul _____
9 Berapa hari Susie tinggal di Singapura? (5 hari)	Susie tinggal di Singapura _____
10 Berapa kali Norma melawat hospital? (4 kali)	Norma melawat hospital _____
11 Berapa jam adik tidur tadi? (2 jam)	Adik tidur _____
12 Berapa bayaran dia dapat sebulan? RM2,849.00)	Dia dapat _____
13 Mariam ada berapa rumah? (3)	Mariam ada _____
<b>jauh</b>	far/distance
<b>lama</b>	length of time
<b>jam</b>	hour
<b>tidur</b>	to sleep
<b>bayaran</b>	pay
<b>sebulan</b>	a month
<b>talikom</b>	telecommunications
<b>bangun</b>	to set up
<b>melawat</b>	to visit
<b>pada</b>	at
<b>Ringgit Malaysia (RM)</b>	Malaysian Ringgit (currency)

### Exercise 7

Give the Malay equivalent for the following, using **yang** to emphasize or clarify.

- 1 My red car is not in the garage.
- 2 He has got a small calculator.
- 3 Her new friend came yesterday.
- 4 Johan is a good student. All the teachers like him.
- 5 John has lost his black bag.
- 6 Rose is the second child in the family.
- 7 The woman who is sitting at the fourth table in the room is a doctor.
- 8 The officer is angry with the clerk who is late.
- 9 The police are looking for the thief who stole the bag.
- 10 Mum is reading a book which she borrowed from the library.

- 11 They are watching a sad story.
- 12 The woman who was ill died on Sunday.

garage	<b>garaj</b>	police	<b>polis</b>
watching	<b>menonton</b>	thief	<b>pencuri</b>
story	<b>cerita</b>	library	<b>perpustakaan</b>
died	<b>meninggal dunia</b>	sad	<b>sedih</b>
stole	<b>mencuri</b>	calculator	<b>kalkulator</b>
reading	<b>membaca</b>	yesterday	<b>kelmarin</b>
angry	<b>marah</b>		

### Exercise 8

Say the following in Malay:

- 1 Puan Asiah has three children.
- 2 Her first child is a boy. His name is Ahmad.
- 3 The second child is a girl. Her name is Asma.
- 4 Tina is the third child. She is her second daughter.
- 5 Puan Asiah is celebrating her fortieth birthday. Her husband Ismail has given her a car. It is her second car.
- 6 They are going on their first holiday abroad in July.

celebrating	<b>merayakan</b>	holiday	<b>percutian</b>
abroad	<b>luar negeri</b>		

### Conversation

Study this conversation. Note particularly the use of **ada**, **berapa** and **yang**. **Ibu** means ‘mother’; Chong (shopkeeper).

### Yang mana Puan mahu?

- IBU: Chong, ada ubat gigi?  
CHONG: Ada. Mahu yang besar atau yang kecil?  
IBU: Yang besar. Berapa harganya?  
CHONG: RM2 (Dua ringgit).  
IBU: Ada berus gigi?  
CHONG: Ada. Ada yang lembut dan ada yang keras. Yang mana Puan mahu?  
IBU: Yang lembut. Berapa?  
CHONG: RM1.00 (Seringgit)

IBU: Sabun yang wangi ada?  
 CHONG: Ada. Puan mahu berapa?  
 IBU: Dua sahaja. Berapa harganya?  
 CHONG: Harganya satu RM2.00. Harga kedua-duanya ialah RM4.00.  
 IBU: Baiklah. Semuanya berapa?  
 CHONG: Ubat gigi RM2.00, berus gigi RM1.00 dan dua sabun RM4.00. Jadi semuanya RM7.00  
 IBU: Ini duitnya. Terima kasih.  
 CHONG: Sama-sama.

### Vocabulary

<b>ubat gigi</b>	toothpaste	<b>yang mana</b>	which one
<b>wangi</b>	aromatic	<b>sabun</b>	soap
<b>mahu</b>	to want	<b>kedua-dua</b>	both
<b>lembut</b>	soft	<b>sahaja</b>	only
<b>keras</b>	hard		

### Reading

Study this text. Note especially the used of **ada**, compound nouns, plural and numbers. At the end of the text, there are some questions to see how well you understood the story.

### Restoran Encik Sanusi

Encik Sanusi ada beberapa kedai di bandar ini. Pejabatnya sendiri ada di tingkat empat di sebuah bangunan di Jalan Utama. Kira-kira dua ratus orang bekerja dengan Encik Sanusi.

Salah satu kedininya, ialah kedai makan. Restorannya besar dan boleh muat 400 orang. Restorannya jual banyak makanan lazat. Pelayan-pelayannya yang seramai 43 orang sentiasa sibuk. Dia mempunyai seorang pengurus yang rajin. Di restoran itu juga ada beberapa tukang masak yang pandai.

Di halaman luar restoran itu ada tempat letak kereta yang boleh muat sehingga dua ratus kereta. Encik Sanusi ada seorang tukang kebun yang juga rajin.

Di Nombor 249 Jalan Tasik pula, Encik Sanusi ada sebuah

motel. Di situ ada sepuluh bilik sewa. Anak Encik Sanusi yang pertama bekerja di sini sebagai pengurus kepada kira-kira 28 orang pekerja. Dia bekerja di situ sudah empat tahun.

Anaknya yang kedua pula, seorang perempuan ialah seorang doktor di kliniknya sendiri. Klinik ini ialah klinik gigi. Klinik ini buka 24 jam sehari.

### Vocabulary

<b>bandar</b>	city	<b>sentiasa</b>	always
<b>bangunan</b>	building	<b>tingkat</b>	floor
<b>muat</b>	to contain	<b>salah satu</b>	one of
<b>lazat</b>	tasty	<b>ialah</b>	is
<b>sibuk</b>	busy	<b>pelayan</b>	waiter/waitress
<b>tukang masak</b>	cook (chef)	<b>rajin</b>	hardworking
<b>tempat letak</b>	parking space	<b>halaman luar</b>	outside area
<b>kereta</b>		<b>sewa</b>	to rent
<b>tanaman</b>	plants	<b>situ</b>	there
<b>tukang kebun</b>	gardener	<b>pandai</b>	clever
<b>restoran</b>	restaurant		

### Questions

- 1 Di mana kedai-kedai Encik Sanusi?
- 2 Pejabatnya sendiri di mana?
- 3 Berapa orang yang bekerja dengan Encik Sanusi?
- 4 Restoran Encik Sanusi boleh muat berapa orang?
- 5 Anak Encik Sanusi yang mana bekerja sebagai pengurus motelnya?
- 6 Motelnya ada berapa bilik sewa?
- 7 Berapa orang tukang kebun yang menjaga halaman restoran Encik Sanusi?
- 8 Encik Sanusi ada berapa orang anak perempuan?
- 9 Anak yang perempuan ini anak Encik Sanusi yang keberapa?
- 10 Klinik apa yang dia buka?

# 4 Di mana Tugu Negara?

## Where is the National Monument?

In this lesson you will learn about:

- Basic prepositions: **di**, **ke** and **dari**
- Classifiers: **seorang**, **dua ekor**, **sebuah**
- Independent verbs

### Di mana Tugu Negara?

A British tourist in Kuala Lumpur is asking a policeman the way to one of the city's tourist attractions, the Tugu Negara or the National Monument

- T: Maafkan saya. **Di mana** Tugu Negara? Masih jauh dari sinakah?  
 P: Tidak jauh. Kira-kira 1 kilometer dari sini. Tugu Negara **di tengah** kawasan Tasik Perdana  
 T: Saya tak tahu **di mana** Tasik Perdana. Boleh beritahu saya?  
 P: **Dari sini**, Saudara jalan terus **sampai** Jalan Parlimen dan saudara akan nampak Tasik Perdana. Tugu Negara berada **di tengah-tengah** kawasan Tasik Perdana.  
 T: Oh ya. Kami juga ingin lihat Istana Agong.  
 P: Istana Agong agak jauh **dari sini**. Anda boleh lihat **dari luar** saja.  
 T: Oh, begitu? Terima kasih.

### Vocabulary

Istana	palace	beritahu	to tell
tasik	lake	begitu	is that so
jalan	to walk	kira-kira	about
terus	straight ahead	sampai	reach
tengah	middle	agak	quite
saudara	(lit) brother, meaning 'you' for male persons you don't know	lihat	to see

### Where is the National Monument?

- T: Excuse me. Where is the National Monument? Is it still far from here?  
 P: It's not far. About 1 kilometre from here. The National Monument is in the middle of the grounds of the Tasik Perdana. [Tasik Perdana is a famous lake in Kuala Lumpur.]  
 T: I don't know where the Tasik Perdana is. Can you tell me?  
 P: From here, you walk straight on till you reach Parliament Road and you will see Tasik Perdana. The National Monument is set in the middle of the grounds of Tasik Perdana.  
 T: Oh yes . . . we'd also like to see the King's palace.  
 P: The King's palace is quite a long way from here. You can see it only from the outside.  
 T: Oh, is that so? Thank you.

### Language points

Prepositions in Malay vary depending on the types of noun that follow, for example whether they indicate place, people or abstract concepts.

#### Prepositions for place: **di** ('at'), **dari** ('from') and **ke** ('to')

All can be combined with words of direction: front, back, under, above, behind, etc.

<b>di belakang</b>	at the back	<b>di hadapan</b>	in front
<b>ke belakang</b>	to the back	<b>ke hadapan</b>	to the front
<b>dari belakang</b>	from the back	<b>dari hadapan</b>	from the front
<b>di atas</b>	on top	<b>di bawah</b>	under
<b>ke atas</b>	upwards	<b>ke bawah</b>	downwards
<b>dari atas</b>	from above	<b>dari bawah</b>	from below
<b>di kiri</b>	on the left	<b>di kanan</b>	on the right
<b>ke kiri</b>	to the left	<b>ke kanan</b>	to the right
<b>dari kiri</b>	from the left	<b>dari kanan</b>	from the right
<b>di dalam</b>	inside	<b>di luar</b>	outside
<b>ke dalam</b>	inward(s)	<b>ke luar</b>	outward(s)
<b>dari dalam</b>	from inside	<b>dari luar</b>	from outside

<b>di tengah</b>	<i>in the middle</i>	<b>di tepi</b>	<i>on the side</i>
<b>ke tengah</b>	<i>to the middle</i>	<b>ke tepi</b>	<i>to the side</i>
<b>dari tengah</b>	<i>from the middle</i>	<b>dari tepi</b>	<i>from the side</i>
<b>di sebelah kiri rumah</b>	<i>on the left side of the house</i>		
<b>ke sebelah kiri rumah</b>	<i>to the left side of the house</i>		
<b>dari sebelah kiri rumah</b>	<i>from the left side of the house</i>		

### Preposition for time: pada ('on', 'in', 'at')

<b>pada saat yang ke-10</b>	<i>at the tenth second</i>
<b>pada pukul 5 petang</b>	<i>at 5 p.m.</i>
<b>pada hari Selasa</b>	<i>on Tuesday</i>
<b>pada tahun 1994</b>	<i>in 1994</i>

### Prepositions for people, animals and concrete objects: kepada ('to'), untuk ('for')

<b>kepada ibu yang disayang</b>	<i>(Lit. to a mother who is much loved)</i>
<b>kepada saudara-saudari</b>	<i>to all of you, ladies and gentlemen</i>
<b>untuk saya</b>	<i>for me</i>
<b>untuk anaknya</b>	<i>for his/her child</i>
<b>untuk kucing itu</b>	<i>for that cat</i>
<b>untuk bilik Ahmad</b>	<i>for Ahmad's room</i>

### Preposition for abstract nouns: dalam ('in', 'at', 'on')

<b>dalam pertemuan</b>	<i>at the meeting</i>
<b>dalam perjalanan</b>	<i>on the way to</i>
<b>dalam perkara ini</b>	<i>in this case</i>

## Saya berkenalan dengan seorang gadis cantik

*Anthony is well known for his tall stories but his friends are quite prepared to hear him out. On several occasions they have managed to have some fun at his expense*

ANTHONY: Semasa saya bercuti di London, saya kenal **seorang gadis cantik**.

SONY: Dia jatuh cinta dengan andakah?

ANTHONY: Tentu sekali. Saya beli segala-gala yang dia mahu. Dia mahu sewa **sebuah kereta** besar, saya sewa **sebuah kereta** besar. Dia mahu makan di **sebuah restoran** mahal, saya bawa dia ke **sebuah restoran** mahal. Apa saja yang dia mahu.

SONY: Sungguh banyak duit anda! Apa lagi yang anda beri kepadaanya?

ANTHONY: Saya beli **seekor anjing** kesayangan sebagai cenderamata dan saya beli **seutas rantai emas** dengan **sebentuk berlian**.

SONY: Aduh, kau betul murah hati. Mari belanja saya makan tengah hari di hotel itu.

ANTHONY: Maaf, saya tak boleh guna kad kredit saya lagi!

### Vocabulary

<b>kenal</b>	<i>to know</i>	<b>cantik</b>	<i>beautiful</i>
<b>semasa</b>	<i>during</i>	<b>anjing kesayangan</b>	<i>pet dog</i>
<b>gadis</b>	<i>girl</i>	<b>rantai emas</b>	<i>gold chain</i>
<b>jatuh cinta</b>	<i>to fall in love</i>	<b>belanja</b>	<i>to treat</i>
<b>apa saja</b>	<i>whatever</i>	<b>kredit</b>	<i>credit</i>
<b>cenderamata</b>	<i>souvenir</i>	<b>kad</b>	<i>card</i>
<b>berlian</b>	<i>diamond</i>	<b>murah hati</b>	<i>generous</i>
<b>segala-gala</b>	<i>everything</i>	<b>duit</b>	<i>money</i>
<b>makan tengah hari</b>	<i>lunch</i>	<b>dipakai</b>	<i>used</i>

### I made friends with a beautiful girl

ANTHONY: *During my holidays in London, I made friends with a beautiful girl.*

SONY: *Did she fall in love with you?*

ANTHONY: *Of course. I bought her everything she wanted. She wanted to hire a big car; I hired her a big car. She wanted to eat at an expensive restaurant; I took her to an expensive restaurant. Whatever she wanted!*

SONY: *You do have a lot of money! What else did you buy her?*

ANTHONY: *I bought her a pet dog as a souvenir and I bought her a gold chain with a diamond.*

SONY: *Well, you're really generous. Come and treat me to lunch at that hotel.*

ANTHONY: *I'm sorry, I can't use my credit cards any more!*

## Language points

### Classifiers

The Malay equivalents of 'a' and 'an' vary according to the kind of object/noun they refer to:

For humans: **orang**

*a man seorang lelaki  
a woman seorang perempuan  
a doctor seorang doktor  
a singer seorang penyanyi*

For thin/flat objects: **helai**

For thin/flat/hard objects:  
**sekeping**

*a sheet of paper sehelai kertas  
a shirt sehelai baju  
a wooden plank sekeping papan*

For animals: **ekor**

*a cat seekor kucing  
a dog seekor anjing  
a mouse seekor tikus  
a fish seekor ikan*

For solid objects: **buah,**

**seketul, sebiji**

*a house sebuah rumah  
a car sebuah kereta  
a pineapple sebiji nenas*

Since **se** in **seorang, sebuah, seekor**, etc. implicitly means 'one', simply replace **se** with any number to form a plural word:

**seorang lelaki** ('a man')

**sebuah rumah** ('a house')

**sehelai baju** ('a dress')

**sebiji durian** ('a durian')

**seekor kambing** ('a goat')

**dua orang lelaki** ('two men')

**empat buah rumah** ('four houses')

**lima helai baju** ('five dresses')

**sepuluh biji durian** ('ten durians')

**enam ekor kambing** ('six goats')

For abstract nouns, **suatu** is used:

*a kindness suatu kebaikan a crime suatu kejahatan  
an association suatu kumpulan a story suatu cerita*

In a sentence, where the predicate is a noun, **seorang, seekor** and **sebuah** are often dropped for reasons of convenience. Thus, the sentence **Dia adalah seorang guru**, which means 'He is a teacher', would commonly be uttered as **Dia guru**. **Adalah**, which means 'is/was' is dropped for the same reason. See also Lesson 1.

## Anda tinggal di mana?

*Simon has just made a new friend, Kassim, who is a student at the local university. As Simon is not a student, he is interested in life at the university*

SIMON: Anda tinggal di mana?

KASSIM: Saya **tinggal** di Taman Kenanga. Kira-kira 4 kilometer dari sini.

SIMON: Bagaimana anda **pergi** ke universiti?

KASSIM: Saya **naik** motosikal. Kadang-kadang saya **berjalan kaki**.

SIMON: Pukul berapa kuliah **bermula**?

KASSIM: Kuliah **bermula** pada pukul 10 pagi dan **habis** (pada) pukul 4 petang.

SIMON: Di mana anda **makan** setiap hari?

KASSIM: Di universiti ada kantin dan kelab. Saya **makan dan minum** di sana.

SIMON: Saya bukan pelajar. Boleh saya **makan** di kantin itu?

KASSIM: Tentu boleh, tapi makanannya bukanlah istimewa.

### Vocabulary

**kadang-kadang**

sometimes

**kuliah**

lecture

**kelab**

club

**istimewa**

special

**berjalan kaki**

to walk

**kantin**

canteen

**naik**

to ride

**pukul**

referring to time

**bermula**

to start

**habis**

to finish, end

### Where do you live?

SIMON: Where do you live?

KASSIM: I live in Kenanga Gardens. About 4 kilometres from here.

SIMON: How do you get to the university?

KASSIM: I ride a motorbike. Sometimes I walk.

SIMON: What time do lectures start?

KASSIM: Lectures start at ten in the morning and end at four in the afternoon.

SIMON: Where do you eat every day?

KASSIM: There's a canteen and a club at the university. I eat and drink there.

SIMON: I'm not a student. Can I eat at the canteen?

KASSIM: Sure you can. But the food's not that special.

## Language points

### Independent verbs

Although Malay verbs do not change for subject, person, tense and number, they are in fact much more complex than English verbs.

In Malay, generally the meaning of a word has much to do with the affixation applied. By affixation we mean some extra bits such as **ber** and **me** that we fix on the beginning or the end of the base-word.

It is this system of affixation throughout the language that presents the greatest challenge to learners. In terms of affixation, Malay verbs are divided into several categories. First come the so-called independent verbs. These are base verbs that can stand on their own without the affixation **ber** or **me**; the second group have the prefix **ber**; the third have the prefix **me**; the fourth have **me-kan**; and the fifth **me-i**, etc.

Below is a list of independent verbs. They can be used in sentences as they are without any affixation. The majority in the list are intransitive, meaning that they do not take objects and they generally require prepositions when used in sentences. Some of the prepositions which are usually used with them are included in the list.

<b>ada</b>	to have/there is/ are	<b>lahir (di)</b>	to be born
<b>bangun</b>	to get up	<b>lepas</b>	to let go
<b>buka</b>	to open	<b>letak (di)</b>	to put
<b>datang (ke)</b>	to come to	<b>lulus (dalam)</b>	to pass
<b>diam</b>	to be quiet	<b>lupa (untuk)</b>	to forget
<b>duduk (di)</b>	to sit on	<b>maju (ke)</b>	to advance
<b>gagal (dalam)</b>	to fail	<b>makan</b>	to eat
<b>habis</b>	to finish	<b>mandi</b>	to bathe
<b>hidup</b>	to live	<b>marah (pada)</b>	to scold/to be angry at
<b>hinggap (di)</b>	to perch on	<b>masuk (ke)</b>	to enter
<b>ikut (dengan)</b>	to join in	<b>minum</b>	to drink
<b>ingat (pada)</b>	to remember	<b>mula</b>	to begin
<b>ingin</b>	to wish	<b>mundur (ke)</b>	to retreat
<b>jatuh (ke)</b>	to fall into	<b>naik (ke)</b>	to go up/to ride
<b>kahwin (dengan)</b>	to marry	<b>pergi</b>	to go
<b>keluar (dari)</b>	to go out	<b>pindah (ke)</b>	to move
<b>kembali (ke)</b>	to return to	<b>pulang (ke)</b>	to go home/to return
<b>kenal (dengan)</b>	to know/to recognize	<b>roboh</b>	to collapse
		<b>sampai (di)</b>	to reach

<b>selesai</b>	to finish	<b>terjun (ke)</b>	to dive
<b>sembuh</b>	to recover	<b>tiba (di/dari)</b>	to arrive
<b>singgah (di)</b>	to stop by	<b>tidur</b>	to sleep
<b>suka (pada)</b>	to like	<b>timbul</b>	to reappear
<b>surut</b>	to recede	<b>tinggal (di)</b>	to stay/live
<b>tahu</b>	to know	<b>tumbuh</b>	to grow
<b>takluk</b>	to conquer	<b>tunduk (pada)</b>	to bow
<b>tamat</b>	to know/to finish	<b>turun (ke)</b>	to go down
<b>terbang</b>	to fly	<b>tutup</b>	to close
<b>terbit</b>	to emerge/to publish		

Remember! The special characteristic of independent verbs is that they are not to be used with the prefixes **ber** or **me** as long as they have the meanings listed above. More verb forms are discussed in lessons to come.

### Ada apa minggu ini?

*The director of a government-owned company and his deputy are discussing their engagements for the week*

- DEP.: Apa rancangan Encik Tahir untuk **minggu ini**?  
DIR.: **Esok, hari Selasa**, saya ada mesyuarat dengan Pengarah Bank Negara. Mungkin sampai petang, **kira-kira pukul 4**.  
DEP.: Kalau begitu, saya tunggu di pejabat.  
DIR.: Ya, hari Rabu saya tak ada apa-apa rancangan khusus.  
DEP.: **Hari Khamis** boleh saya pergi ke Jerantut? Saya mahu melihat projek kita di sana.  
DIR.: Anda boleh berangkat **malam Khamis** dengan kapal terbang.  
DEP.: Oh, ya. Jangan lupa ada jemputan untuk **minggu yang akan datang** dari Menteri Besar.  
DIR.: Ya, saya akan pergi. Eh, tadi pagi, kata Tan, ada telefon dari Menteri Perdagangan?  
DEP.: Ya, dia minta Encik Tahir pergi ke pejabatnya hari Isnin **7 haribulan Mac** pukul 9 pagi.

### Vocabulary

<b>rancangan</b>	programmes/plans	<b>minggu</b>	week
<b>pengarah</b>	director	<b>minggu akan datang</b>	next week
<b>kapal terbang</b>	plane	<b>berangkat</b>	to leave
<b>Menteri Besar</b>	Chief Minister		

<b>mesyuarat</b>	meeting	<b>melihat</b>	to see
<b>jemputan</b>	invitation	<b>projek</b>	project
<b>khusus</b>	specific		

## What's on this week?

- DEP.: What's your [Mr. Tahir's] programme for this week?  
 DIR.: Tomorrow, Tuesday, I have a meeting with the Director of the National Bank. Probably till the afternoon, about 4 o'clock.  
 DEP.: If that is so, I'll wait at the office.  
 DIR.: Yes, on Wednesday, I don't have any specific programme.  
 DEP.: On Thursday can I go to Jerantut? I'd like to see our project there.  
 DIR.: You can take the plane on Wednesday night.  
 DEP.: Oh, yes. Don't forget there's an invitation for next week from the Chief Minister.  
 DIR.: Yes, I'll be there. Oh, this morning, did Tan say there was a call from the Minister of Trade?  
 DEP.: Yes, he wants you [Mr. Tahir] to go to his office on Monday 7 March at 9 a.m.

## Language points

### Adjuncts of time

References to time are particularly important in Malay since verbs are not subject to tenses.

#### Yang lalu ('(the one) that's passed')

<b>minggu/bulan/tahun/abad</b>	last week/month/year/century
<b>yang lalu</b>	
<b>Bulan yang lalu dia terbang ke Paris</b>	Last week he flew to Paris.

#### Yang akan datang ('(the one) to come')

<b>minggu/bulan/tahun/abad</b>	Next week/month/year/century
<b>yang akan datang</b>	
<b>Dia berkahwin pada tahun yang akan datang.</b>	He'll be getting married next year.

Note that **yang** is commonly dropped:

<b>minggu yang akan datang</b>	<b>minggu akan datang</b>	(next week)
<b>tahun yang lalu</b>	<b>tahun lalu</b>	(last week)

#### Tadi ('just past')

<b>Pagi tadi</b>	this morning (the morning that's just passed)
<b>Malam tadi</b>	<b>Malam tadi dia tidak pulang ke rumah.</b>

#### Nanti ('about to come, later')

<b>nanti malam</b>	tonight (the night <i>about to come</i> )
<b>nanti petang</b>	this afternoon (the afternoon <i>about to come</i> )
<b>Nanti malam emak dan bapa akan ke pesta.</b>	Tonight Mum and Dad are going to a party.

#### Sekarang ('now')

<b>Dia di mana sekarang?</b>	Where is he now?
------------------------------	------------------

#### Esok/besok ('tomorrow')

<b>Esok Hamid keluar makan dengan ketua pejabatnya.</b>	Tomorrow Hamid eats out with his boss.
---	--

#### Kelmarin ('yesterday')

<b>Kelmarin dia tidak datang ke pejabat.</b>	Yesterday he did not turn up at the office.
--	---

In the absence of the specific time references, Malay speakers rely on context and circumstance to convey the period of time referred to.

## Exercises

### Exercise 1

How would you say the following in Malay?

- |                       |                           |
|-----------------------|---------------------------|
| 1 in the car          | 14 to the middle          |
| 2 outside the house   | 15 at the edge            |
| 3 in the room         | 16 on the table           |
| 4 at the cinema       | 17 to Mrs Tan's right     |
| 5 to the cinema       | 18 from the middle        |
| 6 behind the garage   | 19 for Mr Harris          |
| 7 under the chair     | 20 to Jerantut            |
| 8 above the building  | 21 in Japan               |
| 9 inside the building | 22 at 6 o'clock           |
| 10 beside the house   | 23 in January             |
| 11 on the left        | 24 on Monday              |
| 12 at the corner      | 25 in 1993                |
| 13 in the middle      | 26 at the end of the year |
| <b>cinema</b>         | <b>panggung wayang</b>    |
| <b>Japan</b>          | <b>Jepun</b>              |
| <b>corner</b>         | <b>sudut</b>              |

### Exercise 2

Familiarize yourself with the vocabulary. Then cover the right-hand column with a piece of paper. Insert the word in the left-hand column into the model sentence and simultaneously replace the classifier as appropriate. Check the sentence in the right-hand column to see if you are right. The new sentence in the right-hand column automatically becomes the model sentence to be used with another word from the left-hand column. Model sentence: **Ada sebuah kereta di depan rumah.**

- |                           |  |
|---------------------------|--|
| seekor kucing             | Ada seekor kucing di depan rumah.                |
| seorang lelaki            | Ada seorang lelaki di depan rumah.               |
| sebuah basikal            | Ada sebuah basikal di depan rumah.               |
| di belakang rumah         | Ada sebuah basikal di belakang rumah.            |
| seekor anjing             | Ada seekor anjing di belakang rumah.             |
| sebuah kedai              | Ada sebuah kedai di belakang rumah.              |
| dua orang budak perempuan | Ada dua orang budak perempuan di belakang rumah. |

kelas

lima orang guru  
di luar  
dua orang kerani  
pejabat

Ada dua orang budak perempuan di dalam kelas.

Ada lima orang guru di dalam kelas.  
Ada lima orang guru di luar kelas.  
Ada dua orang kerani di luar kelas.  
Ada dua orang kerani di luar pejabat.

### Exercise 3

Cover the sentences in the right-hand column with a piece of paper and insert the word in the left-hand column into the model sentence. Check the sentence in the right-hand column to see if your answer was correct. Change the preposition when necessary. The correct answer is now the model sentence to be used with the next word from the left-hand column. Model sentence: **Rita pergi ke pasar.**

- |                     |   |
|---------------------|---|
| masuk               | Rita masuk ke dalam pasar.              |
| kedai itu           | Rita masuk ke dalam kedai itu.          |
| kelmarin            | Rita masuk ke dalam kedai itu kelmarin. |
| keluar dari         | Rita keluar dari kedai itu kelmarin.    |
| pergi ke stesen bas | Rita pergi ke stesen bas kelmarin.      |
| malam tadi          | Rita pergi ke stesen bas malam tadi.    |
| pagi                | Rita pergi ke stesen bas pagi tadi.     |
| esok                | Rita pergi ke stesen bas esok.          |
| Seremban            | Rita pergi ke Seremban esok.            |
| Mereka              | Mereka pergi ke Seremban esok.          |
| minggu depan        | Mereka pergi ke Seremban minggu depan.  |
| tahun lalu          | Mereka pergi ke Seremban tahun lalu.    |
| pagi tadi           | Mereka pergi ke Seremban pagi tadi.     |

**stesen bas**      bus station

### Exercise 4

Choose the correct preposition to complete the sentence from the list below. In certain instances, the use of the preposition is optional.

- |                         |        |
|-------------------------|--------|
| dari/di/ke (mana)       | pada   |
| dari/di/ke (dalam/luar) | kepada |
| dalam                   | untuk  |

- 1 Kami tinggal \_\_\_\_\_ Taman Melati.
- 2 \_\_\_\_\_ mana anda dengar berita ini?
- 3 Tahun lalu mereka pergi \_\_\_\_\_ Amerika.
- 4 Kami dan keluarga makan \_\_\_\_\_ rumah Sanusi.
- 5 Surat ini \_\_\_\_\_ siapa?
- 6 Tan datang ke sini \_\_\_\_\_ hari apa?
- 7 Saya tulis sepucuk surat \_\_\_\_\_ kawan saya.
- 8 Kanak-kanak duduk \_\_\_\_\_ bilik tamu.
- 9 Mereka pulang \_\_\_\_\_ Australia kelmarin.
- 10 Kita terbang ke Singapura \_\_\_\_\_ malam nanti?
- 11 \_\_\_\_\_ tahun 1992 banyak pelancong datang \_\_\_\_\_ Malaysia.
- 12 Tidak ada siapa \_\_\_\_\_ rumah.
- 13 Ibu masak nasi \_\_\_\_\_ kita semua.
- 14 \_\_\_\_\_ keluarga kami ada sembilan orang.
- 15 Kita sudah makan nasi \_\_\_\_\_ pagi tadi.
- 16 Saya pergi \_\_\_\_\_ rumah Sabri \_\_\_\_\_ hari Isnin.
- 17 Tetamu itu pulang \_\_\_\_\_ pukul 12 malam.
- 18 \_\_\_\_\_ mana datangnya cinta? \_\_\_\_\_ mata turun \_\_\_\_\_ hati.
- 19 Dia datang \_\_\_\_\_ mana dan mahu \_\_\_\_\_ mana?
- 20 Di mana Emak? Dia \_\_\_\_\_ luar.

<b>tetamu</b>	guest/visitor	<b>terbang</b>	to fly
<b>keluarga</b>	family	<b>masak</b>	to cook
<b>surat</b>	letter	<b>mata</b>	eyes
<b>hati</b>	heart	<b>turun</b>	to go down
cinta (n)	love		

## Exercise 5

Choose the correct classifiers to complete the sentence from **seekor**, **sebuah**, **seorang**, **sehelai**, **sebatang**, **segelas**, **sebotol**, **sepiring**, **sepucuk**, etc.

- 1 Di istana itu ada \_\_\_\_\_ raja. Dia mempunyai \_\_\_\_\_ puteri yang cantik.
- 2 Dalam kocek baju saya ada \_\_\_\_\_ sapu tangan.
- 3 Ahmad membela \_\_\_\_\_ monyet.
- 4 \_\_\_\_\_ lelaki datang ke rumah saya kelmarin.
- 5 Di bilik tamu ada \_\_\_\_\_ meja dan \_\_\_\_\_ kerusi.
- 6 Dia minum \_\_\_\_\_ susu dan makan \_\_\_\_\_ epal.
- 7 Anda ada \_\_\_\_\_ kakak bernama Aishah?
- 8 Dia menulis \_\_\_\_\_ surat untuk kawannya.

- 9 Susie beli \_\_\_\_\_ pensil di kedai.
- 10 Anna pinjam \_\_\_\_\_ kertas daripada saya.
- 11 Ibu beli \_\_\_\_\_ minyak untuk masakannya.

<b>kocek</b>	pocket	<b>sapu tangan</b>	handkerchief
<b>masakan</b>	cooking (noun)	<b>kertas</b>	paper
<b>puteri</b>	princess	<b>membela</b>	to rear
<b>raja</b>	king	<b>minyak</b>	oil

## Conversations

Study these conversations and then read them aloud. Note the uses of prepositions, classifiers, independent verbs and vocabulary of time, most of which are printed in bold.

### Di mana sekolahmu?

*An uncle and his nephew talk about the latter's school*

- UNCLE: Man bersekolah **di mana**?  
MAN: Di Sekolah Rendah Raja Uda.  
UNCLE: Di mana?  
MAN: Di Kampung Atap, **dekat dengan stesen bas**.  
UNCLE: **Di sebelah kiri atau di sebelah kanan** stesen?  
MAN: **Di sebelah kanan**, Pak Long. Bangunannya tinggi. Catnya warna hijau.  
UNCLE: Sekolah dekat stesen! Tak terlalu bisingkah?  
MAN: Ya, bising, Pak Long. Tapi murid-murid dan guru-guru senang pergi **ke sekolah**.  
UNCLE: Jadi Man pergi ke sekolah dengan bas?  
MAN: Ya, saya **naik bas** nombor 3. Saya turun **tepat depan** pintu sekolah.  
UNCLE: Man **dalam darjah berapa** sekarang?  
MAN: Darjah enam. Bulan Jun **akan datang** ini ada ujian.  
UNCLE: Man pelajar yang baik dan rajin. Moga-moga Man **lulus**.

## Vocabulary

<b>moga-moga</b>	hopefully	<b>cat</b>	paint
<b>terlalu bising</b>	too noisy	<b>tepat</b>	exactly
<b>kampung</b>	village	<b>hijau</b>	green
<b>warna</b>	colour	<b>bangunan</b>	building
<b>senang</b>	easy		

## Adakah anda kenal Pak Seman?

CHARLES: Adakah anda kenal Pak Seman?  
ISA: Ya, saya kenal. Dia guru agama saya.  
CHARLES: Dia datang dari mana?  
ISA: Saya fikir dari Kampung Sentul.  
CHARLES: Dia ada sebuah motosikal kecilkah?  
ISA: Dia ada sebuah motosikal dan sebuah kereta.  
CHARLES: Dia tinggal di mana?  
ISA: Di sebuah pondok di Jalan Atap, Kampung Sentul.  
CHARLES: Dia sudah kahwinkah?  
ISA: Sudah. Dia ada tiga orang anak.

### Vocabulary

<b>agama</b>	religion	<b>fikir</b>	to think
<b>pondok</b>	hut	<b>kenal</b>	to know
<b>motosikal</b>	motorcycle		

### Reading

Study the text and answer the questions that follow. Note the uses of independent verbs (printed in bold), **ada**, prepositions, vocabulary of time and classifiers.

### Sibuk setiap hari

Sejak tiba di Kuala Lumpur, Helen sibuk sekali. Setiap hari selalu **ada** urusan. Dia tinggal **di sebuah rumah pangsa** yang tidak begitu jauh **dari pusat bandar**.

Setiap hari Helen **bangun** pagi, sebelum pukul 6.00. Sesudah **mandi** dia turun ke bawah dan makan sarapan di sebuah kedai kopi di tepi jalan. Dia tidak lupa minum segelas susu dan makan vitamin kerana dia kurang sihat akhir-akhir ini.

Pukul 7.00 Helen pergi ke pejabatnya di Suruhan Jaya Tinggi Inggeris. Dia **naik** kereta. Dia tidak mahu naik bas kerana lalu lintas sibuk sekali. Hari ini, kira-kira pukul 11.00 pagi dia **ada** temu janji untuk berbincang dengan John Hardy, pengurus bahagian eksport dari Syarikat Cosmos. Pada tengah hari dia juga **ada** temu janji untuk makan tengah hari dengan Encik Baha Sani, Pengarah sebuah bank swasta di Petaling Jaya.

Pejabat **tutup** kira-kira pukul 4.30 petang. Helen **pulang**; badannya letih sekali. Biasanya dia **tidur** siang selama satu jam. Waktu **bangun** pukul 6.00 rasanya keletihannya sudah **hilang**. Dia **duduk** di tepi kolam renang sambil minum teh dan makan biskut.

Nanti malam **ada** acara penting; **keluar** dengan Steven, kawan lelakinya dari Amerika. Makan malam di sebuah restoran Thai di Jalan Ambak. Sesudah itu **pergi** ke panggung wayang di Jalan Melor.

Oleh kerana **minggu lalu**, Helen sudah ke Kota Bahru, **minggu akan datang**, 13 haribulan Mac dia akan **pergi** ke Taiping untuk melawat pejabat di sana. Dia akan naik kapal terbang kerana lebih cepat daripada naik kereta api.

### Vocabulary

<b>melawat</b>	to visit	<b>temu janji</b>	appointment
<b>sejak</b>	since	<b>kolam renang</b>	swimming pool
<b>rumah pangsa</b>	flat	<b>berbincang</b>	to discuss
<b>lalu lintas</b>	traffic	<b>akhir-akhir ini</b>	lately
<b>swasta</b>	private	<b>Suruhan Jaya</b>	High
<b>urusian</b>	programmes	<b>Tinggi</b>	Commission
<b>acara penting</b>	important event	<b>tidur</b>	to sleep
<b>sarapan</b>	breakfast	<b>lebih cepat</b>	faster
<b>tiba</b>	to arrive	<b>kereta api</b>	train
<b>pusat bandar</b>	town centre		

### Soalan-soalan (Questions)

- 1 Di mana Helen tinggal?
- 2 Pukul berapa dia bangun setiap hari?
- 3 Mengapa dia banyak minum susu?
- 4 Di mana dia bekerja?
- 5 Mengapa dia tidak naik bas ke pejabat?
- 6 Hari ini dia ada dua urusan penting. Apakah urusan ini?
- 7 Mengapa dia duduk di tepi kolam renang?
- 8 Biasanya berapa lama dia tidur di waktu petang?
- 9 Siapa nama kawan lelaki Helen? Dia datang dari mana?
- 10 Ke mana mereka akan pergi malam nanti?
- 11 Bila Helen ke Kota Bahru?
- 12 Mengapa dia mahu pergi ke Taiping?

# 5 Bagaimana rumah anda yang baru?

## How's your new house?

In this lesson you will learn about:

- 'Wh-' questions (where, when, how, why, what and who)
- The uses of **nya**
- Double adjectives

## Bagaimana rumah anda yang baru?

*Mr Ali has just moved to a new house. He is very proud of it and is telling his colleague, Hasnah all about it*

HASNAH: **Bagaimana** rumah anda yang baru itu?

ALI: Wah, bagus sekali. Rumah itu besar.

HASNAH: **Di mana?**

ALI: Di Taman Melawati. Kawasannya tidak begitu sibuk.

HASNAH: **Bila** anda beli rumah itu?

ALI: Tiga bulan yang lalu.

HASNAH: **Berapa** harganya?

ALI: Tiga ratus ribu ringgit.

HASNAH: Wah, Ali memang banyak duit. Ada **berapa** bilik?

ALI: Ada empat bilik tidur, dua bilik tamu, satu bilik belajar, bilik makan, dua bilik mandi dan dapur.

HASNAH: **Bagaimana** halamannya?

ALI: Sungguh luas. Di depan rumah ada kebun bunga. Di belakang juga ada kebun. Ada pokok mangga, pokok betik dan pokok pisang.

HASNAH: **Mengapa** Ali muah rumah yang besar sekali?

ALI: Keluarga saya besar. Anak saya banyak dan masih kecil-kecil lagi.

## Vocabulary

<b>betik</b>	papaya	<b>pokok</b>	tree
<b>bagus</b>	nice	<b>dapur</b>	kitchen
<b>sekali</b>	very	<b>kebun</b>	garden
<b>mengapa</b>	why	<b>bunga</b>	flower
<b>mangga</b>	mango	<b>ringgit</b>	Malaysian currency
<b>luas</b>	large, wide	<b>ribu</b>	thousand
<b>pisang</b>	banana		

## How's your new house?

HASNAH: *How is your new house?*

ALI: *Oh, it's very nice. The house is big.*

HASNAH: *Where (is it)?*

ALI: *In Melawati Gardens. The area's not that busy.*

HASNAH: *When did you buy the house?*

ALI: *Three months ago.*

HASNAH: *How much was it?*

ALI: *Three hundred thousand Ringgit.*

HASNAH: *Wow, (Ali) you do have a lot of money! How many rooms?*

ALI: *There are four bedrooms. Two guest rooms, one study, a dining room, two bathrooms and a kitchen.*

HASNAH: *How about the yard?*

ALI: *Very large. In front of the house there's a flower garden. At the back there's also a flower garden. There's a mango tree, a papaya tree and a banana plant.*

HASNAH: *Why do you want such a big house?*

ALI: *My family is large. I have lots of children and they are still very small.*

## Language points

### Wh- questions

Questions using

<b>di mana</b>	where	<b>bila</b>	when
<b>bagaimana</b>	how	<b>berapa</b>	how much/many
<b>apa</b>	what	<b>siapa</b>	who

can be formed by inserting these question words in the statement

sentence. An alternative is to put them at the front of the sentence, as in English. Here are a few examples:

**Rumah itu di Taman Melawati.** The house is in Melawati Gardens.

**Rumah itu di mana?** The house is *where?* (*lit.*)

**Di mana rumah itu?** *Where* is the house?

**Anda beli rumah itu bulan lalu.** You bought the house last month.

**Anda beli rumah itu bila?** You bought the house *when?* (*lit.*)

**Bila anda beli rumah itu?** *When* did you buy the house?

**Anaknya sudah sihat sekarang.** His child is now fine.

**Anaknya bagaimana sekarang?** His child is *how* now? (*lit.*)

**Bagaimana anaknya sekarang?** *How* is his child now?

**Dia beli dua buah kereta.** He bought two cars.

**Dia beli berapa buah kereta?** He bought *how many* cars?

**Berapa buah kereta dia beli?** *How many* cars did he buy?

**Harga tiket itu tiga ringgit.** The cost of the ticket is three ringgit.

**Harga tiket itu berapa?** The cost of the ticket is *how much?*

**Berapa harga tiket itu?** *How much* is the ticket?

**Itu ketua Pejabat Pos.** That is the head of the post office.

**Itu siapa?** That is *who?* (*lit.*)

**Siapa itu?** *Who* is that?

**Ini kapal selam.** This is a submarine.

**Ini apa?** This is *what?* (*lit.*)

**Apa ini?** *What* is this?

The question word **mengapa** ('why') can be used *only* at the front of the sentence.

**Dia menangis.** He is crying.

**Mengapa dia menangis?** *Why* is he crying?

Note that **mengapa** is commonly replaced by **sebab apa** ('for what reason'):

**Dia menangis sebab ...** He is crying because ...

**Sebab apa dia menangis?** *For what reason* is he crying?

**Ahmad pergi ke Kuala Lumpur sebab ...** Ahmad went to Kuala Lumpur because ...

**Sebab apa Ahmad pergi ke Kuala Lumpur?** *For what reason* did Ahmad go to Kuala Lumpur?

## Nya

**Nya** can be added to a noun, an adjective or a verb. It has at least three meanings:

### Possessive ('his/her/its')

See Lesson 1.

**Maznah beli baju. Bajunya cantik.** Maznah bought a dress. *Her* dress is beautiful.

### Definite article ('the')

**Khabarnya dia kurang sihat.** *The* news is he is not very well.  
**Rupa-rupanya dia bercakap bohong.** *The* truth is that he told lies.

**Dengan adanya meja itu saya boleh tulis.** With *the* presence of this table I can write (*lit.*)

### Forming nouns

Added to adjectives or verbs, it transforms them into nouns:

**Anak Azman sudah bercakap.** Azman's daughter already talks.  
**Cakapnya macam orang dewasa.** *Her* talking is like an adult. (*lit.*)

**Cerita itu terlalu panjang.** The story is too long.  
**Panjangnya tiga jam.** *The length* (duration) is three hours.

Note that when added to an adjective **nya** can be used as an exclamation to stress the nature of the subject.

**Lagu itu sungguh sedih.** The song is very sad.  
**Sedihnya lagu itu.** *How sad* the song is. (*lit.*)

**Orang itu baik hati.** That man is generous.  
**Baiknya hati orang itu.** *How generous* that man is. (*lit.*)

**Budak itu pandai melukis.** That boy draws well.  
**Pandainya budak itu melukis.** *How clever* that boy draws. (*lit.*)

**Hari ini sejuk.** Today is cold.

**Sejuknya hari ini.** *How cold* today is. (*lit.*)

## Double adjectives

You remember how many nouns are made plural through doubling (i.e. repeating) them. This same principle can be used for adjectives. Double adjectives are used for plural subjects. The subject, however, remains in the singular form. Doubling also stresses the adjective in the superlative form.

<b>Anak saya kecil-kecil lagi.</b>	My children are still very <i>small</i> .
<b>Dia selalu pakai baju mahal-mahal.</b>	She always wears very <i>expensive</i> clothes.
<b>Bunga di taman itu cantik-cantik.</b>	The flowers in the garden are very <i>lovely</i> .
<b>Pekerja kilang itu malas-malas.</b>	The factory workers are all <i>lazy</i> .

## Berapa jauh Alor Setar?

A British tourist in Penang wants to visit Alor Setar. She asks an officer at the Tourist Information Office for directions and other relevant information

TOURIST:	Maafkan saya, boleh saya tahu tentang Alor Setar?
INFO.:	Alor Setar di sebelah utara. Ia Jelapang Padi Malaysia.
TOURIST:	<b>Berapa jauh</b> dari sini?
INFO.:	Kira-kira 60 batu.
TOURIST:	<b>Berapa lama</b> kalau naik kereta ke sana?
INFO.:	Kira-kira dua jam.
TOURIST:	Ada kereta api yang ke sana?
INFO.:	Ya, ada kereta api ekspres dari Butterworth ke Alor Setar. Dua kali sehari.
TOURIST:	<b>Berapa harga</b> tiketnya?
INFO.:	Kalau tidak salah dua puluh ringgit.
TOURIST:	Wah, murah sekali.
INFO.:	Ya, sama dengan lapan dolar wang Amerika.

## Vocabulary

utara	north	ekspres	express
jelapang padi	rice bowl	murah	cheap
batu	mile	sama	same

## How far is Alor Setar?

TOURIST:	<i>Excuse me, can I find out something about Alor Setar?</i>
INFO.:	<i>Alor Setar is in the north. It's the rice bowl of Malaysia.</i>
TOURIST:	<i>How far (is it) from here?</i>
INFO.:	<i>About sixty miles.</i>
TOURIST:	<i>How long does it take to get there by car?</i>
INFO.:	<i>About two hours.</i>
TOURIST:	<i>Is there a train going there?</i>
INFO.:	<i>Yes. There is the Butterworth to Alor Setar Express. Twice a day.</i>
TOURIST:	<i>How much is the ticket?</i>
INFO.:	<i>If I'm not mistaken, twenty Ringgit.</i>
TOURIST:	<i>Wow, (that's) very cheap!</i>
INFO.:	<i>Yes, that's about eight American dollars.</i>

## Language points

### Berapa + adjective ('how long', etc.)

This construction is quite straightforward:

<b>Berapa lama</b> pertunjukan budaya itu?	<i>How long</i> is the performance?
<b>Berapa jauh</b> sekolahnya dari rumah?	<i>How far</i> is her school from the house?
<b>Berapa dalam</b> tasik itu?	<i>How deep</i> is the lake?
<b>Berapa mahal</b> baju itu?	<i>How expensive</i> is the dress?
<b>Berapa tinggi</b> gunung itu?	<i>How high</i> is the mountain?
<b>Berapa tinggi</b> anak lelaki anda?	<i>How tall</i> is your son?
<b>Berapa rendah</b> meja itu?	<i>How low</i> is the table?

### murah sekali ('very cheap')

In this context **sekali** means 'very'. It is placed after the adjective.

<b>Kereta itu murah sekali</b>	The car is <i>very cheap</i> .
<b>Orang itu tinggi sekali</b>	That man is <i>very tall</i> .
<b>Isterinya cantik sekali</b>	His wife is <i>very beautiful</i> .
<b>Merdu sekali suaranya</b>	How <i>very sweet</i> her voice is.

## Exercises

### Exercise 1

Change the following statements into questions, replacing the words in bold type with **bila**, **di/ke/dari mana**, **siapa** or **apa**:

- 1 **Minggu lalu** Adam pergi ke Seremban.
- 2 Adam pergi **ke Seremban** minggu lalu.
- 3 **Adam pergi** ke Seremban minggu lalu.
- 4 Hassan makan nasi goreng **di rumah** setiap hari.
- 5 **Hassan** makan nasi goreng di rumah setiap hari.
- 6 Hassan makan **nasi goreng** di rumah setiap hari.
- 7 Nama penuhnya **Ali Rahman**.
- 8 Pelancong itu datang dari **Belanda**.

### Exercise 2

Change the following statements into questions using **mengapa** or **sebab apa**. Remember to use the question words at the front of the sentence.

- 1 John pergi ke Singapura sebab ada urusan penting.
- 2 Asmah gembira sebab dia lulus peperiksaan.
- 3 Mereka masak banyak sebab malam itu ada pesta.
- 4 Ali tidak hadir di mesyuarat sebab dia mesti pergi ke rumah sakit.
- 5 Dia beri hadiah kepada Ani sebab hari ini hari jadinya.

**gembira**      happy      **hadiah**      gift

### Exercise 3

#### Using Nyा

John has just bought a new house. Here is a description of the features of his new residence. Put them into Malay.

- 1 The kitchen is large.
- 2 The bedrooms are small.
- 3 The lounge is painted green.
- 4 The doors are wide.
- 5 The bathrooms are clean and big.
- 6 The front and back gardens are beautiful.

**paint**      **cat**      **painted**      **dicat**

### Exercise 4

Change the following sentences using **nya** at the appropriate places. Use it with or in place of words in bold. Reconstruct the sentences if necessary.

- 1 Masakan **Susan** sedap.
- 2 Tinggi **gunung itu** 32,000 kaki.
- 3 Harga **buku itu** lima ringgit.
- 4 Rumah itu mahal. Harga **rumah itu** lima ratus ribu ringgit.
- 5 Dia telefon saya tadi. **Dia kata** dia sakit.

### Exercise 5

Make questions about the words printed in bold.

- 1 Umur Amran **32 tahun**.
- 2 Baha tinggal di Taiping dengan **isterinya**.
- 3 Mereka pergi ke luar negeri dengan **ibu mereka**.
- 4 Tahun lalu Pak Kassim dan anak-anaknya berkelah **di Pulau Pinang**.
- 5 Harga buku itu **sepuluh ringgit**.

**berkelah**      to have a picnic

### Exercise 6

Practise the conversation below:

- A: Di mana Pulau Nangka?  
 B: Di sebelah barat Malaysia.  
 A: Berapa jauh dari sini?  
 B: Kira-kira tiga ratus batu.  
 A: Berapa besar pulau itu?  
 B: Kira-kira besar Pulau Pinang.  
 A: Bagaimana cuacanya di sana?  
 B: Panas setiap tahun.  
 A: Siapa tinggal di sana?  
 B: Orang Melayu, India dan Cina.

<b>cuaca</b>	weather	<b>panas</b>	hot
<b>barat</b>	west	<b>India</b>	Indian
<b>Melayu</b>	Malay	<b>Cina</b>	Chinese
<b>pulau</b>	island		

## Exercise 7

Double adjective

You're writing to a Malaysian friend who is about to visit London. Tell him the following in Malay:

- 1 Clothes are very expensive.
- 2 Souvenirs are very cheap.
- 3 The people are very friendly.
- 4 The hotels are very good.
- 5 The gardens are very big.
- 6 The policemen are very kind.
- 7 The men are very tall and the women are very beautiful.

## Exercise 8

**Sekali** – give the Malay equivalents:

- 1 In London the weather is very cold, in Kuala Lumpur it is very hot.
- 2 Food is cheap in Malaysia but travelling is expensive.
- 3 The clothes that she wears are very expensive.
- 4 Her husband is very tall but her son is very short.
- 5 The teacher is very angry and the students are very scared.

short              pendek              scared              takut

## Exercise 9

While in Malaysia as a tourist, you plan to visit the island of Penang. You make some enquiries at a travel agent. How would you say the following in Malay?

- 1 Where in Malaysia is Penang?
- 2 How large is the island?
- 3 How far is it from Kuala Lumpur?
- 4 How long is the flight from Kuala Lumpur?
- 5 How long does it take to go by car from Seremban?
- 6 How high is Maxwell Hill?

flight              penerbangan              Penang              Pulau Pinang

## Exercise 10

Azman is going to London in three months' time on an assignment. As this is going to be the first time for him in a new country, he has written to you for advice. He sends the following questions in Malay. Answer them in Malay as well.

- 1 Di mana Birmingham, tempat yang saya akan tinggal selama tiga tahun?
- 2 Di mana Kolej Perubatan, tempat kajian saya?
- 3 Bila saya boleh berjumpa anda dan di mana?
- 4 Bolehkah saya singgah di rumah anda semasa tiba di London?
- 5 Berapa lamakah kalau saya naik kereta api dari London ke Birmingham?
- 6 Berapa jauhkah Birmingham dari London?
- 7 Tentang makanan, adakah makanan halal di Birmingham?
- 8 Bolehkah saya masak di rumah sewa saya?
- 9 Bolehkah saya bawa makanan dari Malaysia masuk ke England?
- 10 Bilakah musim sejuk di England?
- 11 Adakah murah pakaian-pakaian sejuk di England?
- 12 Bilakah pula musim panas bermula?
- 13 Berapa kadar pertukaran wang ringgit dengan wang sterling sekarang ini?
- 14 Ke mana saya harus pergi untuk sembahyang Jumaat?
- 15 Jauhkah Scotland dari Birmingham?
- 16 Berapa lamakah surat udara dari London akan tiba di Malaysia?

<b>Kolej Perubatan</b>	Medical College	<b>halal</b>	slaughtered
<b>musim sejuk</b>	cold season		according to
<b>sembahyang</b>	Friday prayers		Muslim rites
<b>Jumaat</b>	(per) tukar(an)		exchange
<b>kajian</b>	research	<b>kadar</b>	rate
<b>berjumpa</b>	to meet	<b>musim panas</b>	hot season
<b>singgah</b>	to stop over	<b>surat udara</b>	air mail

# 6 Anda suka berjalan?

## Do you like walking?

In this lesson you will learn about:

- Verbs with the prefix **ber**
- Adding **ber** to nouns
- The phrase **Mari kita ...!**

### Anda suka berjalan?

*While out walking in the park, Asma meets an acquaintance, Wong*

ASMA: Kalau tak hujan saya suka **berjalan**.

WONG: Saya tak suka **berjalan**. Saya lebih suka **bermain** badminton. Lebih banyak **berlari**.

ASMA: **Berjalan** juga satu senaman. Lepas itu saya rasa segar, tidak begitu letih.

WONG: Anda selalu **berjalan** seorang?

ASMA: Biasanya saya bersama adik saya Hassan. Hari ini dia **berenang**.

WONG: Mengapa anda tidak **berenang** dengan dia?

ASMA: Saya tidak boleh **berenang**. Tapi satu hari nanti saya akan **belajar berenang**.

WONG: Kalau begitu boleh kita **belajar berenang** bersama!

### Vocabulary

<b>hujan</b>	rain	<b>lebih suka</b>	to like more ( <i>lit.</i> ), to prefer
<b>senaman</b>	exercise	<b>bermain</b>	to play
<b>letih</b>	tired	<b>berlari</b>	to run
<b>selalu</b>	always	<b>seorang</b>	alone
<b>biasanya</b>	usually	<b>berenang</b>	to swim

## Do you like walking?

ASMA: *If it isn't raining, I love walking.*

WONG: *I don't like walking. I prefer badminton. (There's) more running.*

ASMA: *Walking is also an exercise. Afterwards, I feel fresh, not too tired.*

WONG: *Do you always walk alone?*

ASMA: *I'm usually with my younger brother Hassan. Today he's swimming.*

WONG: *Why don't you swim with him?*

ASMA: *I can't swim. But one day, I'll learn how to swim.*

WONG: *If that is so, we can learn to swim together!*

### Language points

#### Verbs with the ber- prefix

In Lesson 4 we learned about independent verbs, i.e. base-verbs (infinitives) that can be used as they are in sentences without any affixation. The majority of these are intransitive, that is they don't take objects.

There is a second group of base-verbs to which the prefix **ber-** is normally added before they are used in sentences (such as the ones in the dialogue above). Most base-verbs with the prefix **ber-** are intransitive; in fact intransitivity is their main characteristic. Like independent verbs, these '**ber-** + base-verbs' have to be memorized individually.

base-verb	<b>ber-</b> + base-verb	
<b>angkat</b>	<b>berangkat</b>	to leave for
<b>jalan</b>	<b>berjalan</b>	to walk
<b>gerak</b>	<b>bergerak</b>	to move
<b>kumpul</b>	<b>berkumpul</b>	to gather, assemble
<b>kunjung</b>	<b>berkunjung</b>	to visit
<b>kerja*</b>	<b>bekerja</b>	to work
<b>kelahi</b>	<b>berkelahi</b>	to fight
<b>main</b>	<b>bermain</b>	to play
<b>lari</b>	<b>berlari</b>	to run
<b>henti</b>	<b>berhenti</b>	to stop
<b>diri</b>	<b>berdiri</b>	to stand

tanya	bertanya	to ask
cakap	bercakap	to speak
bicara	berbicara	to speak/talk
renang	berenang	to swim
fikir	berfikir	to think
temu	bertemu	to meet
tanding	bertanding	to stand for (election)
saing	bersaing	to compete
pindah	berpindah	to move

\*This slightly different form is due to sound assimilation.

Now here is a short reading passage using some of the verbs.

Pada pukul 7 pagi, sudah ramai murid-murid berkumpul di halaman sekolah. Mereka bermain dan berlari-lari. Tidak lama kemudian loceng sekolah berbunyi. Murid-murid itu berkumpul dan bersiap untuk masuk ke bilik darjah masing-masing. Mereka berbaris di depan bilik darjah dan guru berdiri dekat pintu. Kemudian murid-murid itu masuk ke dalam bilik darjah. Mereka duduk di bangku masing-masing dan mula belajar. Semua diam kerana mendengar guru bercakap.

*By seven o'clock in the morning, a lot of students had already assembled in the school yard. They played and ran around. Soon after, the school bell rang. The students gathered and got ready to go to their own classrooms. They lined up in front of the classroom and the teacher stood near the door. They sat on their respective chairs and started to study. Everyone was quiet because they were listening to the teacher speaking.*

## Language point

### Mari (lah) kita

**Mari**, which literally means ‘come’, is used when the speaker asks someone to join him or her in some activity. The personal pronoun **kita** includes the person spoken to. **Lah** is an optional particle used to make the invitation more persuasive. See Lesson 2.

**Mari kita berenang!**

*Let's swim!*

**Mari kita bermain!**

*Let's play!*

**Mari(lah) kita makan!**

*Let's eat!*

## Siapa jiran sebelah?

*Mrs Wong has just moved to a new neighbourhood. Her best friend, Asiah, also lives in the area and knows a lot of people. Mrs Wong is curious to find out about her next-door neighbour, Susan*

MRS WONG: Susan sudah **bersuami**?

ASIAH: Sudah. Dan sudah ada anak.

MRS WONG: Berapa anaknya?

ASIAH: Dua. Kedua-duanya sudah bekerja.

MRS WONG: Susan bekerja di mana? Dia selalu **berbaju mahal**!

ASIAH: Dia pengurus bank. Dia **bergaji besar** dan **bersuami kacak**.

MRS WONG: Tak hairanlah! Dia juga **berumah besar**.

ASIAH: Masing-masing **berkereta mahal**! Tapi kedua-dua mereka sangat **berbudi bahasa**.

MRS WONG: Sungguh baik saya dan mereka **berjiran**.

## Vocabulary

**jiran**

**(ber) gaji**

**tak hairan**

neighbour

to have a salary

not surprising

**kacak**

**berbudi bahasa**

good-looking

to be courteous,

polite (idiom)

## Who is the next-door neighbour?

MRS WONG: Does Susan have a husband?

ASIAH: Yes she has. And she (already) has children.

MRS WONG: How many children (has she got)?

ASIAH: Two. Both of them are already working.

MRS WONG: Where is Susan working? She always wears expensive clothes!

ASIAH: She's a bank manager. She has a big salary and a good-looking husband.

MRS WONG: That's not surprising! She's also got a big house.

ASIAH: Each has an expensive car! But both husband and wife are so courteous and polite.

MRS WONG: It's so good that I and they are neighbours!

## Language point

### Ber- + noun

When **ber-** is attached to nouns as in the situation above, it indicates either ‘having’, ‘using’ or ‘wearing’ the noun.

<b>Anna ada suami.</b>	Anna has a husband.
<b>Anna sudah bersuami.</b>	Anna is <i>already</i> married. ( <i>lit.</i> ) Anna is already with a husband.
<b>Dia ada kereta mahal.</b>	He has an expensive car.
<b>Dia berkereta besar.</b>	He <i>owns</i> an expensive car.
<b>Alan naik basikal ke sekolah</b>	Alan rides the bicycle to school.
<b>Alan berbasikal ke sekolah</b>	Alan <i>cycles</i> to school.
<b>Wanita yang memakai baju merah itu ibu saya.</b>	The lady wearing the red dress is my mother.
<b>Wanita berbaju merah itu ibu saya.</b>	The lady <i>in</i> the red dress is my mother.
<b>Baju itu ada tali pinggang.</b>	The dress has a belt.
<b>Baju itu bertali pinggang.</b>	The dress <i>has</i> a belt.
<b>Hassan ada duit. Jadi dia mampu belanja.</b>	Hassan has money. So, he can afford to spend.
<b>Hassan berduit. Jadi dia mampu belanja.</b>	Hassan <i>has</i> money. So he can afford to spend.
<b>Bilik itu tidak ada tingkap.</b>	The room has no windows.
<b>Bilik itu tidak beringkap.</b>	The room <i>is without</i> windows.
<b>Alice pakai gincu merah dan ada tahi lalat.</b>	Alice wears red lipstick and has a mole.
<b>Alice bergincu merah dan bertahi lalat.</b>	Alice <i>wears</i> red lipstick and <i>has</i> a mole.

## Apa berlaku di Trafalgar Square?

*Anthony is on holiday in London. While walking with his friend, Sue, a student in London, he sees a crowd of people, some carrying placards.*

ANTHONY: Mengapa ramai orang ke situ? Ke mana mereka pergi?

- SUE: Mereka berjalan ke Trafalgar Square.  
 ANTHONY: Apa berlaku di Trafalgar Square?  
 SUE: Hari ini ada orang **berdemonstrasi** di Trafalgar Square. Mereka bantah dasar kerajaan.  
 ANTHONY: Apa bantahan mereka?  
 SUE: Harga barang mahal. Perdana Menteri pernah **berjanji** bahawa harga barang akan turun tahun ini. Tapi sampai sekarang, barang masih mahal.  
 ANTHONY: Mengapa mereka tidak pergi berjumpa dengannya? Apa guna berteriak di tengah bandar?  
 SUE: Demonstrasi sudah jadi satu amalan mereka yang tidak berpuas hati. Ada juga yang berkumpul di luar rumah Perdana Menteri untuk beri surat bantahan.  
 ANTHONY: Jadi, mereka ini **berpendapat**, **berdemonstrasi** begini lebih berkesan?  
 SUE: Ya, kerana mereka **bertujuan** mendapat perhatian ramai!

## Vocabulary

<b>berdemonstrasi</b>	to demonstrate	<b>bantah</b>	to protest
<b>barang</b>	goods	<b>perdana menteri</b>	prime minister
<b>berteriak</b>	to shout	<b>turun</b>	to come down
<b>perhatian ramai</b>	public attention	<b>berpendapat</b>	of the opinion

## What's happening in Trafalgar Square?

- ANTHONY: Why are (such) a lot of people going there? Where are they going?  
 SUE: They're walking to Trafalgar Square.  
 ANTHONY: What's happening in Trafalgar Square?  
 SUE: There are people demonstrating today at Trafalgar Square. They are protesting against government policy.  
 ANTHONY: What's their protest?  
 SUE: Prices. The prime minister has promised that prices of goods will come down this year. Up till now, prices are still high.  
 ANTHONY: Why don't they go and meet him? What's the use of shouting in the middle of the city?  
 SUE: Demonstration has become standard practice for those who are not satisfied. There are also people who gather in front of the Prime Minister's residence to hand over a letter of protest.

ANTHONY: So, these people feel that demonstrating is more effective?  
 SUE: Yes, because they intend to get public attention!

## Language points

### The extended function of ber-

In the situation above, the application of **ber-** to a noun (n) gives an extended meaning, beyond using, wearing or owning. Here the function of **ber-** is to transform a noun into an intransitive verb. In other words **ber-** is an intransitive verb (vi) maker.

<b>demonstrasi</b> (n)	demonstration
<b>berdemonstrasi</b> (vi)	to demonstrate
<b>Kelmarin ramai orang berdemonstrasi di Trafalgar Square.</b>	Yesterday lots of people demonstrated in Trafalgar Square.
<b>pendapat</b> (n)	opinion
<b>berpendapat</b> (vi)	to have the opinion
<b>Saya berpendapat bahawa dia salah</b>	I am of the opinion that he is wrong.
<b>janji</b> (n)	promise
<b>berjanji</b> (vi)	to promise
<b>Emak berjanji untuk beli hadiah kalau saya lulus.</b>	Mother promised to buy me a present if I passed.
<b>tujuan</b> (n)	intention
<b>bertujuan</b> (vi)	intend to
<b>Ali bertujuan untuk ke universiti selepas sekolah tinggi.</b>	Ali intends to go to the university after secondary school.

## Exercises

### Exercise 1

Use the correct form of verbs given in parentheses.

- 1 Dia suka (kelahi) dengan adiknya. Mereka (gaduh) setiap hari.
- 2 Aman berdiri di tepi jalan untuk melihat orang (main) layang-layang.

- 3 Azman (temu) dengan Aziz di panggung wayang.
- 4 Helen terus (baring) dan terlupa membuat kerja sekolah.
- 5 Ah Chong pergi (senam) di kelab senam setiap hujung minggu bersama kawannya Samy.
- 6 Murid-murid (baris) di luar darjah sebelum guru datang.
- 7 Kereta itu (henti) di tengah jalan kerana enjinnya rosak.
- 8 Abangnya (lari) dalam perlumbaan itu dan mendapat tempat pertama.
- 9 Jangan malu (tanya) nanti sesat jalan.
- 10 Dia tidak boleh (gerak) kerana kakinya sakit.

<b>kelahi</b>	to quarrel	<b>layang-layang</b>	kite
<b>gaduh</b>	to fight	<b>rosak</b>	faulty
<b>baring</b>	to lie down	<b>malu</b>	shy
<b>perlumbaan</b>	race	<b>enjin</b>	engine
<b>sesat</b>	to lose one's way		

### Exercise 2

Translate the verbs in the brackets to use in the sentences in the left-hand column:

- 1 Pak Ali \_\_\_\_\_ Kuala Lumpur. (work in) (go to) (go home to)
- 2 Saya \_\_\_\_\_ pergi sekarang. (will) (can) (don't want to)
- 3 Mereka \_\_\_\_\_ London. (fly to) (come from) (live in)
- 4 Helen dan keluarga \_\_\_\_\_ di pantai. (had a picnic) (played ball)
- 5 Kanak-kanak sekolah \_\_\_\_\_ di halaman. (assemble) (play) (line up)
- 6 Sani \_\_\_\_\_ bilik tidur. (study in) (rest in) (come out of)
- 7 Ayah \_\_\_\_\_ pejabat. (work in) (leave for) (to be in)
- 8 John \_\_\_\_\_ Pulau Pinang. (visited) (don't like) (live in)
- 9 Hasnah \_\_\_\_\_ bahasa Jepun. (speak) (understand) (learn)

<b>rest</b>	<b>berehat</b>	<b>ball</b>	<b>bola</b>
to understand	<b>faham</b>	line up	<b>berbaris</b>
beach	<b>pantai</b>		

### Exercise 3

Answer the following questions using the words given in brackets. Say the answers in full using the correct preposition.

- 1 Anda bekerja di mana? (house) (office) (factory) (hospital)

- 2 Saudara pergi ke mana? (post office) (bank) (school)  
 3 Hassan tinggal di mana? (Seremban) (his brother's house)  
 4 Asiah tidur di mana? (in the room) (on the bed) (outside the room)  
 5 Di mana Kamal letak kasutnya? (in the cupboard) (on the shelves) (under the bed)  
 6 Di mana Ani jumpa beg itu? (in the bin) (by the roadside) (on the floor)  
 7 Rumahnya di mana? (in Kuala Lumpur) (near the school)

factory      **kilang**  
 shelves      **papan tingkat**

floor      **lantai**  
 bin      **tong sampah**

#### Exercise 4

How would you say the following sentences in Malay?

- 1 He walked to his office, went in and sat down.
- 2 She got up at six o'clock, took a bath and got dressed.
- 3 For breakfast, we eat fried rice and drink coffee.
- 4 His wife works from nine to five but he just stays at home.
- 5 His son never wants to study. He always watches TV.
- 6 The car stopped in front of the house. The engine is faulty.
- 7 The children ran here and there. It was very noisy.
- 8 I like swimming but my brother doesn't.
- 9 Patrick is married and has three children.
- 10 My house is small and has only two rooms.
- 11 They said they were successful in the examinations.

breakfast      **sarapan**  
 faulty      **rosak**  
 noisy      **bising**

successful      **berjaya**  
 examinations      **peperiksaan**

#### Exercise 5

Mari (lah) kita . . .

What would you say in Malay when you are inviting a friend to:

- 1 go for a walk
- 2 eat fried rice
- 3 go for a swim
- 4 go to the cinema
- 5 play tennis

- 6 sing a song  
 7 cook dinner tonight  
 tennis      **tenis**      sing      **menyanyi**  
 song      **lagu**

#### Exercise 6

How would you use **ber-** in the following story?

Jimmy is married and his wife is called Jane. They have two children, one is a boy of four years and the other is a two-year-old girl. Jimmy has a large house with a big garden. He drives a blue car.

His wife, who wears glasses, cycles to her workplace. The children made friends with the neighbours' children and seldom fight. They often meet their neighbours for tea and discuss the safety of the area where they live.

seldom	<b>jarang</b>	often	<b>sering</b>
glasses	<b>cermin mata</b>	discuss	<b>bincang</b>
safety	<b>keselamatan</b>	to drive	<b>memandu</b>
cycles	<b>berbasikal</b>	to make friends	<b>berkawan</b>

#### Conversations

Study the following dialogue between a girl and her mother. Note the words with **ber-** printed in bold. Can you understand the story?

#### Ada tetamu, Mak

EMAK: Siapa yang **bercakap-cakap** dengan bapakmu di bilik luar tu, Anna?

ANNA: Ada tetamu, Mak. Dua orang, lelaki dan perempuan.

EMAK: Anna kenal mereka?

ANNA: Tidak Mak. Mungkin mereka kenal Mak. Tadi bapak **bertanya** di mana Mak. Tapi Mak tak ada.

EMAK: Mak keluar jemur kain. Baik Mak **berjumpa** dengan mereka sekarang.

ANNA: Mereka **berkereta** ke sini.

#### Vocabulary

**jemur kain**      drying clothes      **bercakap**      to talk

Study the following conversation between Amin and his English friend John. Note the use of **ber-**.

## Ke Pulau Pinang

JOHN: Aku dengar Pulau Pinang itu indah!

AMIN: Ya, betul. Banyak pelancong **berkunjung** ke sana.

JOHN: Boleh kita **berbasikal** ke sana?

AMIN: Boleh. Masa cuti sekolah, ramai pelajar **berbasikal** ke sana. Kalau dari Kuala Lumpur kita mesti **bermalam** di beberapa tempat.

JOHN: Bila kita boleh **bertolak**?

AMIN: Bila-bila masa saja!

### Vocabulary

**(ber)kunjung** to visit

**(ber)tolak** to leave for

## Reading

Study the text below. Note particularly the uses of the prefix **ber-** + base-verbs, **ber-** + nouns, and independent verbs. Answer the comprehension questions at the end of the story.

### Sahabat pena Helen

Helen baru saja terima sepucuk surat daripada sahabat penanya di London, Margaret. Dia memberitahu dia akan melawat Malaysia. Helen gembira kerana dapat **bertemu** dengan sahabat penanya. Hari Isnin, ia itu hari Margaret tiba di Lapangan Terbang Subang, Helen **berkereta** ke sana. Dia **bersiap** dari awal lagi dan untuk **bertemu** kawannya dia **berbaju** cantik yang **bertali pinggang**.

Di lapangan terbang itu, Helen tunggu di ruang menyambut tamu. Ramai gadis yang lalu, tapi seorang pun dia tak kenal. Dari gambar Margaret, dia **berambut** pendek, **bertahi lalat** di muka dan **berwajah cantik**. Dia **berumur** 25 tahun. Dalam suratnya, Margaret berkata dia akan **berada** di Kuala Lumpur selama dua minggu dan **berharap** mereka dapat pergi **bersiar-siar**. Dia sudah lama **berkenalan** dengan Margaret. Tahun depan Margaret akan **berkahwin** dengan tunangnya dan mereka akan **berpindah** ke negeri Jerman. Mereka **berharap** akan **berbulan madu** di Malaysia.

Selepas beberapa lama menunggu, Helen nampak seorang wanita **berambut pendek** dan **bercermin mata hitam**. Dia **berseluuar ketat** dan **berbaju** tangan pendek. Helen serta merta kenal Margaret kerana dia seorang sahaja yang **bertahi lalat** besar di pipinya. Mereka terus **berpeluk** dan **berbual-bual**.

### Vocabulary

<b>sahabat pena</b>	pen friend	<b>tahi lalat</b>	mole
<b>wajah</b>	face	<b>bersiar-siar</b>	sight-seeing
<b>berkenalan</b>	to know	<b>berbulan madu</b>	to honeymoon
<b>berharap</b>	to hope	<b>serta merta</b>	immediately
<b>ketat</b>	tight	<b>tali pinggang</b>	belt
<b>berpeluk</b>	to embrace	<b>ruang menyambut</b>	reception
<b>lapangan terbang</b>	airport	<b>tetamu</b>	
<b>seluar</b>	trousers		

### Questions

- 1 Can you identify the independent verbs, **ber-** + base-verb and **ber-** + noun in the passage above?
- 2 Answer in Malay these questions about the passage.
  - 1 Sahabat pena Helen dari mana?
  - 2 Bagaimana Helen pergi ke lapangan terbang Subang?
  - 3 Berapa lama Margaret akan berada di Kuala Lumpur dan apa rancangannya?
  - 4 Bagaimana wajah Margaret dalam gambar?
  - 5 Bila Margaret akan berkahwin?
  - 6 Di mana mereka akan berbulan madu?
  - 7 Selepas itu mereka ke mana?
  - 8 Apabila Margaret tiba di lapangan terbang itu, bagaimana pakaiannya?
  - 9 Bagaimana Helen boleh kenal Margaret?
  - 10 Apakah yang mereka buat selepas itu?

# 7 Hari ini berapa haribulan?

**What is today's date?**

**In this lesson you will learn about:**

- Days of the week
- Dates
- Telling the time
- Colours

## Berapa haribulan jemputan makan malam itu? ☺

*Anna and Shah are a husband and wife team running their own business. They have a hectic work schedule and a demanding social life. For the coming week, they have two important engagements but they aren't too sure of the dates and time.*

- SHAH: Anna, bila jemputan makan malam di Kedutaan Perancis itu?
- ANNA: Kalau tak salah, **26 haribulan September**. Tolong tengok di kalendar hari apa?
- SHAH: Dua puluh enam haribulan September **hari Jumaat**. Tapi, bukan hari itu hari pelancaran Kelab Sukan Kosmo?
- ANNA: Mungkin saya salah. Nanti saya tengok buku catatan. Oh, ya! Makan malam di Kedutaan Perancis ialah pada **28 haribulan September** dan Pelancaran Kelab Sukan Kosmo ialah **dua hari sebelum itu**.
- SHAH: Jadi jemputannya **hari Jumaat malam Sabtu**. Pukul berapa jemputan makan malam itu?
- ANNA: Jemputannya ialah untuk pukul **8.00**. Jamuan makan tepat pukul **8.30 malam**.
- SHAH: Kalau begitu kita pergi pada pukul **7.30 malam**. Pelancaran Kelab Sukan Kosmo pula pada pukul berapa?

ANNA: Menurut kad ini, pukul **4.00 petang** dan pada pukul **4.30 ada jamuan teh**.

SHAH: Jadi, **minggu depan**, hari **Jumaat 26 haribulan September**, kita akan ke Kelab Sukan Kosmo dan dua hari selepas itu, kita makan malam di Kedutaan Perancis!

ANNA: Nasib baik minggu ini tidak ada apa-apa. Saya letih sekali!

### Vocabulary

kedutaan	embassy	tepat	exactly, sharp
Perancis	French	menurut	according
pelancaran	launching	jamuan teh	tea
catatan	note	salah	wrong
jamuan makan	dinner		

### What date is the dinner invitation?

SHAH: *Anna, when is the dinner at the French Embassy?*

ANNA: *If I'm not mistaken, it is 26 September. Please look at the calendar to see what day it is.*

SHAH: *The 26 September is a Friday. But isn't that the day for the launching of the Kosmo Sports Club?*

ANNA: *Maybe I'm wrong. Let me look at the notebook. Oh, yes! Dinner at the French Embassy is on 28 September and the launching of the Kosmo Sports Club is two days before that.*

SHAH: *So, the invitation is on Friday night (lit. Saturday night). What time is the dinner invitation?*

ANNA: *The invitation is for 8.00. The dinner is at 8.30 sharp.*

SHAH: *If that's the case, we'll go at 7.30. What time is the Kosmo Sports Club launch?*

ANNA: *According to this card, it is at 4.00 in the afternoon and at 4.30 there's tea.*

SHAH: *So, next week, on Friday 26 September, we will go to Kosmo Sports Club and two days after that we have dinner at the French Embassy!*

ANNA: *Luckily there's nothing on this week. I'm so tired!*

## Language points

### Days, months and years

Days, months, years and centuries in Malay are normally preceded by appropriate words such as **hari**, **bulan**, **tahun** and **abad**:

<b>hari</b>	day
<b>hari Isnin</b>	Monday
<b>hari Selasa</b>	Tuesday
<b>hari Rabu</b>	Wednesday
<b>hari Khamis</b>	Thursday
<b>hari Jumaat</b>	Friday
<b>hari Sabtu</b>	Saturday
<b>hari Ahad/Minggu</b>	Sunday

Note that Sunday is normally referred to as **hari Minggu**.

**Dia pergi ke rumah sakit pada hari Isnin.** He goes to the hospital on Monday.

**Setiap hari Minggu Atan cuci pakaian.** Every Sunday Atan washes his clothes.

Dealing with the daytime is quite straightforward, but referring to nights can be tricky.

**malam Isnin** Sunday night (the night before Monday)

**malam Rabu** Tuesday night (the night before Wednesday)

**malam Minggu** Saturday night (the night before Sunday)

**Hari ini hari Rabu, malam ini malam Khamis.**

(lit.) Today is Wednesday, tonight is Thursday night (i.e. Wednesday night).

**Hari ini hari Khamis, malam ini malam Jumaat**

(lit.) Today is Thursday, tonight is Friday night (i.e. Thursday night).

Here are the months. The key word here is **bulan** ('month'):

<b>bulan Januari</b>	January
<b>bulan Februari</b>	February
<b>bulan Mac</b>	March
<b>bulan April</b>	April
<b>bulan Mei</b>	May
<b>bulan Jun</b>	June
<b>bulan Julai</b>	July

<b>bulan Ogos</b>	August
<b>bulan September</b>	September
<b>bulan Oktober</b>	October
<b>bulan November</b>	November
<b>bulan Disember</b>	December

It is also common for speakers of Malay not to mention the name of the month but use the numerical term as follows:

<b>bulan Januari</b>	<b>bulan satu</b>
<b>bulan Februari</b>	<b>bulan dua</b>
<b>bulan Disember</b>	<b>bulan dua belas, etc.</b>
<b>Dalam bulan Ogos ini, saya akan ambil cuti seminggu.</b>	In August, I'll take a week's leave.
<b>Wong akan pergi ke Australia</b> (lit.) Wong will go to Australia in <b>dalam bulan dua belas.</b>	the twelfth month (December).

The years are quite straightforward.

<b>tahun</b>	year
<b>tahun sembilan belas sembilan puluh empat</b>	1994
<b>tahun sembilan belas lapan puluh sembilan</b>	1989
<b>abad</b>	century
<b>abad ke empat belas</b>	fourteenth century
<b>abad ke dua puluh</b>	twentieth century

For dates, the number is followed by **haribulan** which literally means 'day of the month' followed by the name of the month and the year. For example:

<b>7 haribulan Oktober 1991</b>	7 October 1991
<b>21 haribulan Jun 1954</b>	21st June 1954

In its written form, **haribulan** is abbreviated as 'hb'. For example **7hb Julai 1992**.

We will look at times of day in more detail in the next section. In the meantime, here are a few useful sentences.

<b>Hari ini hari apa?</b>	What day is today?
<b>Kelmarin hari apa?</b>	What day was yesterday?
<b>Kelmarin dahulu hari apa?</b>	What day was the day before yesterday?
<b>Esok hari apa?</b>	What day is tomorrow?
<b>Lusa hari apa?</b>	What day is the day after tomorrow?

## Pukul berapa mesyuarat? ☰

*Chong has a reputation for turning up late at meetings and he is forever missing appointments. Fatimah, his colleague, is anxious that he should turn up to a crucial board meeting on time, as it is rumoured that his promotion is on the agenda. Fatimah tries to persuade her laid-back colleague to be more organized*

FATIMAH: Pukul berapa mesyuarat esok?

CHONG: Tak tahu lah. Mungkin petang.

FATIMAH: Kau mesti tahu masa yang tepat. Kalau tidak, terlambat pula!

CHONG: Oh, ya menurut surat ini, **pukul 3.15 (pukul tiga suku)**.

FATIMAH: Semua dokumen-dokumen sudah siap?

CHONG: Belum, tapi masih ada banyak masa lagi. Bila saya sampai pejabat pada **pukul 8.30 (pukul lapan setengah)**, saya harus berjumpa Ketua Kerani, kemudian bolehlah saya habiskan surat-surat itu.

FATIMAH: Bukankah kau mesti berjumpa Encik Rama pula pada **pukul 12.45 (pukul dua belas tiga suku)**? Mana ada masa untuk membuat kerja itu? Habiskanlah hari ini sebelum kau pulang!

CHONG: Tak boleh. Sekarang sudahpun **kurang lima minit pukul 5.00**. Kawan saya akan datang jemput saya pada **pukul 5.15 (pukul lima suku)**.

FATIMAH: Kalau kau tak selesaikan kerja itu sebelum mesyuarat kau akan lambat lagi dan semua orang tertunggu-tunggu nanti! Bawalah kerja itu balik dan habiskan di rumah!

CHONG: Itu satu cadangan yang baik. Selepas pulang dari berdansa malam ini, saya akan habiskan! Saya pasti habis **dalam masa dua jam**.

### Vocabulary

<b>dokumen</b>	documents	<b>berdansa</b>	to dance
<b>jemput</b>	to fetch	<b>siap</b>	ready
<b>cadangan</b>	proposal/idea	<b>selesai</b>	to complete, to finish

### What time is the meeting?

FATIMAH: *What time is the meeting tomorrow?*

CHONG: *Don't know. Perhaps in the afternoon.*

FATIMAH: *You must know the exact time. If not you'll be late again!*

CHONG: *Oh, yes, according to this letter, (it is at) 3.15 (a quarter past three).*

FATIMAH: *Are all the documents ready?*

CHONG: *Not yet, but there's still plenty of time. When I reach the office at 8.30 (half past eight), I have to meet the Chief Clerk, only after that can I finish those letters.*

FATIMAH: *Aren't you meeting Mr. Rama too at 12.45 (three quarter of an hour past twelve)? Where is the time for you to do the work? Finish them today before you go home!*

CHONG: *(I) can't. It's already five minutes to five. A friend is fetching me at 5.15 (a quarter past five).*

FATIMAH: *If you don't finish the work before the meeting, you'll be late again and everyone will be kept waiting! Bring home the work and finish it at home!*

CHONG: *A good idea. I'll finish it after the dance tonight. I'll be sure to finish it in two hours.*

### Language points

#### Telling the time

There are several ways of telling the time in Malay. Most of the time, the hour is stated first followed by the minutes as discussed earlier. But it is not unusual to start off with the minutes. For time with minutes, the key words to use are **selepas** ('after') and **kurang** or **sebelum** ('less' or 'before').

**Pukul berapa sekarang?**

**Sekarang pukul \_\_\_\_\_**

Time with hours only:

**pukul lapan**

eight o'clock

**pukul sebelas**

eleven o'clock

**pukul sembilan**

nine o'clock

Literally, **pukul** means 'to strike' or 'to hit'. Thus, with references to time, it is apt that **pukul** is used to convey the message as the hand of the clock 'strikes' a number.

Time with minutes. Use **kurang**, or **sebelum** or **selepas**:

8.10

**sepuluh minit selepas pukul lapan**

ten minutes past eight

9.20	<b>dua puluh minit selepas pukul sembilan</b> twenty minutes past nine
7.50	<b>kurang sepuluh minit pukul lapan</b> ten minutes to eight
	<b>sepuluh minit sebelum pukul lapan</b> ten minutes to eight
8.45	<b>kurang lima belas minit pukul sembilan</b> fifteen minutes to nine
	<b>kurang suku pukul sembilan</b> a quarter to nine
4.15	<b>lima belas minit selepas pukul empat</b> fifteen minutes past four
5.45	<b>kurang lima belas minit pukul enam</b> fifteen minutes to six
	<b>kurang suku pukul enam</b> a quarter to six
<b>suku</b>	a quarter
<b>tiga suku</b>	three quarters
<b>setengah</b>	half

We have seen how **suku** and **tiga suku** are used. For half past the hour, the word **setengah** is used and it literally means half of the hour referred to:

8.30	<b>lapan setengah</b>
2.30	<b>dua setengah</b>
12.30	<b>dua belas setengah</b>

Note that **pagi** ('morning'), **tengah hari** ('noon') and **petang** ('afternoon') can be added after the time as appropriate.

When asking the duration of time, the words **jam** ('hour'), **minit** ('minute') and **saat** ('second') are used as follows:

<b>Dia habis dalam masa satu jam,</b>	She finished in one hour, twenty
<b>dua puluh minit dan lima saat.</b>	minutes and five seconds.
<b>Rita berada di dalam bilik itu selama dua jam tiga puluh lima minit dan sepuluh saat.</b>	Rita was in that room for the duration of two hours, thirty-five minutes and ten seconds.

## Warna itu tak sesuai

*Jenny Tan and her friend Nani are at a rather boring party*

<b>JENNY:</b>	Tengok tu! Siapa yang <b>berbaju merah, kasut merah</b> dan <b>beg merah</b> tu?
<b>NANI:</b>	Siapa lagi, kalau bukan Anna. Dia suka pakai baju yang sesuai warna dengan kasut dan beg.
<b>JENNY:</b>	Memang warna merah sesuai dengannya. Dia <b>berkulit putih</b> . Warna apa pun menarik.
<b>NANI:</b>	Bukan macam Rita tu. Dia pakai <b>seluar hijau</b> tapi <b>blausnya merah</b> . Kasutnya pula kuning.
<b>JENNY:</b>	Saya tak suka pakai <b>warna hijau</b> . Warna itu tak sesuai dengan kulit saya.
<b>NANI:</b>	Wanita itu pandai bergaya. Dia pakai <b>seluar hitam</b> , tapi blausnya berbagai warna; ada <b>warna kuning</b> , ada <b>warna merah</b> dan ada <b>warna hijau</b> . Sungguh menarik. Kasut dan begnya juga ada warna-warna yang sama.
<b>NANI:</b>	Kita pandai mengata orang. Tengoklah kau, Jenny. Kasut kau <b>biru</b> dan beg kau <b>merah jambu</b> !

## Vocabulary

<b>sesuai</b>	to match, suit	<b>bergaya</b>	to be fashionable, to dress well
<b>putih</b>	white	<b>berbagai</b>	various
<b>menarik</b>	attractive	<b>mengata</b>	to gossip
<b>hijau</b>	green	<b>merah jambu</b>	pink
<b>blaus</b>	blouse	<b>kuning</b>	yellow
<b>kulit</b>	skin, complexion		

## The colour doesn't suit

<b>JENNY:</b>	<i>Look at that! Who's that in the red dress, red shoes and the red bag?</i>
<b>NANI:</b>	<i>Who else but Anna. She likes to co-ordinate the colour of her clothes with her bag and shoes.</i>
<b>JENNY:</b>	<i>(The colour) Red really suits her. She has fair skin. Any colour would be attractive.</i>
<b>NANI:</b>	<i>Not like that Rita. She's wearing green trousers but her blouse is red. Her shoes are yellow.</i>
<b>JENNY:</b>	<i>I don't like to wear green. The colour doesn't suit my skin (complexion).</i>

- NANI: *That lady dresses well. She's wearing black trousers, but her blouse is a variety of colours; there's yellow, red and green. Very attractive. Her shoes and bag have the all the same colours too.*
- NANI: *We are really clever at gossiping (about people). Just look at you, Jenny (lit.). Your shoes are blue and your bag is pink!*

## Language points

### Colours

Unlike English, the colour word is placed after the noun it is describing.

<b>merah</b>	red	<b>permaidani merah</b>	red carpet
<b>kuning</b>	yellow	<b>baju kuning</b>	yellow dress
<b>hijau</b>	green	<b>rumput hijau</b>	green grass
<b>biru</b>	blue	<b>laut biru</b>	blue sea
<b>coklat</b>	brown	<b>beg coklat</b>	brown bag
<b>hitam</b>	black	<b>rambut hitam</b>	black hair
<b>putih</b>	white	<b>kasut putih</b>	white shoes
<b>ungu</b>	purple	<b>bunga ungu</b>	purple flower
<b>kelabu</b>	grey	<b>mata kelabu</b>	grey eyes

Note that for light colours, just add **muda** ('young') after the colour and **tua** ('old') for dark colours.

<b>biru tua</b>	dark blue
<b>hijau muda</b>	light green

## Exercises

### Exercise 1

Complete the sentences using the appropriate names of days:

- 1 Hari ini hari Selasa. Esok hari \_\_\_\_\_ Lusa hari \_\_\_\_\_
- 2 Hari ini hari Khamis. Esok hari \_\_\_\_\_ Lusa hari \_\_\_\_\_
- 3 Esok hari Isnin. Kelmarin hari \_\_\_\_\_ Kelmarin dulu hari \_\_\_\_\_
- 4 Kelmarin hari Rabu. Hari ini hari \_\_\_\_\_ Lusa hari \_\_\_\_\_
- 5 Lusa hari Jumaat. Hari ini hari \_\_\_\_\_ Kelmarin hari \_\_\_\_\_

- 6 Kelmarin dulu hari Isnin. Hari ini hari \_\_\_\_\_ Kelmarin hari \_\_\_\_\_
- 7 Hari ini hari Isnin. Malam ini malam \_\_\_\_\_ Esok hari \_\_\_\_\_
- 8 Kelmarin hari Jumaat. Malam semalam, malam \_\_\_\_\_
- 9 Hari ini hari Minggu, malam ini malam \_\_\_\_\_

### Exercise 2

Fill in the blanks with the appropriate words:

- 1 Dalam satu tahun ada \_\_\_\_\_ bulan.
- 2 Dalam \_\_\_\_\_ ada tiga puluh hari.
- 3 Dalam satu hari ada \_\_\_\_\_ jam.
- 4 Dalam \_\_\_\_\_ ada 60 minit.
- 5 Dalam satu minit ada \_\_\_\_\_ saat.
- 6 Dalam \_\_\_\_\_ ada tujuh hari.
- 7 Dalam \_\_\_\_\_ ada empat puluh lapan jam.
- 8 Dalam \_\_\_\_\_ ada dua puluh empat bulan.
- 9 Dalam \_\_\_\_\_ ada dua puluh satu hari.
- 10 Dalam \_\_\_\_\_ ada lima puluh dua minggu.

### Exercise 3

Complete the following sentences:

- 1 Sekarang bulan Oktober. Bulan akan datang bulan \_\_\_\_\_
- 2 Bulan lepas bulan Mei. Bulan ini bulan \_\_\_\_\_
- 3 Bulan depan bulan Jun. Bulan lalu bulan \_\_\_\_\_
- 4 Sekarang bulan Mac. Bulan \_\_\_\_\_ bulan Februari.
- 5 Bulan ini bulan Mac. Bulan \_\_\_\_\_ bulan April.
- 6 Bulan lalu bulan Ogos. Bulan ini bulan \_\_\_\_\_ Bulan akan datang bulan \_\_\_\_\_

### Exercise 4

Answer the questions using the correct dates:

- 1 Hari ini 2 haribulan Januari. Kelmarin berapa haribulan?
- 2 Kelmarin 15 haribulan September. Hari ini berapa haribulan?
- 3 Hari ini 7 haribulan Disember. Esok berapa haribulan?
- 4 Hari Krismas berapa haribulan?
- 5 Berapa haribulan Hari Kemerdekaan Amerika?
- 6 Tahun baru berapa haribulan?

- 7 Berapa haribulan Hari Kemerdekaan Malaysia?
- 8 Berapa haribulan hari jadi anda?

### Exercise 5

Say the following dates in Malay. Follow the examples:

- |              |   |
|--------------|---|
| 24 Mei 1974  | <b>dua puluh empat haribulan Mei tahun sembilan belas tujuh puluh empat</b> |
| 3 Julai 1953 | <b>tiga haribulan Julai tahun sembilan belas lima puluh tiga</b>            |

28 June 1985, 1 February 1990, 22 April 1948, 14 May 1967, 31 January 1843, 29 August 1865, 16 July 1991, 7 December 1942, 18 March 1939, 30 October 1946

### Exercise 6

Say the following sentences in Malay:

- 1 Every morning I wake up at 6.30.
- 2 I get dressed at seven.
- 3 I have breakfast at 7.15.
- 4 I start work at 8.30.
- 5 At 9.30 I have a morning meeting for half an hour.
- 6 At 12.30 I have my lunch for one hour.
- 7 I leave the office at five.
- 8 At 7.15 I have dinner with the family.
- 9 I read the newspapers from 8.30 to nine.
- 10 At ten I go to sleep.

### Exercise 7

Using the time given in brackets, answer the following questions using **setengah**, **suku**, **tiga suku**, **kurang**, **sebelum** and **selepas**:

- 1 Pukul berapa saudara mahu pergi? (7.20), (5.30), (2.45)
- 2 Pukul berapa dia mandi? (6.30), (7.00), (7.45) pagi
- 3 Pukul berapa mereka pulang (8.30) (9.45), (10.30) malam dari panggung wayang?
- 4 Bila pekerja-pekerja itu habis kerja? (5.45), (6.30), (4.30) petang
- 5 Amat habis belajar pukul berapa? (3.15), (2.45), (1.30) petang

### Exercise 8

Answer in a complete sentence the following questions, using the Malay translation of the words given in parentheses:

- |                                     |                                   |
|-------------------------------------|-----------------------------------|
| 1 Dia pakai baju warna apa?         | (red and blue with white ribbons) |
| 2 Apa warna bunga di atas meja itu? | (yellow, pink, red)               |
| 3 Kasut Ani warna apa?              | (grey, dark red)                  |
| 4 Apa warna kereta Samad?           | (light blue, grey)                |
| 5 Apa warna kesukaan anda?          | (yellow, purple, green)           |
- 
- |              |               |                 |                  |
|--------------|---------------|-----------------|------------------|
| <b>reben</b> | <b>ribbon</b> | <b>kesukaan</b> | <b>favourite</b> |
|--------------|---------------|-----------------|------------------|

### Conversation

#### Berbaju tebal di musim sejuk

*An American, Tony, on a flight back to New York, finds himself seated next to a Malaysian, Samad, who is going to study in America. The Malaysian student is anxious to know about the weather in December*

- SAMAD: **Bulan Disember** ini tentunya sejuk di New York.  
TONY: Ya, biasanya sejuk sekali dan kadang-kadang salji akan turun.  
SAMAD: Berapa bulan musim sejuk di sana?  
TONY: Biasanya lebih **setengah tahun**. Dari **bulan Oktober** hingga **bulan Mei**. Kalau di Malaysia hampir sepanjang tahun hujan, ya?  
SAMAD: Tapi kalau hujan, tidaklah terlalu sejuk dan tidak perlu pakai baju tebal.  
TONY: Memang betul. Tapi kita tidak boleh lupa bawa payung. Di Amerika pula, **musim sejuk**, jangan lupa bawa sarung tangan, topi dan pakai kot yang tebal. Kadang-kadang mesti pakai but.  
SAMAD: Jadi musim panas hanya sebentar saja, tidak seperti Malaysia?  
TONY: Ya, tapi banyak tempat indah untuk berkunjung.  
SAMAD: Bila cuti universiti bolehlah bersiar-siar. Kalau tidak mesti belajar dulu!

### Vocabulary

<b>salji</b>	snow	<b>sarung tangan</b>	gloves
<b>hampir</b>	nearly	<b>topi</b>	hat
<b>tebal</b>	thick	<b>sebentar</b>	a little while/a short period of time
<b>payung</b>	umbrella		
<b>kot</b>	coat	<b>indah</b>	beautiful (view)
<b>but</b>	boots		

### Reading

Study the text. Note especially the words or phrases for days and months and also the uses of **ber** and independent verbs. Answer the comprehension questions at the end of the passage.

### Musim di Malaysia

Tidak seperti negara-negara di barat, Malaysia tidak mempunyai empat musim. Oleh kerana ia **berada** di kawasan tropika, ia hanya mempunyai musim panas dan musim hujan. Musim hujan **bermula** pada kira-kira **bulan Oktober** dan **berakhir** pada **bulan Mac**. Di beberapa bahagian Malaysia seperti di bahagian timur, iaitu di Kelantan dan Terengganu, musim ini ialah musim tengkujuh dan dalam musim ini hujan turun tidak **berhenti-henti**. Nelayan-nelayan yang mencari makan dengan cara tangkap ikan tidak dapat keluar ke laut. Kebanyakan rumah mereka tinggi supaya air tidak masuk ke dalam rumah. Kebanyakan dari mereka juga mempunyai sampan kerana mereka terpaksa pergi ke sana sini dengan sampan apabila jalan raya tidak dapat diguna.

Pada **musim panas** pula, cuaca panas sekali. Matahari pancar dengan terik. Di Malaysia, tidak seperti barat, kita terpaksa mandi sekurang-kurangnya **tiga kali sehari**. Di sesetengah rumah, terutama sekali di bandar-bandar, penghuninya pasang sistem penyaman udara. Dalam kebanyakan kereta ada sistem penyaman udara, kerana ini memang sudah menjadi satu keperluan. Rumah-rumah papan tidak perlu sistem ini kerana angin dapat masuk dinding-dinding papan.

Pelancong-pelancong dari negara barat yang lari dari musim sejuk di negara mereka memang suka **berjemur** di pantai-pantai di Malaysia. Ada juga beberapa tempat tinggi di Malaysia yang berhawa sejuk, seperti di Cameron Highlands, Frasers Hill dan

Bukit Maxwell. Di sinilah ramai pelancong tempatan bawa keluarga dan kawan-kawan mereka untuk bercuti. Pada **hujung minggu**, seperti **hari Sabtu** dan **hari Ahad**, ramai orang tempatan berkelah di pantai ataupun di tempat pergunungan yang indah.

Oleh kerana cuaca panas di Malaysia, orang ramai memakai pakaian yang ringkas, tanpa kot tebal dan sarung tangan. Mereka **berpakaian tipis**.

### Vocabulary

<b>timur</b>	east	<b>sistem penyaman</b>	air conditioner
<b>musim tengkujuh</b>	monsoon season	<b>udara</b>	
<b>nelayan</b>	fisherman	<b>papan</b>	wood
<b>mencari makan</b>	to earn a living	<b>dinding</b>	wall
<b>tangkap</b>	to catch	<b>keperluan</b>	necessity
<b>ikan</b>	fish	<b>berjemur</b>	to sunbathe
<b>laut</b>	sea	<b>ringkas</b>	simple (brief)
<b>pancar</b>	to shine	<b>tipis</b>	thin
<b>terik</b>	strong (as in sunshine)	<b>supaya</b>	so that
<b>penghuni</b>	occupant	<b>sampan</b>	boat, sampan
<b>pasang</b>	to fit	<b>bawa</b>	to bring

### Soalan-soalan

- 1 Di Malaysia ada berapa musim?
- 2 Dari bulan berapa hingga bulan berapa musim hujan di Malaysia?
- 3 Bagaimana orang ramai pergi ke sana sini kalau berlaku banjir?
- 4 Musim hujan di bahagian Timur Malaysia dikenali sebagai musim apa?
- 5 Musim apa musim hujan di bahagian Timur Malaysia? Kalau cuaca terlalu panas, rumah-rumah guna apa?
- 6 Mengapa rumah-rumah di kampung tidak perlu menggunakan sistem penyaman udara?
- 7 Di hujung minggu dan waktu cuti ke mana orang tempatan suka melawat?
- 8 Apakah nama tempat-tempat tinggi di Malaysia?
- 9 Siapa suka berjemur di tepi pantai?
- 10 Bagaimana pakaian orang Malaysia?

**banjir** flood

# 8 Menunggu siapa?

## Who are you waiting for?

In this lesson you will learn about:

- Prefixes **me** and **me\_kan** as transitive verb makers
- Assimilation of sounds resulting from the use of **me**
- The phrase **pernah**

### Menunggu siapa?

Ahmad is waiting for his friend Abu at a bus stop when he sees his elder sister, Mariam. She teases him about his well-groomed appearance

- MARIAM: Ahmad, kau **menunggu** siapa di sini?  
 AHMAD: **Menunggu** Abu. Dia janji nak jumpa pukul 3 petang.  
 MARIAM: Kakak nampak Abu (**mem**)**beli** barang di kedai tadi.  
 AHMAD: Dia (**me**)**telefon** Abu semalam dan **mengajak** saya (**me**)**nonton** wayang.  
 MARIAM: Menonton dengan Abu kau (**me**)**makai** cantik sekali! Kakak tak pernah tengok Ahmad bergaya macam ini.  
 AHMAD: Sekali sekala apa salahnya!  
 MARIAM: Kau ada duitkah nak **membeli** tiket?  
 AHMAD: Ahmad yang **mengajak**, dia lah yang **membeli** tiket. Abu selalu (**me**)**nolong** dia buat kerja sekolah. Jadi dia mahu belanja saya.  
 MARIAM: Kalau dia membeli tiket, kau harus **membayar** untuk makanan. Itu lebih adil.

### Vocabulary

<b>mengajak</b>	to invite	<b>kerja sekolah</b>	homework (school work)
<b>menolong</b>	to help	<b>mengganti</b>	to repay/replace

<b>lebih adil</b>	fairer	<b>pernah</b>	has ever/had experience of . . .
<b>sekali sekala</b>	once in a while		

### Who are you waiting for?

- MARIAM: *Ahmad, who are you waiting for here?*  
 AHMAD: *I'm waiting for Abu. He promised to meet me at three this afternoon.*  
 MARIAM: *Sister (I) saw Abu buying some stuff at the shop just now.*  
 AHMAD: *He phoned me last night and invited me to see a film.*  
 MARIAM: *Watching (films) with Abu and you're so well-groomed!*  
*I've never seen you so well-dressed!*  
 AHMAD: *Once in a while, what's wrong with that!*  
 MARIAM: *You've got the money to buy tickets?*  
 AHMAD: *Abu asked me out, he'll buy the tickets. Ahmad (I) always helps him do his homework. So he wants to give me a treat.*  
 MARIAM: *If he pays for the tickets, Ahmad (you) should pay for the food. That's fairer.*

### Language points

#### Using **me-** as a prefix

So far we have looked at two verb types: independent verbs and **ber-** verbs. We now come to a third type, those that take the prefix **me**. **Me-** can be applied to base-verbs, adjectives and nouns.

A word with the **me-** prefix suggests that the sentence in which the word is used is in the active voice. When **me-** is attached to a noun or an adjective, it changes it into a verb. Attached to base-verbs (infinitives), **me-** normally confirms the transitive nature of base-verbs.

#### **Me + base-verbs**

This produces many transitive verbs (an area where **me-** is mostly used)

**me- + tunggu = menunggu**

**Ahmad menunggu kawannya.** Ahmad is waiting for his friend.

**me- + ajak = mengajak**

**Abu mengajak Ahmad keluar.** Abu asks Ahmad out.

**me- + beli = membeli**

**Abu membeli tiket wayang.** Abu buys the cinema tickets.

**me- + beri = memberi**

**Mariam memberi Ahmad wang.** Mariam gives Ahmad money.

**me- + pakai = memakai**

**Salmah memakai baju cantik.** Salmah wears a beautiful dress.

**me- + dengar = mendengar**

**Mereka mendengar cerita lucu.** They are listening to a funny story.

The full form as shown above (**mem**, **men**, **meng**, etc.) is normally used in written Malay. In spoken Malay, however, it is often ignored or dropped. So, instead of saying **mengambil** ('take'), Malay speakers are likely to say **ambil**.

**Saya mengambil buku itu daripada Sarah.** I took the book from Sarah.

or **Saya ambil buku itu daripada Sarah.**

**Dia memandu kereta ke pejabat.** He drives to work.  
or **Dia pandu kereta ke pejabat.**

The use of **me-** + base-verb applies only when it is used in statements. However, do not use the prefix when giving instructions or orders, especially when the sentence begins with the verb.

**Tolong ambil buku itu.** (right)

**Tolong mengambil buku itu.** (wrong)

**Angkat papan itu!** (right)

**Mengangkat papan itu!** (wrong)

For more on this see Lesson 12.

**Me- + adjective**

Adding **me-** to an adjective changes it into a verb:

**me + adjective = verb**

<b>me</b> + <b>kecil</b>	= <b>mengecil</b> ('to become small')
<b>me</b> + <b>besar</b>	= <b>membesar</b> ('to become big')
<b>me</b> + <b>panjang</b>	= <b>memanjang</b> ('to become long')
<b>me</b> + <b>luas</b>	= <b>meluas</b> ('to become wide')

**me- + besar = membesar**

**Semasa membesar, dia tinggal dengan datuknya.** While growing up, he lived with his grandfather.

**me- + panas = memanas**

**Bilik itu memanas dengan tiba-tiba.** The room becomes hot suddenly.

**me- + hijau = menghijau**

**Padang itu menghijau selepas hujan turun.** The field becomes green after the rainfall.

**Me- + noun**

As above, adding **me-** changes certain nouns into verbs. Here the subject does the work indicated by the noun. The resulting verbs are intransitive.

**me- + darat = mendarat**

**Kapal terbang MAS sudah mendarat.** The MAS [Malaysian Airline System] aircraft has landed.

**me- + ekor = mengekor**

**Sejak pagi tadi dia mengekor kita dari belakang.** From this morning he was following us from behind.

**me- + telefon = menelefon**

**Amat menelefon saya pagi tadi.** Amat telephoned me this morning.

**Sound assimilation**

Assimilation of sounds occurs as **me-** bumps into the initial sounds of the joining words. Although the changes come naturally for native speakers, you might find this a problem. Here are some basic rules to be followed.

When **me** meets the letter **b**, it becomes **mem**:

<b>b</b>	<b>me- + beli</b>	=	<b>membeli</b>	to buy
<b>b</b>	<b>me- + bayar</b>	=	<b>membayar</b>	to pay
<b>b</b>	<b>me- + basuh</b>	=	<b>membasuh</b>	to wash

When **me** meets the initial sound **p** it converts it into **m**:

p	<b>me- + pakai</b>	=	<b>memakai</b>	to wear
p	<b>me- + pukul</b>	=	<b>memukul</b>	to hit/strike
p	<b>me- + pusing</b>	=	<b>memusing</b>	to turn

When **me** meets a vowel, **ng** should be inserted between **me** and the word:

a	<b>me- + ajar</b>	=	<b>mengajar</b>	to teach
e	<b>me- + ekor</b>	=	<b>mengekor</b>	to tail/follow
i	<b>me- + istihar</b>	=	<b>mengistihar</b>	to announce/declare

Assimilation occurs in the italicised words in the table:

Initial sound	root	prefix	combined form	meaning
1 l	lihat	me-	melihat	to see
m	masak		memasak	to cook
n	nikah		menikah	to marry
ny	nyala		menyala	to glow
r	rompak		merompak	to rob
y	yakin		meyakin	to convince
w	wawancara		mewawancara	to interview
2 b	buka	mem-	membuka	to open
f	fitnah		memfitnah	to slander
p	pukul		<i>memukul</i>	to hit/strike
3 d	didik	men-	mendidik	to teach
j	jual		menjual	to sell
c	cari		mencari	to find
t	tangis		<i>menangis</i>	to cry
z	ziarah		menziarah	to visit
4 a	ajar	meng-	mengajar	to teach
e	edar		mengedar	to spread
i	ikut		mengikut	to follow
o	olah		mengolah	to devise
u	ukur		mengukur	to measure
g	gadai		menggadai	to pawn
h	hayun		menghayun	to swing
k	kayuh		<i>mengayuh</i>	to peddle
5 s	sewa	meny-	<i>menyewa</i>	to rent/hire

## Pernah

There is no one word in English to explain what **pernah** means. It can be translated as ‘has ever experienced’, ‘have done’ or ‘had experience of doing something’:

<b>Kami pernah</b> melawat Negeri Jepun di musim bunga.	(lit.) We have had the experience of visiting Japan during spring.
<b>Amat tidak pernah</b> ponteng sekolah.	Ahmad has not ever played truant.
<b>Saya pernah</b> pergi ke situ seorang diri.	I have been there alone.

## Kita akan menganjurkan pameran

*Encik Ramli, head of a travel agency in Penang, has just returned after a month's holiday abroad. He asks his deputy Sally to brief him on developments during his absence*

RAMLI: Kita akan **menganjurkan** pameran pelancongan bulan depan. Apa yang telah berlaku semasa saya tiada?

SALLY: Kami telah **mengadakan** mesyuarat dan telah **membingangkan** perkara-perkara penting seperti para jemputan, publisiti, tempat pameran dan belanjawan pameran itu.

RAMLI: Kita mesti pastikan para wartawan **melaporkan** pameran ini dalam akhbar.

SALLY: Hussein akan **menguruskan** publisiti dan **mengaturkan** acara-acara untuk selama dua minggu.

RAMLI: Siapa yang akan **menyampaikan** ucapan hari pembukaan?

SALLY: Menteri Pelancongan telah diminta untuk **menyampaikan** ucapan itu.

## Vocabulary

<b>menganjurkan</b>	to organize	<b>mengaturkan</b>	to arrange
<b>pameran</b>	exhibition	<b>menyampaikan</b>	to deliver
<b>mengadakan</b>	to have/had	<b>ucapan</b>	speech
<b>perkara</b>	matters, issues	<b>berlaku</b>	happen
<b>para jemputan</b>	guests	<b>(di) minta</b>	has been asked
<b>publisiti</b>	publicity		

## We are organizing an exhibition

RAMLI: *We're organizing a tourism exhibition next month. What happened in my absence?*

SALLY: *We've had a meeting and discussed important matters such as guests to be invited, publicity, location of exhibition and the budget for the exhibition.*

RAMLI: *We have to ensure that the journalists report on the exhibition in the papers.*

SALLY: *Hussein will manage the publicity and arrange the events for two weeks.*

RAMLI: *Who will give the speech on the opening day?*

SALLY: *The Minister of Tourism has been asked to deliver the speech.*

## Language points

### Irregular me\_kan transitive verbs

Below is a list of words (both nouns and verbs) which require the addition of **me\_kan** (instead of **me-** only) in order to become transitive verbs.

<i>Root words</i>	<i>Newly formed transitive verbs</i>	<i>Meaning</i>
<b>anjur (v)</b>	<b>menganjurkan</b>	to organize something
<b>beri (v)</b>	<b>memberikan</b>	to give something to somebody
<b>bicara (v)</b>	<b>membicarakan</b>	to judge something (e.g. court case)
<b>dengar (v)</b>	<b>mendengarkan</b>	to listen to something*
<b>kirim (v)</b>	<b>mengirimkan</b>	to send something to somebody
<b>fikir (v)</b>	<b>memikirkan</b>	to think of something
<b>pinjam (v)</b>	<b>meminjamkan</b>	to lend something to somebody*
<b>terjemah (v)</b>	<b>menterjemahkan</b>	to translate something
<b>sewa (n)</b>	<b>menyewakan</b>	to rent out something*
<b>kerja (v)</b>	<b>mengerjakan</b>	to do something
<b>cerita (n)</b>	<b>menceritakan</b>	to describe something
<b>kata (v)</b>	<b>mengatakan</b>	to say something
<b>sekolah (n)</b>	<b>menyekolahkan</b>	to educate or school somebody
<b>ungkap (n)</b>	<b>mengungkapkan</b>	to phrase something, to say something

\*Compare with the virtually opposite meanings of **mendengar**, **meminjam** and **menyewa** above (the **me-** only prefix). Examples:

**kerja (v)** → **bekerja (vi)** → **mengerjakan (vt)**

**Susan bekerja di pejabat.** Susan worked in the office.

**Susan mengerjakan laporan itu di pejabat.** Susan did the report in the office.

**usaha (n)** → **berusaha (vi)** → **mengusahakan (vt)**

**Dia berusaha kuat untuk syarikat itu.** He works hard for the company.

**Dia mengusahakan syarikat itu sehingga ia berjaya.** He worked the company until it was successful

**bincang (v)** → **berbincang (vi)** → **membincangkan (vt)**

**Saya berbincang dengan kawan saya.** I discussed with my friend.

**Mereka membincangkan isu itu dengan mendalam.** They discussed the issue in depth.

**cerita (n)** → **bercerita (vi)** → **menceritakan (vt)**

**Bapa bercerita tentang pengalamannya di masa perang.** Father talked about his experience in the war.

**Bapa menceritakan kisah zaman perang.** Father gave an account of the war.

**janji (n)** → **berjanji (vi)** → **menjanjikan (vt)**

**Amat berjanji bahawa dia akan belajar kuat.** Amat promises that he will study hard.

**Ibu menjanjikan Amat sebuah basikal sekiranya ia lulus.** Mother promises Amat a bicycle if he passes.

Used in a sentence, an intransitive verb **ber- . . .** normally requires a preposition (e.g. **tentang** ('about'), **kepada** ('to')) whereas **me\_kan** verb is always transitive – it is followed by an object/noun.

## Exercises

Lists of words are not provided at the end of some of the exercises below. Do look up anything unfamiliar in the Glossary or a dictionary should you need any help. Before you do, however, try to infer the meaning from the context.

### Exercise 1

Give the verbs in brackets their proper forms. Use **Pak Ali** as the subject in the sentences.

- |                                       |   |
|---------------------------------------|---|
| 1 (baca) buku di dalam bilik bilik    | <b>Pak Ali membaca buku di dalam bilik.</b> |
| 2 (kirim) wang kepada ibunya          |   |
| 3 (ambil) basikal dari belakang rumah |   |
| 4 (gali) lubang dalam tanah           |   |
| 5 (masak) nasi goreng di dapur        |   |

### Exercise 2

Find the roots of the verbs in the following sentences:

- 1 Suan mengundang kawan-kawannya ke pesta hari jadinya.
- 2 Ayah selalu menjaga ibu.
- 3 Pencuri itu menghilangkan diri di tengah malam.
- 4 Jangan suka mengeluh!
- 5 Budak itu selalu melanggar aturan.

**mengeluh**      to sigh      **melanggar**      to break (e.g. rules)

### Exercise 3

Give the Malay equivalents of the following. When you have done so, give also the base-verbs.

- 1 She wrote a letter.
- 2 He took a pen from the drawer.
- 3 I caught the thief when he came out of the shop.
- 4 The man opens the shop at nine o' clock.
- 5 People buy and sell things in the market.
- 6 Amir is looking for a job.
- 7 Anna tried on her new dress.

- 8 The waitress brought two cups of tea.
- 9 Mr. Simmons teaches French.

### Exercise 4

Mixed verbs (independent verbs and verbs with **ber-** or **me-**). Refer to Lesson 4 to refresh your memory. Substitute the word or phrase given to transform the verb to its appropriate form.

Model sentence: **Mariam membaca buku.**

- |  |                                     |
|--|-------------------------------------|
| 1 surat khabar                               | <b>Mariam membaca surat khabar.</b> |
| 2 (main) piano                               | <b>Mariam bermain piano.</b>        |
| 3 di bilik tamu                              |                                     |
| 4 (rehat)                                    |                                     |
| 5 (jalan) di dalam taman.                    |                                     |
| 6 (ajar) bahasa Inggeris.                    |                                     |
| 7 (tulis) surat                              |                                     |
| 8 di pejabat                                 |                                     |
| 9 (kerja)                                    |                                     |
| 10 (mesyuarat) dengan teman-teman pejabatnya |                                     |

Model sentence: **Asma menelefon Mary**

- |                                      |  |
|--------------------------------------|--|
| 11 (ajak) Mary (tonton) wayang.      | <b>Asma mengajak Mary menonton wayang.</b>     |
| 12 (pergi) dengan Mary.              | <b>Asma pergi dengan Mary menonton wayang.</b> |
| 13 ke restoran                       |  |
| 14 (makan) mee goreng di restoran    |  |
| 15 (bual) di restoran sebelum pulang |  |
| 16 (keluar) dari restoran            |  |
| 17 (cari) teksi                      |  |
| 18 (panggil) teksi                   |  |
| 19 (naik) teksi                      |  |
| 20 (turun) dari                      |  |

### Exercise 5

An American tourist is about to visit Malaysia for the first time. There are a number of things he needs to do before he leaves for the country. How would he say the following in Malay?

- 1 I need to apply for a visa at the Malaysian embassy in Washington. (**minta**)

- 2 I must go to the doctor for vaccinations. (**dapat**)
- 3 I need to get some Malaysian money from the bank. (**beli**)
- 4 I need to book an air ticket to Kuala Lumpur. (**tempah**)
- 5 I need a teacher to teach me Malay. (**ajar**)
- 6 I need to look for a map of Malaysia at the book shop. (**cari**)
- 7 I need to phone a friend to tell her about my trip. (**telefon**)
- 8 I need to write a letter to a Malay friend in Malaysia. (**tulis**)

vaccination	<b>suntikan</b>	map	<b>peta</b>
trip	<b>perjalanan</b>		

## Exercise 6

Mrs Wong is a director of an orphanage. Her Monday activities are as follows. Say them in Malay:

- 1 Mrs Wong starts work at nine-thirty in the morning. (**mula/kerja**)
- 2 She visits every room in the home and talks to the children in each room. (**melawat/cakap**)
- 3 She discusses the children's problems with the nurse. (**bincang**)
- 4 During the morning meeting with her staff, she plans the week's activities. (**rancang**)
- 5 After the meeting, she opens all her letters and replies to them personally. (**buka/jawab**)
- 6 In the afternoon, she takes a group of children to the zoo. (**bawa**)
- 7 She buys them ice cream and drinks and tells them about the animals. (**beli/beritahu**)
- 8 Back at the orphanage, she asks the children to draw pictures of some of the animals. (**minta/lukis**)
- 9 At five that afternoon, she has another meeting with her deputy director who tells her that someone has given a donation of a thousand dollars. (**ada/beritahu/beri**)
- 10 Mrs Wong asks her secretary to prepare a letter of thanks to the donor. (**minta/sedia**)
- 11 Before going home, she visits the children again at the activity centre. (**melawat**)
- 12 Mrs Wong says goodbye to the children and her staff. (**ucap**)

nurse	<b>jururawat</b>	orphanage	<b>rumah anak yatim</b>
activities	<b>kegiatan</b>	donation	<b>derma</b>
zoo	<b>taman haiwan</b>	donor	<b>penderma</b>

ice cream	<b>aiskrim</b>	centre	<b>pusat</b>
animals	<b>haiwan</b>		

## Exercise 7

Give the Malay equivalents of the following using **pernah** and **tak pernah**:

- 1 Have you ever been to Japan?
- 2 I have bought durian several times in London.
- 3 She has never eaten any rambutan.
- 4 I once saw a man biting a dog.
- 5 I have never travelled alone at night.
- 6 Has she ever been ill?

biting	<b>menggigit</b>	travelled	<b>berjalan</b>

## Conversations

Observe the varied verb forms in the conversation below between an American tourist and a local (that is independent verbs, verbs with **ber-** and **me-**).

## Sesat jalan

- AMERICAN: Saya fikir, saya sudah sesat jalan.  
 LOCAL: Anda mahu pergi ke mana?  
 AMERICAN: Saya mau pergi ke pasar malam.  
 LOCAL: Anda perlu **berjalan** terus sehingga anda **berjumpa** persimpangan jalan. Pusing kiri dan anda akan **berhadapan** dengan bangunan besar. Di sitolah pasar malam.  
 AMERICAN: Terima kasih. Boleh saya **bertanya** lagi?  
 LOCAL: Tentu saja boleh. Tanyalah!  
 AMERICAN: Saya mahu membeli cenderamata. Cenderamata apa yang harus saya beli?  
 LOCAL: Banyak yang anda boleh beli. Orang-orang tempatan di sini **membuat** dan **menjual** kain batik yang cantik-cantik. Anda boleh beli baju batik.  
 AMERICAN: Itu satu cadangan yang baik. Terima kasih.

### Vocabulary

<b>persimpangan</b>	junction	<b>pasar malam</b>	night market (a kind of open market held at night)
<b>jalan</b>		<b>pusing</b>	to turn

Note the varied verb-forms in the following conversation between Andrew, a student of Malay, and his teacher, Hamid (independent verbs, verbs with **ber-**, **me-** and **me\_kan**).

### Saya selalu berlatih bercakap dalam bahasa Melayu

HAMID: Sudah lima bulan anda belajar bahasa Melayu. Boleh anda **bercakap** dengan fasih sekarang?

ANDREW: Ya. Saya selalu berlatih **bercakap** bahasa Melayu dengan kawan-kawan.

HAMID: Sekarang anda fasih **berbahasa** Melayu, bolehlah anda **mengajar** kawan-kawan anda yang lain.

ANDREW: Ya. Tapi saya masih perlu **menghabiskan** kursus bahasa Melayu ini supaya saya boleh **berfikir**, **bercakap**, **menulis** dan **mengajar** dalam bahasa Melayu.

HAMID: Kalau anda selalu **bergaul** dengan orang-orang Melayu anda akan **bertambah** yakin **bertutur** dalam bahasa ini.

ANDREW: Betul, saya juga rasa ini boleh **menambahkan** keyakinan saya **berbahasa** Melayu.

### Vocabulary

<b>fasih</b>	fluent	<b>yakin</b>	confident
<b>latih/bergaul/ber</b>	to practise to mix	<b>tambah/ber</b>	to increase

# 9 Kembali ke kolej

## Back to college

In this lesson you will learn about:

- Further uses of **me\_kan** and **memper\_kan** meaning 'to make/cause'
- **Me\_kan** meaning 'to do things for others'

### Kembali ke kolej

*Today is 7 January. Christmas and New Year holidays have ended. Anwar has to go back to college*

Anwar bangun pagi-pagi lagi dan terus **mengemaskan** bilik tidurnya. Sesudah mandi dan sarapan, dia **menyiapkan** buku-buku dan kertas-kertas penting untuk dibawa ke kelas. Ia **memasukkan** semuanya ini ke dalam beg kulitnya. Sambil itu dia mendengar radio untuk mengetahui berita pada pagi itu.

Anwar mengunci biliknya dan terus ke belakang rumah untuk **mengeluarkan** motosikalnya yang disimpan dalam garaj. Dari situ dia pergi ke universiti melalui Jalan Bangsar. Di Jalan Terasik, Anwar berhenti di rumah Murthi untuk **mengembalikan** sebuah buku yang dipinjamnya sebulan lalu.

Di universiti, Anwar menyimpan motosikalnya di tempat letak kereta. Dia **menguncikan** motosikal itu dan terus masuk ke kelas untuk bersama kawan-kawannya.

### Vocabulary

<b>kemas/me_kan</b>	to tidy	<b>keluar/me_kan</b>	to take out
<b>kulit</b>	leather/skin	<b>lalu/me_i</b>	to pass
<b>kunci/me</b>	to lock		

## Back to college

Anwar gets up very early and tidies up his bedroom straight away. After taking his bath and breakfast, he gets his books and important papers ready to be taken to class. He places all of them in his leather bag. At the same time, he listens to the morning news on the radio.

Anwar locks his room and goes straight to the back of the house to get his motorcycle that he keeps in the garage. From there he goes to the university, passing by Bangsar Road. At Terasik Road, Anwar stops at Murthi's house to return a book he borrowed a month ago.

At the university, Anwar parks his motorbike in the car park. He locks the motorbike and straight away goes into his classroom to be with his friends.

## Language points

### Causative verbs

In Lesson 6 we saw how **me\_kan** allows the speaker to change a small number of nouns into transitive verbs. In the situation above, you can see **me\_kan** applied to adjectives and intransitive verbs. The verbs that are produced from this process are both transitive and causative. Causative carries a meaning of causing/making the object do the work. To make this quite clear, here are some examples.

**bersih** (adj) → **membersihkan** (vt)

**Rumah itu bersih.**

The house is clean.

**Anwar membersihkan bilik tidurnya.**

Anwar *cleans* his bedroom. (*lit.* He caused his bedroom to be clean)

**siap** (adj) → **menyiapkan** (vt)

**Pada pukul 7.00 pagi Anwar sudah siap.**

At 7.00 in the morning Anwar is ready.

**Dia menyiapkan pakaianya.** He *prepared* his clothes. (*lit.* He caused his clothes to be in a state of readiness)

**masuk ke** (vi) → **memasukkan** (vt)

**Anwar masuk ke kuliah.**

Anwar goes to his lecture.

**Anwar memasukkan duit ke dalam beg.** Anwar *puts* the money *in* the bag. (*lit.* Anwar made/caused the money to go into his bag)

**keluar dari** (vi) → **mengeluarkan** (vt)

**Dia keluar dari rumah itu.**

**Dia mengeluarkan buku dari beg.**

He went out of that house.

He *took* the books *out of* the bag. (*lit.* He made/caused the books to come out of the bag)

**duduk di** (vi) → **mendudukkan** (vt)

**Anak itu duduk di atas meja.** The child sat on the table.

**Ibu itu mendudukkan anak itu di atas meja.** The mother *sat* the child on the table. (*lit.* The mother made/caused the child to sit on the table)

**tidur** (vi) → **menidurkan** (vt)

**Anda tidur di mana?**

**Ibu menidurkan adik di mana?**

Where are you sleeping?

Where is mother *putting* baby to sleep? (*lit.* Where is mother making the baby sleep?)

## Ada apa bulan ini?

1994 was 'Visit Malaysia' Year. Malaysian Tourist Boards around the world were busy with promotions to attract tourists to Malaysia. Cultural performances as well as trade fairs were held in various capital cities in conjunction with the promotions. One of the targeted cities was London, and an official from the Malaysian Ministry of Tourism was in London to give a talk about Malaysia's attractions as well as promotional programmes that were to be held in the capital

Tahun 1994 ialah Tahun 'Melawat Malaysia' dan bulan ini sebuah kumpulan seni dari Malaysia berada di London untuk **memperkenalkan** budaya Malaysia kepada orang British.

Malaysia ialah sebuah negara berbilang bangsa. Penduduknya terdiri dari bangsa Melayu, bangsa India dan bangsa Cina. Ini **memperkayakan** lagi budaya negara itu. **Pertunjukan** budaya yang akan diadakan di Dewan Institut Komanwel dalam bulan ini akan **memperlihatkan** betapa kayanya budaya Malaysia. Tarian-tariannya **mencerminkan** berbagai pengaruh budaya asing.

Selain daripada **pertunjukan** budaya, juga diadakan satu seminar yang **mempersoalkan** ‘Ancaman pengaruh asing terhadap budaya Malaysia’. Ahli-ahli forum akan membincangkan cara-cara untuk **mempertahankan** budaya Malaysia dari pengaruh luar. Mereka juga dijangka akan membincangkan cara-cara **memperkuuhkan** budaya Malaysia di samping **memperkayakannya** lagi.

Satu pameran buku-buku Melayu juga akan diadakan. Minat membaca di Malaysia kini sedang meningkat dan ini telah memperbanyakkan lagi buku-buku yang dikeluarkan oleh penulis-penulis Malaysia. Hasil karya penulis-penulis ini juga mencerminkan budaya hidup dalam masyarakat berbilang bangsa.

### Vocabulary

<b>kenal/memper_kan</b>	to introduce	<b>bangsa</b>	race
<b>kaya/memper_kan</b>	to enrich	<b>lihat/memper_kan</b>	to show
<b>dewan</b>	hall	<b>tahan/memper_kan</b>	to defend
<b>cermin/men_kan</b>	to reflect	<b>kukuh/memper_kan</b>	to strengthen
<b>ancam/_an</b>	to threaten/threat		

### What's on this month?

1994 is ‘Visit Malaysia’ Year and this month a cultural troupe from Malaysia is in London to introduce Malaysian culture to the British.

Malaysia is a multiracial nation. The population consists of the Malay race, the Indian race and the Chinese race. This enriches the country’s culture. The cultural performance that is to be held at the Commonwealth Institute Hall this month will show how rich Malaysian culture is. The dances reflect the influence of various cultures.

Besides the cultural performances, there is also (held) a seminar that discusses ‘The threat of outside influences on Malaysian culture’. Members of the forum will discuss ways to protect Malaysian culture from outside influence. They are also expected to discuss ways to strengthen Malaysian culture and at the same time enrich it.

An exhibition of Malay books will also be held. Interest in reading is growing and this has increased the number of books produced by Malaysian writers. The output of these writers also reflects the way of life in a multiracial society.

### Language points

#### The double prefix memper\_kan

**Memper** looks like a double prefix but actually it is not. Generally **memper\_kan** verbs are derived from intransitive verbs with **ber**. The main function of **memper\_kan** is basically the same as that of **me\_kan**, namely to carry the meaning of making or causing. The new verbs produced by **memper\_kan**, however, can have meanings that are significantly or slightly different from those produced by **me\_kan**. Verbs with **memper\_kan** are widely used in written as well as spoken Malay.

<b>berjuang</b> (vi)	to struggle for
<b>memperjuangkan</b> (vt)	to struggle for
<b>Mereka berjuang untuk mendapatkan kemerdekaan negara.</b>	They <i>struggled</i> to achieve the independence of the nation.
<b>Mereka memperjuangkan kemerdekaan negara.</b>	They <i>struggled</i> for the independence of the nation.
<b>bertahan</b> (vi)	to defend/to resist
<b>mempertahankan</b> (vt)	to defend
<b>Walaupun diserang musuh, mereka dapat bertahan.</b>	Although they were attacked by enemies, they were able to <i>resist</i> .
<b>Wanita-wanita itu melawan untuk mempertahankan hak mereka.</b>	The women fought to <i>defend</i> their rights.
<b>berguna</b> (a)	to be useful
<b>mempergunakan</b> (vt)	to take advantage of
<b>Buku ini sangat berguna.</b>	This book is <i>useful</i> .
<b>Mereka mempergunakan bahasa sebagai alat politik.</b>	They <i>used</i> language as a political tool.
<b>alat</b> (n)	tool
<b>memperalatkhan</b> (vt)	to use as a vehicle/to exploit
<b>Komputer ialah sebuah alat yang berguna.</b>	The computer is a useful <i>tool</i> .
<b>Untuk mencapai kemahuannya, ia memperalatkhan sesiapa ia suka.</b>	To achieve his wishes, he <i>uses (as a tool)</i> whomever he likes.

<b>kaya (a)</b>	rich
<b>memperkayakan (vt)</b>	to enrich
<b>Dia orang kaya.</b>	He is a <i>rich</i> man.
<b>Membaca memperkayakan pengetahuan.</b>	Reading <i>enriches</i> knowledge.

## Memperbesar rumah

- ALI: Anak-anak kau sudah besar. Kau harus **memperbesar** rumah ini.
- ATAN: Ya, saya pun fikir begitu. Tapi kalau nak **memperluaskan** bidang rumah ini, saya perlu banyak duit.
- ALI: Kau boleh **mempercepatkan** jualan kedai kau dan duit itu boleh diguna untuk **memperbesarkan** rumah.
- ATAN: Yang memperlambatkan jualan ini ialah pembeli tak dapat pinjaman wang.
- ALI: Ya, itu sering menjadi masalah.

### Vocabulary

<b>bidang</b>	width	<b>pembeli</b>	buyer
<b>jualan</b>	sale	<b>pinjaman</b>	loan
<b>lambat/memper_kan</b>	to slow down		

### Enlarging a house

- ALI: *Your children are all big. You should enlarge your house.*
- ATAN: *Yes, I think so too. But to increase the width of the house, I need a lot of money.*
- ALI: *You can speed up the sale of your shop and the money can be used to enlarge the house.*
- ATAN: *What slows down the sale is that the buyer can't get a loan.*
- ALI: *Yes, that's often a problem.*

### Language points

#### Memper\_(kan) as an adjective intensifier

**Ani mahu memperbesarkan** Ani wants to enlarge her house. rumahnya.

<b>Dia pergi mengembara untuk memperluaskan pengalamannya.</b>	He went on his travels to widen his experience.
<b>Mereka memperkuatkan azam mereka untuk mencapai kejayaan.</b>	They strengthened their determination to achieve success.

The function of **memper** in the conversation above is as an intensifier, for example to make something bigger or faster which is already big or fast. But this is a subjective judgement based on feeling or taste.

Note that there are verbs/adjectives which do not take the form of **memper\_kan** or **me\_kan**. These take the form of **memper\_i**, and they include:

**baik → memperbaiki**

**Dia pergi ke kedai untuk memperbaiki jam tangannya.** He went to the shop to repair his wrist watch.

**baharu → memperbaharui**

**Mereka memperbaharui kempen mereka untuk mendapatkan hak yang sama rata.** They renewed their campaign to get equal rights.

## Rumah rehat Pak Amat memuaskan hati tetamu

*Pak Amat owns a guest house by the seaside. His guests come from all over the world. He makes them feel very at home and tends to their every need*

'Selamat datang, Encik, selamat datang Puan. Silakan masuk.' Begitulah selalunya Pak Amat menyambut tamu-tamu di rumah rehat itu. Dan dengan segera ia **mencari** bilik kosong untuk tetamu-tetamu itu. Sebaik sahaja mereka berehat, Pak Amat menanyakan mereka sama ada mereka mahu makan dan minum. Pak Amat akan **menyiapkan** apa saja yang mereka mahu makan. Dia **membelikan** bahan-bahan makanan untuk masakan Eropah, masakan Cina dan masakan India sekiranya diminta khas oleh tetamu. Kemudian Pak Amat akan menyuruh tukang masak **memasak** jenis makanan untuk tetamu itu.

Sekiranya tetamu tidak mempunyai kenderaan sendiri, Pak Amat akan **menyediakan** kenderaan. Dia mempunyai keretanya sendiri dan dia **menyewakan** kereta ini kepada tetamu untuk bersiar-siar.

Ada juga tetamu yang minta supaya Pak Amat **menghidangkan** makanan di dalam bilik mereka. Pak Amat sanggup melakukan apa-apa saja supaya mereka selesa.

Dia memang disukai kerana dia sentiasa memberikan layanan yang memuaskan kepada tetamu-tetamunya.

### Vocabulary

sambut/meny	to greet/welcome	<b>laku/me_kan</b>	to do/perform
segera	immediately	<b>layanan</b>	treatment
sebaik saja	as soon as	<b>puas/me_kan</b>	satisfactory
bahan makanan	ingredient	<b>kosong</b>	vacant
suruh/meny	to ask	<b>hidang/me_kan</b>	to serve
kenderaan	transportation	<b>sanggup</b>	willing
sedia/meny_kan	to prepare	<b>selesa</b>	comfortable

### Pak Amat's guest house satisfies his guests

'Welcome, Sir, welcome, Madam. Please come in.' That's how Pak Amat usually greets his guests at the guest house. And he immediately finds a vacant room for the guests. As soon as they have rested, Pak Amat asks them whether they would like to eat and drink. He prepares whatever they want to eat. He buys ingredients for European, Chinese and Indian food if it is requested by his guests. After that Pak Amat will ask his chef to cook the special food.

If the guests don't own a car, Pak Amat provides transportation. He has his own car and rents it out for sightseeing.

There are also guests who ask Pak Amat to serve food in their rooms. Pak Amat is willing to do anything to ensure their comfort. He is popular because he always treats his guests well.

### Language points

#### Beneficent verbs

When **me\_kan** is applied to transitive verbs, it carries a new meaning. This new meaning is that somebody benefits from the action indicated by the base-verb. Note the following comparison:

**masak** (root) → **memasak** (vt) → **memasakkan** (vt benf.)

<b>Saya masak nasi setiap hari.</b>	I cook rice every day.
<b>Tugasnya ialah untuk memasak di restoran itu.</b>	His duty is to cook at that restaurant.
<b>Dia suka memasakkan makanan istimewa untuk saya.</b>	She likes to cook special food for me.

**beli** (root) → **membeli** (vt) → **membelikan** (vt benf.)

<b>Jangan beli barang itu.</b>	Don't buy that thing.
<b>Dia membeli baju di kedai itu.</b>	She buys the dress from that shop.
<b>Pada hari jadi anaknya, dia membelikannya sebuah basikal.</b>	On his child's birthday, he bought him a bicycle.

**baca** (root) → **membaca** (vt) → **membacakan** (vt benf.)

<b>Baca ayat itu kuat-kuat.</b>	Read the sentence loudly.
<b>Selepas membaca surat itu dia menangis.</b>	After reading that letter he cried.
<b>Ibu membacakan cerita itu kepada anaknya.</b>	The mother reads her child the story.

### Exercises

#### Exercise 1

Identify whether the verbs in the following sentences are transitive/causative (trans. /caus.), transitive/beneficent (trans. /benf.), or just simply transitive (trans.) or intransitive (intrans).

- 1 Pak Hassan menjual rumahnya.
- 2 Puan Hasnah bekerja di pejabat pos.
- 3 Ayah membelikan kasut baru untuk anaknya.
- 4 Oleh kerana Ani lama tidak pulang, emaknya memasakkannya makanan yang istimewa.
- 5 Budak-budak bermain bola di padang sekolah.
- 6 Susan suka memakai baju batik.
- 7 Majikannya menaikkan gajinya kerana dia seorang pekerja yang rajin.
- 8 Dia menyewakan saya sebuah kereta yang mahal.
- 9 Saya mencarikannya buku yang ia mahu.
- 10 Semua pekerja berkumpul di luar pejabat.

**selendang** scarf

## Exercise 2

Fill in the blanks with the words provided in parentheses:

1 (**naik, menaikkan**)

Dia \_\_\_\_\_ bas ke sekolah.

Cik Gu \_\_\_\_\_ bendera semasa lagu kebangsaan dinyanyikan.

2 (**berhenti, menghentikan**)

Dia \_\_\_\_\_ kerja untuk melanjutkan pelajaran.

Ayahnya \_\_\_\_\_ Amir dari melakukan sesuatu yang tidak baik.

3 (**membeli, membelikan**)

Di hari perkahwinan Susan, ayahnya \_\_\_\_\_ nya sebuah kereta.

Ibu pergi ke pasar untuk \_\_\_\_\_ ikan.

4 (**kerja, bekerja, mengerjakan**)

Siapa yang \_\_\_\_\_ laporan itu?

Dia \_\_\_\_\_ siang malam tapi \_\_\_\_\_ -nya tidak habis-habis.

5 (**berjanji, menjanjikan**)

Bapa \_\_\_\_\_ saya RM500 kalau saya lulus.

Dia \_\_\_\_\_ akan belajar kuat untuk lulus peperiksaan.

**lagu kebangsaan** national anthem **lanjut/me\_kan** to further

## Exercise 3

Give the Malay equivalents of the following, putting the proper affixation to each base-verb in brackets:

1 The mother sat the child on the little chair. (**duduk**)

2 The child put the toy in the box. (**masuk**)

3 The driver took the car out of the garage. (**keluar**)

4 My wife made me a new shirt. (**buat**)

5 I got some money from the bank. (**ambil**)

6 The students organized a party after the exams. (**ada**)

7 Stop. (**henti**) I want to get out of the car. (**keluar**)

8 Can you stop the car? (**henti**)

**toy** **permainan**

## Exercise 4

Mixed affixation (independent verbs, verbs with **ber-**, **me-** and **me\_kan**). Change the verbs in brackets into their appropriate forms.

1 Bila anda pergi, jangan lupa (**mati**) lampu.

2 Jangan suka (**pinjam**) wang. Nanti anda tidak boleh (**bayar**).

3 Ayah (**masuk**) wang itu ke dalam bank.

4 Orang itu pekak. Dia tidak boleh (**dengar**) perbualan kita.

5 Saya belum pernah (**temu**) dengan orang itu.

6 Ibu sudah (**kemas**) bilik tidur sementara Anna (**masak**) ibunya mee goreng.

7 Dia tidak boleh (**diri**). Kakinya sakit.

8 Orang ramai (**minta**) supaya kerajaan (**diri**) rumah sakit di kawasan itu.

9 Ayah selalu (**baca**) adik sebuah cerita sebelum ia tidur.

10 Pak Atan (**isteri**) dua dan sentiasa (**hutang**).

**pekkak**

deaf

**perbualan**

conversation

**hutang**

debt

**kemas**

to tidy up

## Exercise 5

Mixed affixation. Johnny and Susan are in a classroom. The following are their activities. Using the cue words given, say the following sentences in Malay:

1 They listen to the lecture. (**dengar**)

2 They note down the teacher's explanation. (**catat**)

3 They do the exercises. (**buat**)

4 They ask the lecturer some questions. (**tanya**)

5 They discuss a topic given by the lecturer. (**bincang**)

6 They take a break (**rehat**) and have lunch. (**makan**)

7 They return to the classroom. (**kembali**)

8 They continue with their lessons. (**sambung**)

9 They go home at four o'clock. (**pulang**)

## Exercise 6

Mixed affixation. In the evening, Johnny does the following activities. Say them in Malay:

1 After dinner, he studies. (**ajar**)

2 He does his homework. (**buat**)

3 He finishes the story book he is reading. (**habis**)

4 He translates about twenty English sentences into Malay. (**terjemah**)

5 He writes an essay of about one and a half pages. (**karang**)

- 6 He goes to his bedroom. (**pergi**)
- 7 He switches off the lights. (**padam**)
- 8 He sleeps. (**tidur**)

## Conversation

### Anna sedang memandikan Taufiq

*Sunday is always a busy day for Pak Amin's household. There are always a thousand and one chores to be done*

- PAK AMIN: Siapa yang mandi dalam bilik air begitu lama sekali?
- MAK ESAH: Anna **memandikan** Taufiq. Tadi dia mencuci pakaian.
- PAK AMIN: Beritahu dia jangan **memakaikan** baju anaknya dalam bilik mandi. Lama sangat aku menunggu!
- MAK ESAH: Saya sudah **mengemaskan** biliknya sejam lalu, dia masih lagi dalam bilik air. Anna mesti ke kedai pula selepas ini untuk **membelikan** ubat Taufiq. Dia tidak begitu sihat.
- PAK AMIN: Kalau tidak sihat, buat apa **memandikan** anaknya sampai begitu lama?
- MAK ESAH: Tak taulah. Atau sudah menyapu sampah di luar?
- PAK AMIN: Belum. Dia **menghabiskan** kerja sekolahnya dulu.
- MAK ESAH: Saya **mengharapkan** dia menyapu sampah jadi saya boleh masak untuk tengah hari.
- PAK AMIN: Tak apalah, nanti saya buat.
- MAK ESAH: Kalau kita **menggajikan** orang membuat kerja-kerja rumah, bukankah senang?
- PAK AMIN: Betul, tapi ini **membuatkan** anak-anak jadi malas!

### Vocabulary

<b>mandi/me_kan</b>	to bathe	<b>gaji/meng_kan</b>	to pay someone to do something
<b>ubat</b>	medicine		

## Reading

Study the text. Note particularly the words printed in bold which have the **me\_kan** or **memper\_kan** affixation. Answer the questions at the end of the text.

### Lawatan bekerja di Malaysia

Peter Sullivan, seorang pelajar Kanada di Universiti Ottawa, sedang belajar mengenai politik Asia Tenggara. Dengan pengetahuannya tentang negara-negara di Asia Tenggara seperti Malaysia dan Indonesia, dia ingin melawat negara-negara tersebut. Dia sudah pun belajar bahasa Melayu dan boleh bercakap dalam bahasa itu.

Untuk melancong ke Malaysia dan Indonesia, Peter **memerlukan** banyak wang. Musim panas yang lalu, semasa cuti universiti, dia bekerja di sebuah kedai makan. Dia **menggunakan** gaji dari pekerjaannya itu untuk berbelanja di Malaysia. Kedua ibu-bapanya telah **membelikannya** tiket kapal terbang ke Malaysia. Peter **mengharapkan** adiknya untuk menjaga keretanya semasa ia bercuti.

Peter berancang untuk berangkat bulan Julai tahun depan dan tinggal di Malaysia selama cutinya yang panjang. Dia berharap dapat tinggal dengan keluarga Melayu supaya dapat menggunakan bahasa Melayu setiap hari. Dia juga dapat mengenal budaya dan cara hidup orang Melayu. Dia juga berharap dapat **memperbaharui** persahabatannya dengan sahabat penanya Sulaiman.

Peter akan **memulakan** lawatannya di Kuala Lumpur. Di situ dia berharap dapat bertemu dengan Sulaiman yang berjanji akan **memperkenalkannya** kepada tokoh-tokoh politik Malaysia. Dia perlu **mendapatkan** maklumat dan pendapat mengenai politik Malaysia untuk kertas kerjanya.

Peter juga akan mengkaji usaha Malaysia **mempermodenkan** negara sambil **mempertahankan** nilai-nilai ketimuran.

Semasa berada di Malaysia, Peter juga ingin **menghabiskan** masanya di kampung-kampung untuk **memerhatikan** cara hidup mereka. Dia ingin melihat bagaimana penduduk-penduduk **mempraktikkan** adat resam mereka dalam masyarakat berbilang bangsa.

### Vocabulary

<b>pengetahuan</b>	knowledge	<b>perhati/me_kan</b>	to observe
<b>tokoh-tokoh politik</b>	political figures	<b>praktik/me_kan</b>	to practise
<b>kertas kerja</b>	working paper	<b>nilai</b>	values
<b>moden/memper_kan</b>	to modernize	<b>ketimuran</b>	eastern
<b>Asia Tenggara</b>	South East Asia	<b>adat resam</b>	customs and traditions

## Soalan-soalan

- 1 Apakah yang dipelajari oleh Peter Sullivan di Universiti Ottawa?
- 2 Bagaimanakah dia mendapat wang untuk berbelanja di Malaysia?
- 3 Siapakah yang membelikannya tiket kapal terbang ke Malaysia?
- 4 Peter mengharapkan siapa untuk menjaga keretanya semasa ia bercuti?
- 5 Mengapakah Peter berharap untuk tinggal dengan keluarga Melayu?
- 6 Bilakah Peter berancang untuk pergi ke Malaysia?
- 7 Siapakah yang Peter kenal di Malaysia?
- 8 Sulaiman akan memperkenalkan Peter kepada siapa?
- 9 Mengapakah Peter perlu mendapatkan maklumat dan pandangan mengenai politik Malaysia?
- 10 Apakah yang akan dikaji oleh Peter semasa berada di Malaysia?
- 11 Di manakah Peter ingin menghabiskan masanya?
- 12 Apakah yang Peter ingin perhatikan di kampung-kampung?

# 10 Pembangunan di Malaysia

## Development in Malaysia

In this lesson you will learn about:

- **Per\_an, pen/pem\_an** as verbal noun makers
- **Ke\_an** as an abstract noun maker
- **Pe- + verb** as doer of action
- **Verb + an** as a concrete noun maker

### Pembangunan di Malaysia

*John Miller, an American tourist, has been touring Malaysia extensively for the past six months. He loves the Malaysian countryside and most of the time he thumbs a lift from motorists on long-distance trips. On one trip he meets Azman, who offers him a lift along the east coast of Malaysia.*

AZMAN: Sudah berapa lama saudara di sini?

JOHN: Sebenarnya perjalanan saya di Malaysia hanya untuk tiga bulan saja. Tapi saya terpesona dengan **pemandangan** alam sekitar di sini dan saya sambungkan percutian saya untuk melihat lebih lagi.

AZMAN: Saya juga kagum dengan alam sekitar di sini. **Pembangunan** negara ini juga pesat sekali.

JOHN: Saya perhatikan bahawa **pendapatan** negara semakin meningkat baik dari **perusahaan pertanian** mau pun **perindustrian**.

AZMAN: Ya, taraf hidup semakin meningkat.

JOHN: Menurut saudara adakah **perancangan** negara menitik beratkan **kepentingan** rakyat?

AZMAN: Saya rasa kalau **perancangan** tidak menitik beratkan **kepentingan** orang ramai, sudah lama orang ramai memberontak. Saya rasa semua orang berpuas-hati.

### Vocabulary

<b>pesat</b>	rapid	<b>pertanian</b>	agriculture
<b>terpesona</b>	to be fascinated	<b>rancang/pe_an</b>	to plan/planning
<b>pandang/pem_an</b>	scenery	<b>menitik beratkan</b>	to consider
<b>alam sekitar</b>	environment	<b>industri/per_an</b>	industries
<b>sambung</b>	to extend	<b>kepentingan</b>	interest
<b>kagum</b>	to be impressed	<b>rakyat</b>	people of the country
<b>bangun/pem_an</b>	to develop/ development	<b>memberontak</b>	to rebel
<b>usaha/per_an</b>	to work/industry		

### Development in Malaysia

AZMAN: *How long have you been here?*

JOHN: *Actually my trip lasts for only three months. But I'm fascinated by the scenery around here and I've extended my holidays to see more (of the environment).*

AZMAN: *I'm also fascinated by the environment here. The country's development is also very rapid.*

JOHN: *I notice that the national income has increased from both the agricultural sector and the industrial sector.*

AZMAN: *Yes, and the standard of living has increased.*

JOHN: *In your opinion, has the nation's planning taken into consideration the feelings of the people?*

AZMAN: *I feel if planning has not considered the interests of the people, the public would have rebelled long ago. I feel everyone is satisfied.*

### Language points

#### Per\_an and Pen/Pem\_an as verbal noun makers

Many verbs with the prefix **ber-** or **me-** can be transformed into nouns by converting **ber-** into **per-** or **me-** into **pen/pem** and adding **-an** to the end of the root:

Root	Verb	Noun
<b>jalan</b>	<b>berjalan</b>	<b>perjalanan</b> ('journey')
<b>main</b>	<b>bermain</b>	<b>permainan</b> ('game')
<b>buat</b>	<b>berbuat</b>	<b>perbuatan</b> ('deed')

<b>kata</b>	<b>berkata</b>	<b>perkataan</b> ('word')
<b>cakap</b>	<b>bercakap</b>	<b>percakapan</b> ('conversation')
<b>kelahi</b>	<b>berkelahi</b>	<b>perkelahian</b> ('fight/quarrel')
<b>jual</b>	<b>menjual</b>	<b>penjualan</b> ('sale')
<b>pandang</b>	<b>memandang</b>	<b>pemandangan</b> ('scenery')
<b>tunjuk</b>	<b>menunjuk</b>	<b>pertunjukan</b> ('show'/‘performance’)
<b>umum</b>	<b>mengumum</b>	<b>pengumuman</b> ('announcement')
<b>darat</b>	<b>mendarat</b>	<b>pendaratan</b> ('landing')
<b>beri</b>	<b>memberi</b>	<b>pemberian</b> ('gift'/‘contribution’)

In the examples above, the roots of both the **ber-** verbs and the **me-** verbs can be seen as being treated with **per/pem/pen\_an**. Hence we can call **per\_an** and **pen/pem\_an** verbal noun makers.

**Per\_an** can also be applied to a number of nouns to extend their meanings further:

<b>rumah</b> ('house')	<b>perumahan</b> ('housing')
<b>kapal</b> ('ship')	<b>perkapalan</b> ('shipping')
<b>industri</b> ('industry')	<b>perindustrian</b> ('about industry')
<b>surat khabar</b> ('newspaper')	<b>persuratkhabaran</b> ('about newspapers')
<b>sahabat</b> ('friend')	<b>persahabatan</b> ('friendship')
<b>musuh</b> ('enemy')	<b>permusuhan</b> ('enmity')
<b>tubuh</b> ('body')	<b>pertubuhan</b> ('organisation')

### Keluarga Pak Aman

Pak Aman is the proud father of three grown-up children. They have all graduated from college and have good jobs. He is boasting to his friend, Samad, about their achievements and their jobs

SAMAD: Anak-anak Pak Aman semuanya sudah besar. Pak Aman tentu senang sekarang.

AMAN: Ya, saya bersyukur kepada Tuhan mereka sudah mempunyai pekerjaan.

SAMAD: Di mana mereka bekerja?

AMAN: Yang pertama Yasin, seorang **pendidik**. Dia memang suka mengajar dan sekarang sedang mengajar di Universiti Malaya.

SAMAD: Sudahkah dia berkahwin?

AMAN: Sudah, isterinya seorang produser **rancangan television**.

SAMAD: Bagaimana pula anak Pak Aman yang kedua?

- AMAN: Oh, Rozita. Dia seorang **pentadbir** di Jabatan Kesihatan.
- SAMAD: Saya tak sangka dia jadi seorang pentadbir. Dari kecil lagi dia mau jadi **penyanyi dan penari**.
- AMAN: Ya, nasib baik dia tukar fikiran. Anak saya yang bongsu, Rehana, sekarang seorang **penulis**. Dari kecil lagi dia suka menulis.
- SAMAD: Baguslah, Pak Aman. Dalam satu keluarga ada **pendidik, pentadbir dan penulis**. Bapanya sendiri seorang **pelukis** terkenal manakala ibunya seorang **pengarah** syarikat. Syabas!

### Vocabulary

<b>tuhan</b>	God	<b>tari/pe</b>	to dance/dancer
<b>syukur/ber</b>	to be thankful	<b>lukis/pe</b>	to draw/artist
<b>didik/pen</b>	to teach/teacher	<b>terkenal</b>	well known
<b>tadbir/pen</b>	to administer/administrator	<b>arah/peng</b>	to direct/director
<b>tak sangka</b>	did not expect	<b>syabas</b>	well done
		<b>produser</b>	producer

### Pak Aman's family

- SAMAD: Your (lit. Pak Aman's) children are all grown up. Pak Aman must be happy now.
- AMAN: Yes, I thank God they have all got jobs.
- SAMAD: Where are they working?
- AMAN: The first one, Yasin, is a teacher. He really likes teaching and is now teaching at the University of Malaya.
- SAMAD: Is he married?
- AMAN: He is. His wife is a television producer.
- SAMAD: How about your second child?
- AMAN: Oh, Rozita. She's an administrator at the Department of Health.
- SAMAD: I didn't expect her to be an administrator. When she was small she wanted to be a singer and a dancer.
- AMAN: Yes, luckily she changed her mind. My youngest child, Rehana, is now a writer. From the time she was small she liked writing.
- SAMAD: That's good, Pak Aman. In one family there's a teacher, an administrator and a writer. The father is a well-known artist and the mother is a company director. Well done!

### Language points

#### Pe + verb: performer of action.

The prefix **pe- + verb** in Malay is similar to verb + **-er** in English. Its function is to form a noun, which in this case is the performer of the action.

<b>bekerja</b> ('to work')	<b>pekerja</b> ('worker')
<b>mengajar</b> ('to teach')	<b>pengajar</b> ('teacher')
<b>membantu</b> ('to help')	<b>pembantu</b> ('helper')
<b>mengasuh</b> ('to look after')	<b>pengasuh</b> ('minder')
<b>menjaga</b> ('to guard'/'look after')	<b>penjaga</b> ('caretaker')
<b>menari</b> ('to dance')	<b>penari</b> ('dancer')
<b>menyanyi</b> ('to sing')	<b>penyanyi</b> ('singer')
<b>melukis</b> ('to draw')	<b>pelukis</b> ('artist')

### Bagaimana kesihatan Puan Salmah?

*Puan Salmah, an active member of the Women's Institute, has not been well for some time and this is causing concern among members of the Institute. Rokiah is asking Hannah about Puan Salmah's health*

- ROKIAH: Bagaimana **kesihatan** Puan Salmah sekarang?
- HANNAH: **Keadaannya** sekarang lebih baik daripada seminggu lalu.
- ROKIAH: Bagaimana keadaannya seminggu lalu?
- HANNAH: Dia sentiasa **keletihan**. Saya lihat dia sentiasa tidur saja dan tidak mahu makan.
- ROKIAH: Dengan **ketiadaan** Puan Salmah **kesatuan** kita tidak aktif lagi.
- HANNAH: Ya, **kerajinannya** sentiasa mendorong kita.
- ROKIAH: **Kejujuran dan kesabarannya** juga harus menjadi contoh.

### Vocabulary

<b>sihat/ke</b>	healthy/health	<b>rajin/ke_an</b>	hardworking/diligence
<b>ada/ke_an</b>	to have/the state of, the condition	<b>jujur/ke_an</b>	honest/honesty
<b>tiada/ke_an</b>	absent/absence	<b>sabar/ke_an</b>	patient/patience

## How is Puan Salmah's health?

- ROKIAH: How is Puan Salmah's health now?  
 HANNAH: She (lit. her condition) is better than a week ago.  
 ROKIAH: How was she a week ago?  
 HANNAH: She was always tired. I saw her sleeping all the time and she didn't want to eat.  
 ROKIAH: Without (lit. in her absence) Puan Salmah, our association is no longer active.  
 HANNAH: Yes, her diligence has always motivated us.  
 ROKIAH: Her honesty and patience are an example to us.

## Language points

### Ke\_an as abstract noun maker

As you have seen in the dialogue above, certain words can be transformed into abstract nouns by applying **ke\_an** to them:

sihat ('healthy')	kesihatan ('health')
ada ('to have')	keadaan ('the state/condition of')
letih ('tired')	keletihan ('exhaustion')
satu ('one' or 'to make one')	kesatuan ('association')
tiada ('not present')	ketiadaan ('absence')
rajin ('hardworking')	kerajinan ('diligence')
jujur ('honest')	kejujuran ('honesty')
berani ('brave')	keberanian ('bravery')
kaya ('rich')	kekayaan ('wealth')
bersih ('clean')	kebersihan ('cleanliness')
jatuh ('to fall')	kejatuhan ('the decline/fall of')
naik ('to rise')	kenaikan ('the rise of')
miskin ('poor')	kemiskinan ('poverty')
baik ('good')	kebaikan ('goodness')

**ke\_an** when applied to nouns, produces further nouns with extended meaning:

menteri ('minister')	kementerian ('ministry')
duta ('ambassador')	kedutaan ('embassy')
hutan ('forest')	kehutanan ('forestry')
manusia ('human')	kemanusiaan ('humanity')
anggota ('member')	keanggotaan ('membership')

## Saya lapar

Azwan has just come home from school and as usual is very hungry. She asks her sister what her mother has prepared for lunch

- AZWAN: Kakak lapar. **Makanan** apa yang Mak masak?  
 NONA: Hari ini Mak masak **makanan** istimewa, sebab hari ini hari jadi Nona.  
 AZWAN: Mana Mak sekarang?  
 NONA: Dia pergi ke kedai beli **minuman** untuk majlis hari jadi Nona petang ini.  
 AZWAN: Apa yang Mak belikan Nona untuk hari jadi Nona?  
 NONA: Nona tak tau. Masih dalam **bungkus**.  
 AZWAN: Mungkin **pakaian** atau **mainan**!

### Vocabulary

**bungkus/\_an** to wrap/parcel

## I'm hungry

- AZWAN: I am (lit. big sister is) hungry. What (food) has Mum cooked?  
 NONA: Mum has cooked something special because today's my birthday.  
 AZWAN: Where's Mum now?  
 NONA: She's gone to the shop to buy drinks for my birthday party this afternoon.  
 AZWAN: What did Mum buy you for your birthday?  
 NONA: I don't know. It's still in a parcel.  
 AZWAN: Maybe it's a dress or a toy!

## Language points

### Transitive verb + -an: concrete noun maker

The suffix **-an** is a concrete noun maker when added to a transitive verb. The noun is the object of the action indicated by the base-verb:

<b>pakai</b> ('to wear')	<b>pakaian</b> ('clothing')
<b>makan</b> ('to eat')	<b>makanan</b> ('food')
<b>masak</b> ('to cook')	<b>masakan</b> ('cooking')

<b>minum</b> ('to drink')
<b>main</b> ('to play')
<b>hukum</b> ('to punish')
<b>hibur</b> ('to entertain')
<b>nyanyi</b> ('to sing')
<b>lapor</b> ('to report')

<b>minuman</b> ('drinks')
<b>mainan</b> ('toy')
<b>hukuman</b> ('punishment')
<b>hiburan</b> ('entertainment')
<b>nyanyian</b> ('song')
<b>laporan</b> ('report')

## Exercises

### Exercise 1

Mixed affixation: **pem/pen\_an**, **per\_an**, **ke\_an**, verb + **-an** and **pe-** + verb.

From the root words of the bold words, use the appropriate affixation above to fill the blank in the subsequent sentence:

- 1 Malaysia sudah lama **berdagang** dengan Australia.  
\_\_\_\_\_ itu berjalan dengan licin.
- 2 Kami akan **berjalan** kaki ke Pulau Pinang.  
\_\_\_\_\_ itu akan memakan masa dua hari.
- 3 Hakim itu **membicarakan** kes pembunuhan.  
\_\_\_\_\_ itu baru saja dimulakan.
- 4 Wanita itu **membunuh** suaminya.  
\_\_\_\_\_ dilakukan di waktu malam.
- 5 Guru **menjelaskan** latihan itu kepada pelajar-pelajarnya.  
\_\_\_\_\_ guru itu baik sekali.
- 6 Manchester United **bertanding** dengan Liverpool semalam.  
\_\_\_\_\_ itu hebat sekali.
- 7 Mereka akan **bertemu** malam ini.  
\_\_\_\_\_ itu sangat penting sekali.
- 8 Orang itu sangat **kaya**.  
\_\_\_\_\_ nya adalah hasil kerja kuat dan dia memang **rajin**.  
\_\_\_\_\_ nya menjadi pendorong kepada anak-anaknya.
- 9 Adik selalu tidak **sihat**.  
\_\_\_\_\_ nya membimbangkan ibu dan bapa.
- 10 Bapa **mengharap** abang akan lulus peperiksaannya.  
\_\_\_\_\_ nya agar abang dapat masuk universiti.
- 11 Ramai orang **mati** dalam kemalangan itu.  
\_\_\_\_\_ mereka telah dilaporkan dalam surat khabar.
- 12 Dari kecil lagi dia suka **menuulis**.  
\_\_\_\_\_ nya dipuji ramai dan sekarang dia seorang

- \_\_\_\_\_ yang terkenal.
- 13 Aman **melatih** anak-anak muda bermain bola tangkis.  
\_\_\_\_\_ nya diadakan dua kali seminggu.
  - 14 Ali **bermain** bola dalam pasukan sekolahnya.  
Dia seorang \_\_\_\_\_ yang handal dan \_\_\_\_\_ nya sering ditonton oleh ibu bapanya.
  - 15 Wong **bekerja** siang malam di kilang.  
Dia memang seorang \_\_\_\_\_ yang **rajin**.  
\_\_\_\_\_ nya menyebabkan ramai orang sukakan dia.

<b>dagang/ber</b>	to trade	<b>agar</b>	hopefully
<b>licin</b>	smooth	<b>malang/ke_an</b>	misfortune/ accident
<b>bicara/pem_an</b>	to try/trial	<b>mati/ke_an</b>	to die/death
<b>bunuh/pem_an</b>	to murder/murder	<b>puji</b>	to praise
<b>jelas/pen_an</b>	to explain/ explanation	<b>pasukan</b>	team
<b>tanding/ber</b>	to compete	<b>kilang</b>	factory
<b>harap/meng_kan</b>	to hope/expect		

### Exercise 2

Mixed affixation: **ber-**, **me\_kan**, **per\_an**, **pen/pem\_an**, **-an**, **pe-** + verb, and **ke\_an**. Remember that verbs with **ber** are generally transitive, while verbs with **me\_kan** can be simple transitive, transitive beneficent or transitive/causative. Malay base-words are given in the left-hand column below. Translate into Malay the words in the right-hand column.

1 satu	to unite
2 main	association
3 jelas	to play
4 minum	a game
5 kerja	to explain
6 jual	explanation
	clarity
	to drink
	drinks
	to work
	worker
	profession
	to sell
	sale

7 beli	seller to buy purchase
8 tari	buyer to dance a dance a dancer
9 sedih	to be sad sadness to cause sadness
10 bahagia	to be happy happiness to cause happiness
11 tulis	to write writer result of the writing
12 bersih	to clean cleanliness a detergent
13 adil	to be just justice judge
14 makmur	to prosper prosperity
15 pakai	to wear wearer items of clothing

### Exercise 3

Put the words in parentheses into their appropriate places.

1 (**minum, peminum, minuman**)

Tan suka \_\_\_\_\_ air limau. Air limau ialah \_\_\_\_\_ yang segar.  
Henry pula suka \_\_\_\_\_ bir! Dia seorang \_\_\_\_\_.

2 (**bermain, memainkan, permainan, pemain**)

Adi seorang \_\_\_\_\_ bola yang handal. Semalam dia \_\_\_\_\_ di Stadium Negara dan dia telah \_\_\_\_\_ satu \_\_\_\_\_ yang sangat membanggakan.

3 (**bekerja, pekerja, mengerjakan, pekerjaan**)

Pada masa ini memang susah untuk mencari \_\_\_\_\_.  
Ramai \_\_\_\_\_ dihentikan kerja. Sesiapa yang tidak \_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_ mereka dengan baik juga akan dibuang kerja. Jadi semua \_\_\_\_\_ dinasihatkan supaya rajin \_\_\_\_\_.

4 (**menjual, menjualkan, jualan, penjual, penjualan**)

Dari pagi lagi Mak Esah keluar \_\_\_\_\_ barang-barangnya di pasar. \_\_\_\_\_ nya sering dibeli oleh pelancong-pelancong yang datang ke pasar itu. Hasil \_\_\_\_\_ nya dia boleh membeli makanan untuk anak-anaknya. Sebagai seorang \_\_\_\_\_ cenderamata, dia hanya dapat \_\_\_\_\_ barang-barang ini kepada pelancong sahaja.

5 (**menyedihkan, sedih, bersedih, kesedihan**)

Mary \_\_\_\_\_ kerana dia tidak dapat melawat ibunya di rumah sakit. Apa yang \_\_\_\_\_ ialah ibunya meninggal dunia selepas itu. Kawannya dapat merasakan \_\_\_\_\_ nya dan dia juga turut merasa \_\_\_\_\_.

6 (**bersih, pembersih, membersih, kebersihan, membersihkan**)

Ibu nasihatkan supaya kami sentiasa \_\_\_\_\_ rumah. Katanya \_\_\_\_\_ adalah sesuatu yang harus kita utamakan. Ibu juga memuji kami sekiranya bilik kami \_\_\_\_\_. Dia sediakan \_\_\_\_\_ untuk \_\_\_\_\_ bilik mandi.

7 (**belajar, mengajar, mengajarkan, pelajar, pelajaran, pengajaran, pengajar**)

Guru itu \_\_\_\_\_ \_\_\_\_\_ nya supaya rajin \_\_\_\_\_. Mereka harus mengulangkaji setiap \_\_\_\_\_ yang guru itu \_\_\_\_\_. Satu \_\_\_\_\_ yang diberi oleh guru itu ialah: kerajinan kunci kejayaan.

8 (**lahir, melahirkan, kelahiran**)

Hasnah telah \_\_\_\_\_ seorang anak perempuan. Bayi itu \_\_\_\_\_ pada 2 haribulan Mei 1992 dan \_\_\_\_\_ memang dinanti-nantikan oleh Hasnah dan suaminya.

9 (**benar, kebenaran, membenarkan**)

Kata-katanya memang \_\_\_\_\_. Dia tidak dapat \_\_\_\_\_ kereta masuk tanpa \_\_\_\_\_ pegawai tinggi.

10 (**jatuh, kejatuhan, menjatuhkan**)

Apabila negara itu \_\_\_\_\_ ke tangan musuh, ramai penduduk yang terbunuh. \_\_\_\_\_ kerajaannya bermakna bahawa musuh yang \_\_\_\_\_ nya akan mengambil alih segala pentadbiran.

bir	beer	utama/_kan	to give priority
Stadium Negara	National Stadium	ulangkaji/di	to revise
bangga/mem_kan	to be proud of	kunci	key
meninggal dunia	to die	jaya/ke_an	to succeed/success
rasa/me_kan	to feel	nanti-nanti/di_kan	long-awaited

<b>musuh</b>	enemy	<b>mengambil alih</b>	to take over
--------------	-------	-----------------------	--------------

### Exercise 4

Give the Malay equivalent of the following, using the cue words given in parentheses:

- 1 The journey makes me tired. (**jalan**)
- 2 The scenery is fascinating. (**pandang, kagum**)
- 3 His theory has many weaknesses. (**lemah**)
- 4 I don't understand that word. (**kata**)
- 5 Marriage between people from the East and people from the West is common nowadays. (**kahwin**)
- 6 His work is unsatisfactory. (**kerja, puas**)
- 7 During the meeting with her father, she asked his permission to go on holiday. (**temu, benar, cuti**)
- 8 The food served at that restaurant is delicious. The entertainment is also good. (**makan, hibur**)
- 9 His illness is affecting his work. (**sakit, kerja**)
- 10 The flight from London to Kuala Lumpur takes 13 hours. (**terbang**)

### Conversation

Study the dialogue and note the function of **an** as a noun maker:

### Kegemaran membaca

- A: Saya suka membaca tetapi di rumah kurang bahan **bacaan** yang saya suka.
- B: Apa **kegemaran** kamu?
- A: Saya gemar membaca kisah-kisah pengembara. Saya suka membaca hasil **tulisan** A. Samad Said. Dia menulis tentang pengembaraannya di banyak buah negara.
- B: **Karangannya** banyak diterbitkan oleh Dewan Bahasa dan Pustaka.
- A: Buku-buku **terbitan** Dewan Bahasa dan Pustaka banyak disimpan di perpustakaan di sini. Tentu buku A. Samad Said ada dalam **simpanan** mereka.

### Vocabulary

<b>bahan</b>	material	<b>kisah</b>	accounts
<b>kegemaran</b>	favourite/liking	<b>mengembawa/pe</b>	to travel/traveller
<b>Dewan Bahasa</b>	National Language	<b>hasil</b>	product of
<b>dan Pustaka</b>	and Literary Bureau	<b>karangan</b>	essay
<b>simpan/_an</b>	to keep/keeping	<b>terbit/_an</b>	to publish/publication

### Reading

Study the text. Note particularly the noun derivatives which are printed in bold, then answer the comprehension questions at the end of the text.

### Selamat pulang ke tanah air

Susan sedang dalam **penerbangan** ke Kuala Lumpur dari New York. Dia sudah lama tidak pulang ke tanah air selepas **pengajiannya** di Amerika. Dia rasa penuh **kegembiraan** apabila mendengar **pengumuman** bahawa kapal terbang akan mendarat dan dia berharap bahawa ibu dan bapanya berada di lapangan terbang menunggu **ketibaannya**.

Kapal terbang itu mendarat tepat pukul 6.00 petang. Susan turun dari kapal terbang bersama penumpang-penumpang lain dan terus ke tempat **pemeriksaan** pasport. Oleh kerana Susan mempunyai **kerakyatan** Malaysia, dia tidak mempunyai apa-apa masalah dan terus mengambil begnya. Selepas itu dia pergi ke bahagian kastam yang membuat **pemeriksaan** barang-barangnya.

Dari jauh Susan dapat melihat ibu dan bapanya. Dia dapat melihat **lambaiann** mereka. Walau bagaimanapun, **kegembiraannya** bertukar menjadi **kesedihan** apabila adik **kesayangannya** tidak **kelihatan** bersama ibu dan bapanya. Adiknya Anna sedang melanjutkan pengajiannya di sekolah berasrama dan tidak dapat menyambut **kepulangannya**. Oleh kerana telah lama berjauhan, ibu dan bapa Susan membawa Susan untuk menikmati **makanan** Melayu **masakan** emak saudaranya.

Dia memerhatikan bahawa **kesihatan** neneknya masih baik

walaupun ia sudah tua.

Walaupun Susan **keletihan**, dia gembira bertemu dengan saudara maranya. Dia menceritakan **pengalamannya** di Amerika dan tentang pekerjaan yang ditawarkan kepadanya sebelum ia pulang. Dia masih mempunyai **keraguan** tentang **tawaran** itu. Dia juga perlu membuat **pertimbangan** tentang tawaran untuk bekerja di Malaysia sebagai **pengawal** kewangan.

#### Vocabulary

<b>tiba/ke-an</b>	to arrive/arrival	<b>ragu/ke_an</b>	to feel apprehensive/ apprehension
<b>tumpang/pe_</b>	to share/passenger	<b>tawar/_an</b>	to offer/an offer
<b>rakyat/ke_an</b>	citizen/citizenship	<b>timbang/per_an</b>	to weigh/ consideration
<b>kastam</b>	custom (officer)	<b>kawal/peng</b>	to control/controller
<b>lambai/_an</b>	to wave/wave	<b>walaupun</b>	although
<b>sayang/ke_an</b>	to love/favourite		
<b>walau</b>	nevertheless		
<b>bagaimanapun</b>			

#### Soalan-soalan

- 1 Susan berada dalam penerbangan dari mana ke mana?
- 2 Apakah perasaan Susan apabila mendengar pengumuman bahawa kapal terbang akan mendarat?
- 3 Siapakah yang menunggu ketibaannya?
- 4 Mengapakah Susan tidak mempunyai apa-apa masalah di tempat pemeriksaan pasport?
- 5 Siapakah yang dilihat Susan dari jauh?
- 6 Mengapakah kegembiraan Susan bertukar menjadi kesedihan?
- 7 Bagaimakah kesihatan nenek Susan?
- 8 Mengapakah adik Susan, Anna tidak dapat menyambut kepu langan Susan?
- 9 Apakah yang Susan ceritakan kepada saudara maranya?
- 10 Apakah yang Susan perlu buat tentang tawaran untuk bekerja?

# 11 Surat saya sudah ditaip?

Has my letter been typed?

In this lesson you will learn about:

- The passive voice using third person
- Passive questions using **apa** and **siapa**

#### Surat saya sudah ditaip?

Hassan is the manager of a tourist agency in Penang. He is getting ready for a very important meeting with an official from the Ministry of Tourism. Assisting him in his work is his secretary, Helen, and a clerk, Mariam

HASSAN: Helen, di mana fail yang biru?

HELEN: Ada di atas meja Encik Hassan. Semua surat sudah **ditaip** oleh Mariam kelmarin.

HASSAN: Bagus. Gambar-gambar yang **diambil** minggu lepas di mana?

HELEN: Ada di dalam kabinet. Sudah **disimpan**.

HASSAN: Sebelum saya pergi, boleh saya minta secawan kopi?

HELEN: Kopi sudah **dibuat** oleh Mariam. Ada di atas meja Encik Hassan.

HASSAN: Dan tolong minta Abu keluarkan kereta sekarang.

HELEN: Baiklah. Encik Hassan akan pulang sebelum makan tengah hari?

HASSAN: Tak tahu lagi. Akan saya telefon nanti.

#### Vocabulary

<b>fail</b>	file	<b>oleh</b>	by
<b>di atas</b>	on	<b>kabinet</b>	cabinet

secawan	a cup of	sebelum	before
taip	to type	tolong	please
minggu lepas	last week	akan	will

## Has my letter been typed?

HASSAN: *Helen, where's the blue file?*

HELEN: *On Encik Hassan's table. All the letters were typed by Mariam yesterday.*

HASSAN: *Good. Where are the pictures that were taken last week?*

HELEN: *In the cabinet. (They) have been kept.*

HASSAN: *Before I go, can I ask for a cup of coffee?*

HELEN: *The coffee has been made by Mariam. (It is) on Encik Hassan's table.*

HASSAN: *And please ask Abu to get the car out now.*

HELEN: *All right. Will Encik Hassan be coming back before lunch?*

HASSAN: *Don't know yet. I will phone later.*

## Language points

### Changing active to passive

You probably noticed that the sentences used in previous lessons were in the active form. That is, the phrase begins with a subject (doer), followed by a **me-**, **mem-** or **meng-** before a verb and then an object.

The same message can be conveyed in the passive form, beginning with the object. The object is then followed by a **di-** before the verb. The use of **oleh** is optional.

Active	Passive
<b>Mariam menaip surat-surat itu.</b>	<b>Surat-surat itu ditaip (oleh) Mariam.</b>
(Mariam typed the letters.)	(The letters were typed by Mariam.)
<b>Helen simpan gambar-gambar itu.</b>	<b>Gambar-gambar itu disimpan (oleh) Helen.</b>
(Helen kept the pictures.)	(The pictures were kept by Helen.)
<b>Mariam membuat kopi.</b>	<b>Kopi dibuat oleh Mariam.</b>
(Mariam made the coffee.)	(The coffee was made by Mariam.)

### Dia makan nasi.

(He ate the rice.)

### Amat meletakkan buku di atas meja.

(Amat placed the book on the table.)

### Chan menggosok baju di dalam bilik.

(Chan ironed the clothes in the room.)

### Nasi dimakan dia/nya.

(The rice was eaten by him.)

### Buku diletakkan Amat di atas meja.

(The book was placed by Amat on the table.)

### Baju digosok Chan di dalam bilik.

(The clothes were ironed by Chan in the room.)

## Formula for passive voice

Object	Predicate	Doer
Baju biru	dicuci (oleh)	dia/nya (3rd person)
Baju	digosok	mereka (3rd person)
Baju sudah	digosok	(not mentioned)
Nasi sudah	dimakan (oleh)	Ali (3rd person)

In Malay **di** + base verb + suffix (if there is a suffix) is the form for the passive voice. The doers, as indicated in the above examples, are normally 3rd person (singular/plural) or are not mentioned.

In Malay, as in English, the passive construction using 1st and 2nd doers (e.g. 'by me' or 'by you') is seldom used. The active construction is normally preferred. So instead of saying

the books have been put in   **buku sudah dimasukkan ke kereta oleh saya**

one actually says

I've put the books in the car   **Sayah sudah masukkan buku ke dalam kereta**

The passive form, **di** + base verb + optional suffix, with no doer mentioned, however, can be interpreted as having 1st or 2nd doer when, for example, circumstances indicate that only the person spoken to is likely to be the one who does/did/has done the action. The dialogue below gives an illustration.

## Bersiap untuk bercuti

*Asmah and Ali are taking their children on holiday. They are packing their bags and Asmah is making sure that her son, Sani, and daughter, Anna, have not forgotten anything for the journey*

- ASMAH: Sani, buku-buku cerita sudah dimasukkan ke dalam beg? (*meaning . . . by you/kamu*)  
 SANI: Sudah, Mak. Buku kerja sekolah juga sudah disimpan dalam beg. (*meaning . . . by me/saya*)  
 ASMAH: (*Speaking to Anna*) Ayah sudah masukkan beg ke dalam kereta atau belum?  
 ANNA: Beg baju belum dimasukkan ayah ke dalam kereta, tapi beg makan sudah (dimasukkan).  
 ALI: (*Speaking to his wife, Asmah*) Pintu dapur sudah dikunci? Pintu bilik sudah dikunci? (*meaning by you or anybody else*)  
 ASMAH: Semua pintu sudah dikunci. (*meaning . . . by me*)

An elegant English translation of the above dialogue would almost certainly be in the active voice, exposing the underlying existence of 1st or 2nd doers ('me'/'I' or 'you'):

### Preparing to go on holiday

- ASMAH: *Sani, have you put the story books in the bag?*  
 SANI: *Yes, I have, Mum. I have also put the homework books in the bag.*  
 ASMAH: (*Speaking to Anna*) *Has Father put the bag in the car?*  
 ANNA: *No, he has not put the clothes bag in the car but he has put the food bag in.*  
 ALI: (*Speaking to his wife Asmah*) *Have you locked the kitchen door? Have you locked the bedroom doors?*  
 ASMAH: *I have locked all doors.*

### Language point

#### Passive question with apa and siapa



AS = active statement; AQ = active question; PQ = passive question.

- |  |                           |
|--|---------------------------|
| (AS) <b>Asma makan nasi goreng.</b>      | Asma ate fried rice       |
| (AQ) <b>Asma makan apa?</b>              | What did Asma eat?        |
| (PQ) <b>Apa yang dimakan Asma?</b>       | What was eaten by Asma?   |
| (AS) <b>Salleh memanggil Tony.</b>       | Salleh called Tony.       |
| (AQ) <b>Salleh memanggil siapa?</b>      | Salleh called whom?       |
| (PQ) <b>Siapa yang dipanggil Salleh?</b> | Who was called by Salleh? |

Note that in passive questions **yang** comes after **apa** and **siapa**.

### Exercises

#### Exercise 1

Change the following to the passive. The root words of the verbs are given in parentheses.

- 1 Ahmad menulis surat. (**tulis**)
- 2 Dia menutup pintu rumah. (**tutup**)
- 3 Asma membawa Sani ke sekolah. (**bawa**)
- 4 Hashim memberi buku itu kepada siapa? (**beri**)
- 5 Dia membaca apa? (**baca**)
- 6 Mereka membuat apa? (**buat**)
- 7 Bill menghantar siapa ke stesen bas? (**hantar**)
- 8 Ahmad melukis gambar rumah. (**lukis**)
- 9 Bapa marah budak itu. (**marah**)
- 10 Mereka menanam pokok di taman. (**tanam**)
- 11 Mary mengambil buku Anna. (**ambil**)
- 12 Setiausaha itu menelefon saya di rumah. (**telefon**)

#### Exercise 2

Translate the following into Malay.

- 1 The house was bought by my father.
- 2 The book was read by Ahmad yesterday.
- 3 Who was taken to the station?
- 4 What was stolen from the house?
- 5 The food was prepared by my mother this morning.
- 6 The money was given by him.
- 7 The song was sung by them.
- 8 The car was driven by Samad to the station.
- 9 The ticket was bought by Ali last month.

- 10 The letter was written by her to her mother in Ipoh.  
11 Who was given the book at the party?  
12 The children were helped by their teacher in school.

### Exercise 3

Change the following statements to passive questions using **apa** and **siapa**. Remember to use **di** in front of each verb. The root of the verb is given in brackets.

- 1 Din membawa Karim ke hospital. (**bawa**)
  - 2 Kanak-kanak itu membakar mercun. (**bakar**)
  - 3 Susan membeli baju itu untuk Anna. (**beli**)
  - 4 Dia makan buah epal itu. (**makan**)
  - 5 Bill memberi hadiah kepada Zain. (**beri**)
  - 6 Bapa Ramli menghantar Hasnah ke sekolah pagi itu. (**hantar**)
  - 7 Ibu Mansor menyimpan buku itu di dalam beg. (**simpan**)
  - 8 Susan memanggil ibunya masuk ke dalam bilik. (**panggil**)

## Exercise 4

Can you understand the following stories?

- 1 Pak Ali sungguh beruntung. Baru-baru ini dia dinaikkan pangkat.  
Dia sekarang menjadi Pengarah Urusan di syarikatnya. Gajinya ditambah. Keluarganya diberi rumah yang besar dan keretanya diganti dengan yang besar dan mahal. Dia selalu disuruh pergi ke luar negeri untuk menjumpai pelanggan. Anak-anaknya diantar belajar di sekolah swasta. Dan isterinya ditolong oleh dua orang pembantu.

<b>pengarah urusan</b>	managing director	<b>pelanggan</b>	customers, clients
<b>(di)suruh</b>	is asked to	<b>(di)naikkan</b>	to be promoted

- 2 Nasib Pak Aman pula kurang baik. Dia didapati menggunakan wang pejabat. Keretanya diambil balik. Dia disuruh berhenti kerja. Dia diminta melaporkan diri di balai polis. Dia akan disoal polis tentang duit yang hilang itu. Sekiranya didapati salah, dia tentu sekali akan dimasukkan penjara.

**balai polis** police station  
**(di)ambil balik** to take back (reposessed)

## Exercise 5

Change the paragraph below from the active to the passive voice.

Husin baru saja lulus peperiksaan. Dia menjawab semua soalan yang guru beri dengan betul. Bila dia mendapat keputusan minggu lepas, ibu Husin memberikannya sebuah basikal sebagai hadiah. Bapanya menghadiahkannya sebuah jam tangan.

## Exercise 6

Change the paragraph below from the passive to the active voice.

Tingkap rumah Ainon telah dipecah oleh seorang pencuri dan barang-barangnya dicuri oleh pencuri itu. Polis dipanggil oleh Ainon dan diberitahunya tentang kejadian itu. Dia disuruh oleh polis supaya menulis senarai barang-barang yang hilang. Kemudian bilik yang bersepadu itu dikemas oleh Ainon.

<b>pecah</b>	to break	<b>senarai</b>	list
<b>jadi/ke_an</b>	to happen/ happening (n)	<b>sepah/ber</b>	to be all over the place/messy

## **Conversations**

Study the dialogues and note the passive forms using first, second and third person ‘doers’:

## **Siapa makan kuih saya?**

- A: Din, Siapa makan kuih saya?  
U: Kuih? Bila kau beli kuih?  
A: Kelmarin. Kuih itu dibeli Mak saya untuk dimakan hari ini.  
U: Tak nampak pun kuih itu. Mungkin dicuri kucing?  
A: Tak mungkin! Kuih tak dimakan kucing. Ikan dimakan kucing!

## **Vocabulary**

## **kuih** cakes

## Kereta aku rosak

- A: Man, mahu ke mana? Mengapa berjalan kaki?  
 B: Kereta aku rosak.  
 A: Di mana?  
 B: Di tengah jalan. Aku tinggalkan di Jalan Terasik.  
 A: Pintu sudah dikunci? Kalau tidak, nanti dicuri.  
 B: Tak mungkin. Enjinnya tak boleh dihidupkan.  
 A: Sudah dipanggil mekanik?  
 B: Sudah. Dipanggil dari tadi lagi. Belum juga datang.

### Vocabulary

**mekanik** mechanic

## Reading

Study the text. Note the passive forms and doers, and answer the comprehension questions at the end of the text.

## Keluarga sibuk

Encik Husin mempunyai keluarga yang besar. Anaknya lima. Sebab itulah rumahnya besar juga, dengan lima bilik. Pembantunya hanya seorang. Namanya Minah yang bekerja dari pagi sampai malam. Setiap hari semua orang dalam keluarga itu sibuk.

Encik Husin yang membayar kesemuanya dalam rumah itu, tapi sebagai seorang ibu, Puan Esah yang berkuasa mengatur kerja bagi semua orang dalam rumah itu. ‘Minah’, tanya Puan Esah, ‘nasinya sudah **dimasak** belum?’ Minah menjawab, ‘Sudah. Tapi belum **dihidangkan** lagi.’

Puan Esah memanggil Hasnah, anaknya yang sulung. ‘Hasnah, semua baju sudah kau gosok?’ ‘Belum, Mak. Kerja sekolah mesti **diselesaikan** dulu, baru kerja rumah boleh saya buat!’ jawab Hasnah.

Mak Esah mencari Atan pula yang masih tidur dalam biliknya. ‘Atan! Bilik tidur belum **dikemas**, muka belum dibasuh, gigi belum **diberus**! Apa kamu buat tidur saja! Kain-kain ini mesti **dibawa** kau untuk **dicuci** dan digosok. Bungkusan itu mesti **dihantar** hari ini juga. Bangunlah cepat!’

Zain anak yang kedua memberitahu Puan Esah, ‘Mak, lantai sudah **disapu** dan kerusi sudah **diatur**. Apa lagi yang Mak mahu saya buat?’

‘Rajin betul, kau Zain. Boleh **diberi** upah banyak-banyak. Di mana Alang dan Man?’ tanya Puan Esah. ‘Mereka pergi ke kedai. **Disuruh** bapak ke kedai pagi-pagi lagi,’ jawab Zain.

‘Apa yang **dibeli** lagi? Bukankah semuanya **dibeli** Minah semalam sewaktu dia ke kedai?’ tanya Puan Esah lagi, sambil memanggil Minah.

‘Minah, apa yang **dibeli** semalam semasa kau pergi ke kedai?’ ‘Saya belikan gula, garam, buah-buahan, beras, sabun, kopi dan teh. Tapi tak boleh **dibawa** balik semua, sebab berat. Jadi Alang dan Mau **disuruh** Pak Husin untuk mengambil barang-barang itu hari ini,’ jawab Minah.

### Vocabulary

<b>gosok</b>	to iron	<b>upah</b>	pay (n)
<b>beras</b>	rice (before cooking)		

## Soalan-soalan

- 1 Encik Husin ada berapa orang anak dan berapa orang pembantu?
- 2 Siapa yang memberi tugas untuk semua orang di rumah itu?
- 3 Apa yang Puan Esah suruh Minah masak?
- 4 Masakan itu akan dihidangkan oleh siapa?
- 5 Apa yang Hasnah harus buat sebelum membuat kerja di rumah?
- 6 Apa yang belum dibuat Atan?
- 7 Siapa yang menyapu lantai dan mengatur kerusi?
- 8 Mengapa Alang dan Man pergi ke kedai awal-awal lagi?
- 9 Apa yang dibeli Minah semasa dia ke kedai?
- 10 Siapa menyuruh Alang dan Man ke kedai?

# 12 Tolong ambilkan saya surat

## Please get me the letters

In this lesson you will learn about:

- Basic commands
- Using polite words: **silakan**, **tolong** and **boleh** and particle **-lah**
- Using **jangan** ('don't') for prohibiting

### Tolong ambilkan saya surat

Puan Asmah, a business executive, is preparing to attend a conference. She asks her secretary, Maznah, to help prepare a few things for her.

ASMAH: Maznah, **boleh datang** ke sini sekejap?

MAZNAH: Ya, Puan Asmah. Ada apa yang boleh saya buat?

ASMAH: Ya. **Tolong ambilkan** fail merah dari almari itu dan ambilkan surat-surat yang Maznah taip kelmarin. **Boleh Maznah masukkan** surat-surat itu ke dalam beg saya?

MAZNAH: **Boleh Puan Asmah tandatangani** surat-surat ini dulu?

ASMAH: Selepas ini, **tolong telefon** Encik Kassim dan beritahu dia bahawa saya tidak dapat makan tengah hari dengan dia hari ini. **Kalau boleh**, minta dia telefon saya malam ini. **Telefonlah** dia sebelum dia keluar makan.

MAZNAH: Kalau Mr. Wong datang petang ini, boleh saya suruh dia masukkan wang ke dalam bank?

ASMAH: **Jangan**. Minta Mr Wong datang sekali lagi pagi esok.

### Vocabulary

**tandatangan/\_i** signature/to sign    **sekejap** a while

## Please get me the letters

ASMAH: *Maznah, can you come here for a while?*

MAZNAH: *Yes, Puan Asmah. Is there anything I can do?*

ASMAH: *Yes. Please take the red file from the cupboard and get the letters that you typed yesterday. Can you (please) put the letters in my bag?*

MAZNAH: *Could you please sign the letters first?*

ASMAH: *After this, please phone Encik Kassim and tell him that I can't have lunch with him today. Ask (request) him to phone me tonight, if possible. Please phone him before he leaves for lunch.*

MAZNAH: *If Mr Wong comes this afternoon, can I ask him to put the money in the bank?*

ASMAH: *Don't. Ask Mr Wong to come again tomorrow morning.*

### Language points

#### Giving orders: imperative forms

An order usually involves some kind of action. So, in expressing it, the verb should be the central point of the sentence. The speaker needs to express the order/command in the briefest and most precise manner. Therefore an order normally excludes the subject 'you'. Thus, 'Come in!', 'Don't shout!', 'Stand still!', etc.

In Malay, form and meaning are interdependent. With orders or commands, if the verb is an independent verb, there is no need for any change. However if the verb is intransitive with the prefix **ber-**, the **ber-** is optional. But if the verb is transitive with the prefix **me-** then the prefix should be dropped. This is because the root of a **me-** transitive verb is already a base verb.

Having chosen the right form of verb, the speaker can then use either a persuasive inflection to make it acceptable, or a harsh inflection to force action or reaction from the person spoken to. This is a basic type of imperative which is quite common in spoken Malay. We shall name this *basic Malay imperative*.

An alternative to making a polite command is to add a polite word/particle to the chosen verb form. There are several colloquial polite words in Malay, such as **silakan**, **tolong**, **boleh** and the particle **-lah**. We shall name this *refined Malay imperative*.

### Basic Malay imperative

Various verb forms are given in the commands below which are in the *basic Malay imperative* form. ‘Please’ or ‘do’ is often added to soften the effect or make it more polite.

Independent verbs:

<b>Makan lagi!</b>	(Do) eat some more!
<b>Ambil duit ini!</b>	(Please) take this money!
<b>Duduk dekat saya!</b>	Sit near me (please)!

Verbs with **ber**:

In colloquial Malay, the prefix **ber-** is usually dropped especially when the root is a verb. For example, one can say:

<b>Berjalan perlahan-lahan!</b>	(Do) walk softly!
or <b>Jalan perlahan-lahan!</b>	
<b>Bercakap kuat-kuat!</b>	(Please) speak loudly!
or <b>Cakap kuat-kuat!</b>	

Verbs with **me-**:

As with the above, in colloquial Malay, the **me-** in transitive verbs is usually dropped, regardless of whether the object is given or not:

<b>Baca (v) → membaca (vt)</b>	
<b>Baca buku itu!</b>	<i>Read</i> the book (please)!
<b>Kirim (v) → mengirim (vt)</b>	
<b>Kirim surat ini hari ini juga!</b>	<i>Send</i> the letter today (please)!
<b>Basuh (v) → membasuh (vt)</b>	
<b>Basuh hingga bersih!</b>	<i>Wash</i> until it is clean (please)!
<b>Sangkut (v) → menyangkut (vt)</b>	
<b>Sangkut dalam almari!</b>	<i>Hang</i> in the cupboard (please)!
<b>Masak (v) → memasak (vt)</b>	
<b>Masak untuk malam ini!</b>	<i>Cook</i> for tonight (please)!
Note that there are intransitive verbs with <b>me-</b> , deriving from a noun or an adjective, which require the retention of <b>me-</b> in a command:	
<b>Tari (n) → menari (vi)</b>	

**Menari dengan lemah lembut!** *Dance* gracefully (please)!

**Darat (n) → mendarat (vi)**

**Mendarat di sini saja!** Just *land* here (please)!

**Rokok (n) → merokok (vi)**

**Merokok di bilik itu!** *Smoke* in that room!

Verbs with **me\_kan** are always transitive. Hence **me-** must be dropped.

**Tanya → menanyakan (vt)**

**Tanyakan budak itu apa dia mahu!** Ask the boy what he wants!

**Beli → membelikan (vt)**

**Belikan saya baju serupa itu!** Buy me a dress similar to that one!

**Lapor → melaporkan (vt)**

**Laporkan kejadian itu!** Report that incident!

*Refined Malay imperative: the polite words*

<b>Silakan</b>	Please or do.
<b>Silakan duduk!</b>	Please sit down!
<b>Silakan berdiri di hujung sana!</b>	Please stand at the end there!
<b>Silakan jawab soalan ini!</b>	Please answer this question!

**Silakan** is not actually a commanding word. Rather it is a phrase/word used for expressing no objection to whatever the person spoken to wishes to do. It does not affect the verb form.

**Tolong**, translated here as ‘please’, literally means ‘help’, ‘do me a favour’, or ‘help me’. Hence it is frequently used with verbs with the suffix **-kan** (beneficent – in the speaker’s interest or that of a third party):

**Tolong berikan saya fail itu!** Please give me that file!

**Tolong belikan saya pen biru!** Please buy me a blue pen!

**Tolong hantarkan Anna ke sekolah!** Please take Anna to school!

**Boleh** is a polite way to ask about something. It is similar to the English ‘Could you please’, or ‘Could/May I...?’

- Boleh telefon Wong sekarang?** Could you phone Wong now?  
**Boleh bawakan beg itu ke sini?** Could you (please) bring the bag here?  
**Boleh sampaikan salam saya kepadanya?** Could you please send my regards to her?

## Jangan merokok! ☺

Encik Karim has a heart problem. However, he still smokes heavily and enjoys rich food. He is having a hard time at the doctor's surgery

- DOKTOR: Encik Karim, anda perlu jaga kesihatan anda! Keputusan pemeriksaan jantung anda nampaknya tidak begitu baik.
- KARIM: Jadi apa yang mesti saya buat?
- DOKTOR: Anda perlu jaga makan. **Jangan makan** terlalu banyak lemak! **Jangan merokok** dan **jangan selalu runsing!**
- KARIM: **Jangan buat** itu! **Jangan makan ini!** Semuanya tak boleh!
- DOKTOR: Saya nasihat saja! Berjalan kakilah selalu! **Jangan selalu naik** kereta saja!
- KARIM: **Janganlah** suruh saya berjalan kalau saya tak sihat!
- DOKTOR: Berjalan itu sejenis senaman! Kalau tak mau, berenang!
- KARIM: Berikan saya ubat banyak-banyak! Tentu saya akan sihat.
- DOKTOR: Dengar nasihat saya! Jaga makan minum! Banyak bersenam! Dan **jangan naik marah!**

### Vocabulary

<b>lemak</b>	fat	<b>runsing</b>	to be stressful
<b>merokok</b>	to smoke	<b>naik marah</b>	to lose one's temper
<b>jantung</b>	heart	<b>jenis/se_-</b>	a kind of

### Do not smoke!

- DOKTOR: Mr Karim, you must look after your health! The test results on your heart don't look too good!
- KARIM: So, what do I have to do?
- DOKTOR: You have to look after your diet. Don't eat too much fat! Don't smoke and don't get stressed!

- KARIM: *Don't do this! Don't eat that! Everything is prohibited!*  
DOKTOR: *I'm only giving advice! Always walk! Don't use the car all the time!*
- KARIM: *Please don't ask me to walk if I am not well!*  
DOKTOR: *Walking is a kind of exercise! If you don't want to walk, swim!*
- KARIM: *Give me lots of medicine! I'll definitely get better.*  
DOKTOR: *Listen to my advice! Take care of what you eat and drink!*  
*Plenty of exercise! And don't lose your temper!*

### Language points

#### Jangan ('Don't')

**Jangan** which is equivalent to 'don't' in English, is used to express disagreement or prohibition. The form of the verb in this type of imperative follow that in the statement describing the action of the other person. The prefix **me-** (if there is one) in the transitive verb in the statement is maintained in the negative command. The optional **-lah** can be added to soften (or to give a polite emphasis to) the disagreement or prohibition expressed. If a strong/forceful order is desired, **-lah** should be dropped and a harsh inflection is used. Here are some examples. The first line is the sentence describing what the person spoken to does; the second line is the imperative with **jangan** placed in front:

<b>Anda makan terlalu banyak daging.</b>	You eat too much meat.
<b>Jangan makan terlalu banyak daging!</b>	Don't eat too much meat!
<b>Saudara merokok.</b>	You smoke.
<b>Jangan merokok di sini!</b>	Don't smoke here!
<b>Saudara lupa membayar.</b>	You forgot to pay.
<b>Jangan lupa membayar.</b>	Don't forget to pay!
<b>Saudara tanya emak saya.</b>	You asked my mother.
<b>Jangan tanya emak saya!</b>	Don't ask my mother!
<b>Anda berhenti kerja.</b>	You stopped work.
<b>Janganlah berhenti kerja!</b>	Please don't stop work!

**Lah** is suitable for softening negative imperatives.

### Summary of the imperative

<i>Basic imperative</i>	verb + harsh/soft inflection
<i>Refined imperative</i>	verb + polite words ( <b>silakan</b> , <b>tolonglah</b> , <b>boleh</b> )
<i>Verb form</i>	independent verbs are not a problem; the prefix <b>ber-</b> is optional and <b>me-</b> in transitive verbs is dropped
<i>Negative imperative</i>	<b>jangan</b> – the prohibitive word. To soften the impact, use the suffix <b>-lah</b> . The verb form can be with or without <b>me-</b>
<i>In all cases</i>	the subject ('you') is not required

## Exercises

### Exercise 1

Which of the following imperatives can be said with (h) harsh inflection; (p) persuasive inflection; (b) both? Remember, a harsh imperative does not have the polite words, **tolong**, **silakan**, **boleh** or the suffix **lah**.

- 1 Masuklah!
- 2 Jual rumah yang lama dan beli yang baru!
- 3 Makanlah! Jangan bersempang saja!
- 4 Tulislah surat untuk nenekmu!
- 5 Cakaplah! Saya tak marah.
- 6 Itupun kuahnya. Bolehlah makan!
- 7 Jangan cakap kuat-kuat! Adik tidur!
- 8 Janganlah marah! Nanti lekas tua!
- 9 Datanglah ke rumah saya!
- 10 Jangan kacau! Saya mahu belajar!
- 11 Tolong sampaikan salam kepada Ibu!
- 12 Diam! Jangan bising!
- 13 Belikan adik buku itu!
- 14 Bacakan ayat itu baik-baik!
- 15 Jalan lambat-lambat! Saya sudah penat.
- 16 Hantar surat ini sekarang juga!
- 17 Jawab soalan-soalan ini!

<b>sembang/ber-lekas</b>	to chit-chat quick	<b>kacau salam</b>	to disturb regards
--------------------------	-----------------------	--------------------	-----------------------

### Exercise 2

Change the statements below into imperatives, using **silakan**.

- 1 Saudara masuk dan duduk.
- 2 Saudara makan dan minum di sini.
- 3 Saudara berehat.
- 4 Anda buat apa saja.
- 5 Anda duduk di mana saja.
- 6 Anda balik bila-bila masa saja.
- 7 Anda bayar seberapa yang boleh.
- 8 Anda pilih baju mana yang anda suka.

### Exercise 3

Change the statements below into imperatives, using **tolong**. Note that the speaker will probably mostly benefit from these orders.

- 1 Saudara keluarkan kereta dari garaj.
- 2 Saudara bawa kereta ke bengkel.
- 3 Saudara tanya apa yang rosak.
- 4 Saudara tanya berapa harganya.
- 5 Saudara bersihkan kereta itu.
- 6 Saudara jualkan kereta itu.
- 7 Saudara masukkan duit ke dalam bank.
- 8 Saudara carikan kereta baru.

<b>bengkel</b>	workshop
----------------	----------

### Exercise 4

Change the statements below into imperatives, using **-lah**. All the subjects in these sentences translate into 'you' in English.

- 1 Saudara melihat ke belakang.
- 2 Kamu masuk ke pejabat.
- 3 Engkau bermain tenis.
- 4 Anda pergi sekarang.
- 5 Tuan datang esok.
- 6 Puan menanyakan nama jalan itu.
- 7 Saudari menunggu di sini.

- 8 Anda pergi malam nanti.
- 9 Tuan kembalikan duit saya.
- 10 Encik menjawab soalan saya.
- 11 Kamu kerja rajin-rajin.
- 12 Mak masak kuih yang sedap.

### Exercise 5

Imagine you disagree with the following statements. Using **jangan** or **janganlah**, how would you express your disapproval or objection in Malay? Follow the examples:

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| 1 Anda pergi seorang diri.               | <b>Jangan pergi seorang diri!</b>        |
| 2 Anda telefon di waktu malam.           | <b>Janganlah telefon di waktu malam!</b> |
|  |  |
| 3 Anda pakai barang kemas.               |  |
| 4 Anda bawa banyak duit dalam beg.       |  |
| 5 Anda pukul anak kuat-kuat.             |  |
| 6 Anda marah dia di hadapan orang.       |  |
| 7 Anda bawa orang itu ke rumah saya.     |  |
| 8 Anda pakai baju kotor.                 |  |
| 9 Anda berjalan kaki.                    |  |
| 10 Anda berhenti kereta di tengah jalan. |  |
| 11 Anda lupa kawan lama.                 |  |

### Conversations

Study the conversations. Note the varied verb forms in the imperative.

#### Saya menyesal

- AMIN: Saya menyesal tak baca buku sebelum ujian.  
 IBU: **Jangan menyesal** sekarang! Dulu Mak suruh kau rajin-rajin belajar. Kau malas!  
 AMIN: Apa nak saya buat sekarang Mak?  
 IBU: **Jangan buang masa!** Ambil buku-buku kau dan ulangkaji lagi!  
 AMIN: Boleh saya berehat dulu?  
 IBU: Tolonglah **dengar cakap Mak!** Kalau tak belajar dari sekarang kau tak akan lulus.  
 AMIN: **Ambillkan saya** buku-buku itu!

- IBU: **Cakap baik-baik** dengan Mak. **Jangan suruh Mak** buat itu dan ini!  
 AMIN: **Maafkan(lah)** saya Mak!

#### Vocabulary

ujian	test	kesal/meny_	to regret
malas	lazy		

#### Belilah sedikit daging

- IBU: Mak ada senarai barang untuk Man beli di pasar nanti.  
 MAN: **Tunggul(lah)dulu**, Mak! Man masih penat.  
 IBU: **Pergi(lah) sekarang!** Nanti ikan habis dijual!  
 MAN: Baiklah Mak! Apa yang nak dibeli?  
 IBU: Boleh Man **belikan ikan bawal**, udang satu paket, dan sayur?  
**Belilah sedikit daging** dan seekor ayam!  
 MAN: Berilah duit!  
 IBU: Oh ya! Mak terlupa! **Belilah gula**. Dan **tengoklah** apa yang patut dibeli untuk sarapan pagi esok!  
 MAN: Bila Man beli ayam, **masaklah yang sedap-sedap!**  
 IBU: Baiklah! **Pergi sekarang!** Nanti habis ikan di pasar!

#### Vocabulary

ikan bawal	pomfret (fish)	pasar	market
udang	prawn	sayur	vegetables
penat	tired	patut	should

#### Janganlah marah

- AYAH: **Tengok laporan** peperiksaan ini! Semua markahnya rendah!  
 ATAN: **Janganlah marah**, Ayah! Atan memang belajar kuat sebelum peperiksaan, tapi tak juga lulus.  
 AYAH: **Jangan belajar** masa peperiksaan saja! Kau mesti selalu belajar! **Jangan asyik main saja!** Janganlah ingat masa peperiksaan saja mesti baca buku!  
 ATAN: Atan terlalu banyak aktiviti sekolah. Jadi Atan selalu penat.  
 AYAH: **Beritahu guru**, Atan tak boleh lagi main bola dan sepak takraw. Tumpukan perhatian kepada pelajaran saja!

**ATAN:** (Ayah) tulislah surat kepada guru Atan!  
**AYAH:** **Belajarlah rajin-rajin** untuk peperiksaan tahun depan!  
**Janganlah biar keputusan** tahun ini mengganggu keputusan peperiksaan tahun depan!

### Vocabulary

<b>tumpu</b>	to concentrate	<b>sepak takraw</b>	a kind of traditional Malay game with a rattan ball
<b>markah</b>	marks		
<b>asyik</b>	to be engrossed, obsessed	<b>mengganggu</b>	to disturb

### Reading

Study the letter below. Note the varied verb forms in the instructions given, then answer the questions at the end of the letter.

#### Surat Dari Kuala Lumpur

Johan Arshad,  
Kuala Lumpur,  
2hb Februari 1994

Saudara Peter,

Saya baru saja terima surat anda yang membawa berita baik bahawa anda akan melawat Malaysia. Tentu anda sudah bersiap sedia untuk percutian anda di sini. Tapi, biarlah saya ingatkan anda tentang beberapa perkara penting yang anda harus uruskan sebelum datang.

Penerbangan: **Naiklah** kapal terbang MAS. Penerbangannya hanya 13 jam dan langsung dari London ke Kuala Lumpur. **Jangan bawa** terlalu banyak barang dan **janganlah bawa** kiriman orang yang anda tidak kenali! Anda tentu tahu tentang undang-undang ketat Malaysia tentang dadah! **Belilah tiket** pergi balik supaya anda tidak ada masalah dengan pihak imigresyen nanti.

Permit masuk: Anda perlu permit untuk masuk Malaysia. **Pergilah** ke Pejabat Imigresyen Malaysia di Suruhanjaya Tinggi Malaysia di Belgrave Square. Pegawai-pegawai Imigresyen akan beritahu anda tentang apa yang harus dibuat.

Suntikan: **Jangan lupa** pergi ke doktor anda untuk mendapat suntikan. **Bawalah** surat suntikan ini bersama anda nanti.

Pakaian: **Jangan bawa** terlalu banyak pakaian. **Pakai pakaian** tipis semasa kapal terbang mendarat sebab cuaca di sini panas!

Wang: **Bawalah** cek kembala supaya lebih selamat! **Jangan bawa** terlalu banyak wang tunai.

Akhir sekali, kalau tidak keberatan, **tolong belikan saya** beberapa helai tali leher dari Tie Rack. **Jangan beli** warna yang terlalu terang dan yang terlalu mahal. Saya akan bayar kembali bila anda sampai di sini.

**Tolong beritahu** tarikh penerbangan anda supaya dapat saya menjemput anda di Lapangan Terbang Subang.

Sekian. Jumpa di Kuala Lumpur!

Salam dari,

Johan

### Vocabulary

<b>sekian</b>	that's all	<b>wang tunai</b>	cash
<b>tarikh</b>	date	<b>tali leher</b>	(neck) tie
<b>undang-undang</b>	law	<b>cek kembala</b>	traveller's cheque
<b>dadah</b>	drugs	<b>tidak keberatan</b>	inconvenience

### Soalan-soalan

- 1 Apakah berita yang diterima oleh Johan dari Peter?
- 2 Berapa lamakah penerbangan dari London ke Kuala Lumpur?
- 3 Apakah nasihat Johan kepada Peter tentang cara mendapatkan permit masuk Malaysia?
- 4 Mengapakah Peter perlu beli tiket pergi balik?
- 5 Mengapakah Peter harus pergi ke doktornya sebelum terbang ke Malaysia?
- 6 Cek apakah yang lebih selamat dibawa ke Malaysia?
- 7 Pakaian bagaimanakah yang Peter harus pakai semasa tiba di Kuala Lumpur?
- 8 Johan meminta Peter membeli apa sebelum pergi ke Kuala Lumpur?
- 9 Bilakah Johan akan membayar Peter?
- 10 Adakah Johan akan menjemput Peter di Lapangan Terbang Subang?

# 13 Mana yang lebih baik?

## Which is better?

In this lesson you will learn about:

- Expressing equality: **sebesar . . . /sama besar dengan . . .** ('as big as')
- Comparatives: **lebih besar daripada** ('bigger than')
- Superlatives: **terbesar/paling besar** ('the biggest')
- The phrases: **sama dengan** and **terlalu**

## Mana yang lebih baik?

*Sam Peters is going to work in Malaysia as a financial consultant. Before his departure he discusses the prospect of living in another country with a Malaysian, Mahmud, working in Washington.*

SAM: Bagaimana hidup di Malaysia?

MAHMUD: Malaysia sekarang sebuah negara yang cepat membangun. Taraf hidup penduduknya **lebih tinggi** daripada dulu. Makanan **lebih murah** daripada di Amerika tapi cuacanya lebih panas. Dan kereta di jalan-jalan Kuala Lumpur **tidak sebanyak** di Washington.

SAM: Bagaimana dengan keadaan politiknya?

MAHMUD: Keadaan politiknya **lebih stabil** daripada negara-negara lain. Tidak ada masalah walaupun penduduknya berbilang bangsa. Ekonominya pula **lebih kukuh**.

SAM: Pembangunannya secepat pembangunan di negara-negara jirannya?

MAHMUD: Saya rasa **lebih cepat**.

SAM: Bagaimana pula dengan undang-undangnya?

MAHMUD: Undang-undang Malaysia bukanlah **sekejam** yang dilaporkan dalam akhbar-akhbar barat. Memang orang

yang didapati salah membawa dan menyeludup dadah akan dihukum **seberat-beratnya**. **Lebih kejam** kalau penyeludup dadah dibiar menjual dadah sehingga penagih dadah menderita. Tapi di Malaysia, **tidak semudah** di Amerika untuk membeli senjata api. Hukuman membawa senjata api tanpa lesen juga **sama berat** dengan hukuman menyeludup dadah.

### Vocabulary

<b>taraf hidup</b>	standard of living	<b>penagih</b>	addict
<b>stabil</b>	stable	<b>derita/men</b>	to suffer
<b>kukuh</b>	strong	<b>teruk</b>	worse
<b>kejam</b>	harsh	<b>memang</b>	it's true, it's a fact that . . .
<b>seludup/meny</b>	to smuggle	<b>senjata api</b>	firearm
<b>hukum</b>	to punish		
<b>hukuman</b>	penalty		

### Which is better?

SAM: *What is it like living and working in Malaysia?*

MAHMUD: *Malaysia is a country that's developing very fast. The standard of living is higher than in the past. Food is cheaper than in America but the weather is hotter. There aren't as many cars on the roads in Kuala Lumpur as there are in Washington.*

SAM: *How is the political situation?*

MAHMUD: *The political situation is more stable than some other countries. There are no problems, although the population is multiracial. The economy is stronger.*

SAM: *Development is as rapid as the development of the neighbouring countries?*

MAHMUD: *I feel it is more rapid.*

SAM: *What about its laws?*

MAHMUD: *Malaysian laws are not as harsh as they are reported to be in the western media. It's true that people found guilty of carrying and smuggling drugs will be punished accordingly. It's more cruel if drug smugglers are allowed to sell drugs resulting in the suffering of drug addicts. But in Malaysia, it's not as easy to buy firearms as in America. The penalty for carrying firearms without a licence is as heavy as the penalty for smuggling drugs.*

## Language point

### se- + adjective; sama + adjective + dengan

The comparison ‘as (adjective) as’ (e.g. ‘as big as’) is expressed by **se** + adjective in Malay. Another phrase **sama** + adjective + **dengan**, is also frequently used to mean the same thing:

**Kereta di jalan-jalan Kuala Lumpur tidak sebanyak di Washington.**

There aren’t *as many* cars on the roads in Kuala Lumpur *as* there are in Washington.

**Pembangunan Malaysia secepat pembangunan negara jirannya.**

Development in Malaysia is *as rapid as* the development of its neighbour.

**Anak saya sama besar dengan anak anda.**

My child is *as big as* your child.

**Hukuman menyeludup dadah sama berat dengan hukuman membunuh.**

The penalty for smuggling drugs is *as heavy as* the penalty for murder.

The comparison with ‘more + adjective + than’ or ‘adjective + -er + than’ is expressed by **lebih** + adjective + **dari pada** in Malay:

**Cuaca di Malaysia lebih panas daripada di Amerika.** The weather in Malaysia is *hotter than* in America.

**Makanan di Malaysia lebih murah daripada di Washington.** Food in Malaysia is *cheaper than* in Washington.

**Taraf hidup di Malaysia lebih tinggi daripada dulu.** The standard of living in Malaysia is *higher than* before.

## Cerita apakah yang paling menakutkan?

Rokiah and Hassan are testing each other’s general knowledge

**ROKIAH:** Siapakah presiden Amerika yang termuda?

**HASSAN:** Oh, itu mudah. John F. Kennedy. Negara mana yang **paling pesat** ekonominya di Asia?

**ROKIAH:** Aku tahu! Negara Jepun mempunyai ekonomi yang **paling pesat** di Asia. Tapi berbanding dengan Negara Brunei Darussalam, itu negara yang **terkecil** di Asia, negara Brunei dikatakan **terkaya** sekali di Asia. Malah

Sultannya dikatakan salah seorang yang terkaya di dunia!

**HASSAN:** Gunung apakah yang **paling tinggi sekali** di dunia?

**ROKIAH:** Tentu sekali Gunung Everest! Sekarang aku pula yang tanya kau. Cerita apakah yang **paling menakutkan**, *Frankenstein* atau *Dracula*?

**HASSAN:** Bagi aku, *Frankenstein* cerita yang **paling menakutkan**. Apakah yang **paling menyenangkan** dalam hidup ini bagi kau?

**ROKIAH:** Oh! Bagi aku, hidup yang **paling menyenangkan** ialah menemui orang-orang **ternama** dan **terkenal** di dunia ini, makan makanan yang paling enak, pakai pakaian yang **paling mahal** dan ...

**HASSAN:** Sudahlah tu ... Bagi aku pula, dapat isteri yang **tercantik** dan anak-anak yang **paling pandai**!

## Vocabulary

**aku**

I, me (informal)

**berbanding**

to compare with

**muda** (adj)

young

**presiden**

president

**ekonomi**

economy

**gunung**

mountain

**enak**

delicious

## What story is most frightening?

**ROKIAH:** Who is the youngest American President?

**HASSAN:** Oh that’s easy. John F. Kennedy. Which country in Asia has the fastest growing economy?

**ROKIAH:** I know! Japan has the fastest growing economy in Asia. But in comparison with Brunei Darussalam, which is the smallest country in Asia, Brunei is said to be the richest in Asia. In fact, its Sultan is said to be one of the richest men in the world!

**HASSAN:** What is the highest mountain in the world?

**ROKIAH:** Definitely Everest! Now it’s my turn to ask you. What story is most frightening, *Frankenstein* or *Dracula*?

**HASSAN:** For me *Frankenstein* is the most frightening story. What is it that makes you most happy in life?

**ROKIAH:** Oh! For me what makes me most happy in life is meeting the most important and popular people, eating the most delicious food, wearing the most expensive clothes and ...

HASSAN: *That's enough . . . For me, it's to have the most beautiful wife and the most intelligent children.*

## Language points

### Superlative (e.g. 'biggest', 'tallest', etc.)

The English superlative 'the + adjective + est' (e.g. 'the shortest') or 'the most + adjective' (e.g. 'the most interesting') is expressed in Malay as **ter-/paling** + adjective. Note that this applies only to base adjectives. When the adjectives are the products of **ber** or **me\_kan** affixation, only **paling** should be used. This is because **ter-** is already a prefix; adding it to **ber** or **me\_kan** would form an excessive prefix. Examples with both **ter** and **paling**:

**presiden Amerika yang  
termuda**

**presiden Amerika yang  
paling muda**

**negara yang terkaya**

**negara yang paling kaya**

the *youngest* American president

the *richest* country

Examples with **paling** only:

**cerita yang paling menakutkan** the *most frightening* story

**kisah yang paling menyedihkan** the *saddest* story

**laporan yang paling mengelirukan** the *most confusing* report

**mengelirukan** confusing

## Warnanya tidak sama



Mariam has just been out shopping. She has bought some clothes with a matching bag and a matching pair of shoes. She asks her friend Ainon for her opinion

MARIAM: Ainon, tolong lihat baju yang aku baru beli ini. Cantik tak?

AINON: Cantik. Tapi, lihat tu! Mengapa warna atas **tidak sama** dengan warna bawah?

MARIAM: Mari aku tengok lebih dekat lagi! Eh, warnanya **agak gelap** daripada yang atas. Mungkin lampu dalam kedai tadi **tidak begitu terang**, jadi aku **tak begitu** nampak. Bagaimana pula dengan kasut kau?

MARIAM: Aku tak ada masa nak cuba dalam kedai, tapi aku rasa warnanya sesuai dengan baju.

AINON: Cubalah!

MARIAM: Aduh! **Terlalu ketat!** Mungkin satu saiz **lebih kecil** dari saiz kaki aku!

AINON: Sayang sekali! Warnanya sungguh sesuai dan padan dengan warna baju kau! Apa kau nak buat sekarang?

MARIAM: Pergi balik ke kedai dan beli yang lain. Apa lagi!

AINON: Lain kali, belanjalah **lebih sedikit**, barulah dapat barang yang **lebih bermutu**!

MARIAM: Aku tak mampu belanja **seperti** kau!

## Vocabulary

<b>gelap</b>	dark	<b>mampu</b>	to afford
<b>terang</b>	bright	<b>dekat</b>	close, near
<b>aduh!</b>	an expression for dismay	<b>lampu</b>	lamp (lighting)
<b>saiz</b>	size	<b>kau</b>	you, your (informal)
<b>mutu/ber</b>	with quality	<b>padan</b>	to match
		<b>sayang sekali</b>	what a pity!

## The colour isn't the same

MARIAM: *Ainon, please take a look at this dress that I bought. Is it beautiful?*

AINON: *Beautiful. But look at that! Why is the colour of the top not the same as the colour of the bottom half?*

MARIAM: *Let me have a closer look. Oh, the colour is a bit darker than the top. Perhaps the lighting in the shop wasn't that bright, so I couldn't see that well.*

AINON: *How are your shoes?*

MARIAM: *I didn't have time to try them on in the shop but I think the colour matches the dress.*

AINON: *Do try them on!*

MARIAM: *Oh, no! They're too tight. They're about one size smaller than the size of my feet!*

AINON: *What a pity! The colour really suits and matches the colour of your dress! So what are you going to do now?*

MARIAM: *Go back to the shop and buy another pair. What else!*

AINON: *Next time, spend a little bit more, you'll get things that are of better quality then!*

MARIAM: *I can't afford to spend like you!*

## Language points

### Sama dengan ('the same as')

**Warna bawah sama dengan warna atas.** The colour of the bottom is *the same as* the colour of the top.

**Dua belas sama dengan satu dozen.** Twelve is *the same as* one dozen.

**Mak tiri tak sama dengan ibu** A stepmother is not *the same as* your own mother.

**mak tiri** stepmother

### terlalu ('too')

<b>Kasut ini terlalu ketat.</b>	The shoes are <i>too</i> tight.
<b>Baju itu terlalu mahal.</b>	That dress is <i>too</i> expensive.
<b>Jangan terlalu nakal!</b>	Don't be <i>too</i> naughty!

### agak ('rather', 'somewhat')

**Pakaian di kedai itu agak mahal.** The clothes in that shop are *rather* expensive.

### tidak begitu ('not so', 'not that')

**Lampu dalam kedai itu tidak begitu terang.** The lighting in that shop is *not that* bright.

### seperti ('like' – comparison)

**Aku tak boleh belanja seperti kau (seperti orang kaya).** I cannot spend like you (like a rich person).

**Seperti saya, dia tidak merokok.** Like me, he doesn't smoke.

The derived adjectives in Dialogue 2 – **menakutkan**, **menyedihkan**, **menyenangkan**, etc. – can also be used as causative verbs without the objects being mentioned – i.e. the result of the **me\_kan** application to adjectives. They can be interpreted as 'to make/cause people to be' afraid, sad, happy, etc.

## Exercises

### Exercise 1

Compare the two sentences below and make up one or more new ones, using **lebih**. Follow the examples given:

1 Hassan pulang pukul 4.00. **Hassan pulang lebih dulu daripada isterinya.**

Isterinya pulang pukul 5.00. **Isterinya pulang lebih lambat daripada Hassan.**

2 Harga buku Ani RM5.00. **Buku Ani lebih murah daripada buku Ana.**

Harga buku Ana RM10.00. **Buku Ana lebih mahal daripada buku Ani.**

3 Panjang meja makan ini lima kaki.

Panjang meja tulis ini dua kaki. **(panjang/pendek)**

4 Buku sejarah ini ada 20 muka surat.

Buku ilmu alam itu ada 100 muka surat. **(tebal/nipis)**

5 Berat beg ini 20 kilogram.

Berat beg itu 30 kilogram. **(berat/ringan)**

6 Kereta itu berjalan 60 batu satu jam.

Kereta saya berjalan 100 batu satu jam. **(perlahan/laju)**

7 Julie mendapat sepuluh markah.

Susan mendapat 12 markah. **(kurang/lebih)**

8 Rumah itu ada 2 tingkat.

Rumah ini ada 5 tingkat. **(rendah/tinggi)**

sejarah  
ilmu alam

history  
geography

perlahan

slow

### Exercise 2

Read the sentences on the left while covering the right-hand column with a piece of paper. Make up new sentences, using the superlative form of comparison, **ter/ paling**, then check your answers.

1 Rumah-rumah dalam kawasan ini mahal.

Rumah putih itu lebih mahal sekali.

**Rumah putih itu termahal dalam kawasan ini.**

**Rumah putih itu paling mahal dalam kawasan ini.**

- 2 Semua anak Jamil pandai. Tapi yang pandai daripada yang lain-lain ialah Kamal.  
**Kamal anak Jamil yang terpandai.**  
**Kamal anak Jamil yang paling pandai.**  
**Dalam banyak-banyak buku, buku merah itu paling berguna.**
- 3 Dalam banyak-banyak buku ini, buku merah itu yang lebih berguna daripada yang lain-lain.  
**Kisahnya menyedihkan.**
- 4 Kisahnya menyedihkan. Lebih menyedihkan daripada kisah dalam filem itu.
- 5 Siapa lebih kaya dalam dunia ini?  
**Siapa paling kaya dalam dunia ini?**  
**Siapa yang terkaya dalam dunia ini?**  
**Pulau Langkawi pulau terindah di kawasan itu.**  
**Pulau Langkawi pulau paling indah di kawasan itu.**  
**Cerita mengenai budak yang malang itu paling menyedihkan.**
- 6 Ada banyak pulau di kawasan itu.  
 Pulau Langkawi indah daripada yang lain-lain.
- 7 Semua cerita dalam buku itu sedih. Tapi cerita mengenai budak malang itu lebih menyedihkan daripada yang lain-lain.  
**Pasu kaca itu paling mahal sekali.**  
**Pasu kaca itu yang termahal sekali.**
- 8 Semua barang ini mahal tapi yang lebih mahal ialah pasu kaca itu.

**pasu**  
**malang**

**pot**  
unfortunate

**kaca**

glass

### Exercise 3

How would you translate the following into Malay? Use **lebih**, **ter** or **paling**.

Aziz and Omar are twins but they are very different. Aziz is quieter than Omar. He prefers reading to watching television. What he likes most is going to a library where he can be alone to read books. Omar prefers going out to the cinema and parties. He likes dancing most of all. Both of them are intelligent but Aziz is more successful than Omar. Omar, however, is more successful at making friends than making money.

<b>twins</b>	<b>kembar</b>	<b>quiet</b>	<b>diam</b>
<b>different</b>	<b>berbeza</b>		

### Exercise 4

Fill in the blanks with one of the following: **terlalu**, **agak**, **sama dengan**, **begitu**, **seperti**.

- 1 Seluar itu \_\_\_\_\_ besar. Saya tak boleh pakai.
- 2 Jangan jadi \_\_\_\_\_ Musa. Dia \_\_\_\_\_ banyak hutang sampai tak terbayar.
- 3 Hari ini \_\_\_\_\_ panas. Bolehlah kita keluar memancing.
- 4 Rumah itu \_\_\_\_\_ mahal. Saya tidak mampu membelinya.
- 5 Perangai Ahmad tidak \_\_\_\_\_ perangai adik dia. Ahmad lebih malas.
- 6 Hari ini \_\_\_\_\_ mendung. Jangan lupa bawa payung.
- 7 Baju itu \_\_\_\_\_ kecil. Mungkin untuk budak kecil dan bukan untuk orang besar.
- 8 Sally nampak \_\_\_\_\_ ada masalah. Dia selalu menangis saja.
- 9 Oleh kerana dia \_\_\_\_\_ suka bercakap bohong, tak seorang pun percaya apabila dia bercakap benar.
- 10 Kalau kopi itu \_\_\_\_\_ tawar, tambahlah gula.

<b>pancing/me</b>	<b>to fish</b>	<b>bohong</b>	<b>lie</b>
<b>perangai</b>	<b>behaviour</b>	<b>menangis</b>	<b>to cry</b>
<b>mendung</b>	<b>cloudy</b>		

### Conversation

Study the conversation below. Note the comparative and superlative forms of the adjectives.

### Mencari tempat tinggal

*Patricia, a student of Malay Studies in London is going to do some field work in Malaysia for six months. She meets up in London with a Malaysian friend, Julia, to ask her, among other things, about the best way to find cheap accommodation.*

**PATRICIA:** Saya pergi ke Malaysia sebagai pelajar, jadi saya terpaksa mencari tempat yang **paling murah**. Jangan **terlalu mahal**.

- JULIA: Biasanya rumah sewa di Malaysia murah. **Lebih murah** daripada di London. Kalau anda bayar dua ratus paun sebulan pun, anda akan dapat rumah yang **lebih besar** daripada rumah anda sekarang ini. Sekarang anda bayar tiga ratus paun sebulan dan terpaksa berkongsi dengan dua orang lain.
- PATRICIA: Saya tak mahu rumah yang **lebih besar** daripada yang ini. Saya lebih suka rumah kecil tapi selesa.
- JULIA: Bila anda tiba di Kuala Lumpur, kakak saya akan menjemput anda di Lapangan terbang Subang. Dia akan tolong anda cari rumah yang murah.
- PATRICIA: Macam mana saya akan kenal kakak anda?
- JULIA: Rupa kakak saya, Asiah **sama dengan** rupa saya. Kadang-kadang orang ingat kami kembar. Tapi sekarang dia **lebih gemuk** daripada saya. Dan rambutnya **lebih panjang**.
- PATRICIA: Saya ingin melawat kampung-kampung. Apakah cara **terbaik** untuk berbuat begitu?
- JULIA: Saya dilahirkan di sebuah kampung di Kedah. Saya pasti kakak saya akan bawa anda ke sana. Dia pulang ke kampung setiap cuti sekolah. Dia **lebih suka** hidup di kampung daripada di bandar. Semasa di kampung itu, anda boleh berkenal-kenalan dengan orang-orang kampung. Mereka **lebih ramah** dan **tidak seperti** orang bandar, mereka tidak sompong.
- PATRICIA: Udara yang **paling nyaman** adalah di kampung-kampung. Saya juga suka tinggal di kampung.

### Vocabulary

<b>kongsi (ber)</b>	to share	<b>nyaman</b>	fresh
<b>penyelidikan</b>	research (n)	<b>neneh</b>	grandmother
<b>rupa</b>	looks (n)	<b>sombong</b>	proud, arrogant

### Reading

Below is Ali's letter to his friend in Malaysia about his holiday in London. Note particularly the comparative and superlative forms, and then answer the comprehension questions at the end.

London  
18 Disember 1995

Sahabatku Amin,

Sudah sebulan saya berada di London dan saya rasa London ialah tempat yang **paling mahal** sekali di dunia. Harga barang-barangnya **lebih tinggi** daripada harga barang-barang di lain-lain tempat seperti New York atau Hong Kong. Tapi, betul kata orang barang-barangnya **lebih bermutu** daripada barang-barang dari Hong Kong. Sebab itulah walaupun **agak jauh** dari Malaysia, ramai orang datang membeli belah di London.

Sekarang ini London sibuk dengan persiapan untuk Krismas. Masa inilah barang-barang **agak murah** sedikit sebab di mana-mana saja ada jualan murah. Jualan murah di London **tidak seperti** jualan murah di Malaysia. Di sini, orang berkumpul beramai-ramai di luar kedai-kedai seperti Harrods dan Selfridges untuk membeli barang-barang yang mereka ingini tetapi tak dapat beli di masa-masa lain sebab **terlalu mahal**. Pada masa ini harga **paling murah** sekali.

Masa ini juga **paling sejuk**. Tapi di London belum ada salji. Mungkin kalau salji turun, cuaca akan menjadi **lebih sejuk**. Di rumah yang saya sewa bersama adik saya, sistem pemanas **tidak begitu baik**. Setiap malam kami kesejukan.

Sistem kenderaan di sini **agak cekap**. Di kota London ada sistem kereta api bawah tanah yang dipanggil tiub. Mula-mula semasa saya naik tiub ini, saya rasa ini pengalaman yang **paling menakutkan** sebab tiub itu berjalan beratus-ratus kaki di bawah tanah. Tapi ini **cara terbaik** untuk ke sana sini kerana di jalan **terlalu banyak** kenderaan. Selalu saja ada kesesakan jalan raya, terutama sekali di musim Krismas.

Saya akan pulang tidak lama lagi. Saya pulang ke Malaysia **lebih awal** daripada adik saya. Dia akan pulang **lebih lambat** daripada saya sebab dia hendak pergi melawat Scotland. Pada masa ini Scotland **lebih sejuk daripada** London. Dia mau pergi ke Scotland untuk melihat dan bermain salji. Saya akan menulis surat yang **lebih panjang** lain kali, kalau tidak **begitu sibuk**. Sampai jumpa lagi, salam kepada semua.

Yang benar,  
Ali.

**Vocabulary**

membeli-belah	shopping	ingin/i	to wish/desire
walaupun	although	cekap	efficient

**Soalan-soalan**

- 1 Sudah berapa lama Ali berada di London dan dengan siapa?
- 2 Mengapakah keadaan paling sibuk di London?
- 3 Bagaimanakah perbandingan harga barang antara London dengan Hong Kong?
- 4 Bagaimanakah keadaan cuaca pada masa itu di London?
- 5 Bagaimanakah perbezaan harga semasa jualan murah dengan pada masa-masa lain?
- 6 Mengapakah bilik sewa mereka sejuk?
- 7 Apakah cara perjalanan terbaik di London?
- 8 Siapakah akan balik lebih lambat dan kenapa?

# 14 Ramai orang mengerumuni kawasan rumah itu

**Many people gathered in the compound**

In this lesson you will learn about:

- The suffix **i** as a transitive verb maker
- Using the suffix **i** in the active and passive voice

## Ramai orang mengerumuni kawasan itu

Pada satu petang Ahad ketika Rahman dan Seng berjalan-jalan di sebuah lorong yang sepi di Kampung Sentosa, mereka terdengar teriakan dan bunyi kaca pecah diikuti dengan tangisan seorang perempuan. Mereka **merapati** rumah di mana kedengaran tangisan itu. Seng tau bahawa itu rumah Pak Mat yang **mengetuai** kumpulan judi haram di kampung itu. Dia mengetahui hal itu sebab ramai yang **mengalami** kekalahan semasa bermain dengan Pak Mat, termasuk ayah Seng sendiri. Akibat kekalahan judi, ramai yang **menghadapi** masalah hutang dengan Pak Mat.

Ketika Seng dan Rahman **mendekati** rumah itu, pertengkarannya semakin menjadi. Dan semakin ramai pula orang **mengerumuni** kawasan rumah Pak Mat. Dari jauh kelihatan orang bergaduh dan seorang perempuan separuh umur sempat keluar lari dari rumah itu. Dia memberitahu Seng dan Rahman, bahawa semasa berjudi, seorang pemain telah **menyakiti** hati Pak Mat. Pak Mat, yang memang tidak **mengasihani** sesiapa, terus menumbuk orang itu. Orang lain yang **menasihati** Pak Mat juga kena tumbuk.

Tidak lama selepas itu polis datang dan mengepung rumah itu.

Mereka **menasihati** Pak Mat dan kawan-kawannya supaya jangan lari. Polis menjalani tugas mereka dengan begitu cekap sekali dan terus membawa kumpulan itu ke balai polis. Seng memberitahu Rahman bahawa dia bersyukur ayahnya tidak lagi **mendampingi** orang-orang seperti Pak Mat.

### Vocabulary

<b>sepi</b>	quite	<b>bertengkar/</b>	to argue/
<b>tangisan</b>	to cry/sob	<b>per_an</b>	argument
<b>ketua/meng_i</b>	head/to head	<b>kerumun/meng_i</b>	to gather around
<b>hadap/meng_i</b>	to face	<b>gaduh/per_an</b>	to fight/a fight
<b>judi</b>	gambling	<b>separuh umur</b>	middle age
<b>haram</b>	illegal	<b>kasihan/meng-i</b>	to take pity on
<b>sempat</b>	to have the chance/have the opportunity	<b>tumbuk/men-damping/men_i</b>	to punch to befriend
		<b>mengepung</b>	to surround

### Many people gathered in the compound

*One Sunday afternoon, while Rahman and Seng were walking along a quiet lane in Sentosa Village, they heard a scream and the sound of broken glass, followed by a woman's sobbing. They approached the house where the crying was heard. Seng knew that the house belonged to Pak Mat who headed the illegal gambling group in the village. He knew about this because many (people) had experienced losses while playing with Pak Mat, including his own father. As a result of the defeat, many had debt problems with Pak Mat.*

*As Seng and Rahman came near the house, the quarrel appeared to be intensifying. A lot more people were gathering at Pak Mat's compound. From a distance, people could be seen fighting; a middle-aged woman had the chance to run out of the house. She told Seng and Rahman that during the game, a player had insulted Pak Mat. Pak Mat, who doesn't feel pity for anyone, immediately punched the man. Other people tried to advise Pak Mat but they too were punched.*

*Not long after, the police came and surrounded the house. They advised Pak Mat and his friend not to escape. The police did their job efficiently and straight away took the gang to the police station. Seng told Rahman that he thanked God that his father no longer befriended people like Pak Mat.*

### Language points

#### Uses of me- and -i

The suffix **-i** normally used in close conjunction with the prefix **me-** (for the active voice) as a transitive verb maker is a common feature of Malay. It is, however, used more frequently in the written than the spoken language. In cases where one can get away with just the root verb or **me\_kan** one usually avoids using **me\_i**:

**Dia menasihati adiknya supaya belajar kuat.** He advises his brother to study hard.

**Dia menasihatkan adiknya supaya belajar kuat.**

**Polis menjalani tugas mereka dengan cekap.** The police did their job efficiently.

**Polis menjalankan tugas mereka dengan cekap.**

Like the suffix **-kan**, the suffix **-i** also serves as a transitive verb maker. The suffixes **-i** and **-kan** are needed because in Malay a noun or an adjective cannot be used as a verb unless affixation is applied to it.

So what is the difference between **-i** and **-kan** when they are both applied to independent or intransitive verbs? In this application, a verb with the suffix **-i** normally has a locative relationship with the object, i.e. indicating a place:

**Dia memasuki bangunan itu** He entered the building alone.  
**seorang diri.**

Whereas a verb with the suffix **-kan** has a causative relationship with the object. For example:

**Dia memasukkan kotak itu ke dalam bangunan itu.** He put the box in the building.

The object of a **me\_kan** verb is generally 'active'. In the **me\_i** construction, the term 'locative' implies the idea that there is some kind of movement from the subject towards the object. This is evident from the fact that a verb with **me\_i** can generally replace an intransitive verb plus a preposition, without changing the meaning:

**masuk ke** (vi) ('to go into')

**Atan memasukkan buku ke dalam beg.** Atan *puts his books in the bag.*

**Atan memasuki kedai dari belakang.**

(same as) **Atan masuk ke dalam kedai dari belakang.** Atan *went into the shop from the back.*

**duduk di** (vi) ('to sit on')

**Ibu mendudukkan adik di atas kerusi.** Mother *seated my little brother on the chair.*

**Selepas British menjajah Malaya, negara Jepun mendudukinya.** After Britain colonized Malaya, Japan *occupied it.*

**hadap di** (vi) ('to face')

**Polis menghadapkan kes itu di mahkamah tinggi.** The police *brought the case before the high court.*

**Dia menghadapi satu tuduhan yang berat.** He *faces a heavy charge.*

**kahwin dengan** (vi) ('to marry')

**Ayah mengahwinkan kakak dengan lelaki dari bandar.** Father *married sister off to a man from the city.*

**Ayah mengahwini perempuan itu setelah ibu meninggal dunia.**

(same as) **Ayah berkahwin dengan perempuan itu setelah ibu meninggal dunia.** Father *married that woman after mother died.*

To make a transitive verb, the suffix **-i** can be applied also to an adjective or rather to an intransitive verb derived from that adjective:

<i>Adjective</i>	<i>Derived vi with me-</i>	<i>vt with -i</i>
<b>dekat</b> ('near')	<b>mendekat</b> ('to come close')	<b>mendekati</b> ('to approach')
<b>jauh</b> ('far')	<b>menjauh</b> ('to distance')	<b>menjauhi</b> ('to avoid')
<b>dalam</b> ('deep')	<b>mendalam</b> ('to go deep')	<b>mendalami</b> ('to deepen')
<b>atas</b> ('above')	<b>mengatas</b> ('to go upwards')	<b>mengatasi</b> ('to overcome')
<b>rapat</b> ('close')	<b>merapat</b> ('to come closer')	<b>merapati</b> ('to approach')

Examples:

**Rapat** (a) ('close')

**Sarah dan Susan adalah kawan rapat.** Sarah and Suran are *close friends.*

**Atan merapat(kan) kerusi-kerusi di barisan depan.**

**Hassan merapati bangunan itu dengan perasaan takut.**

**Jauh** (a) ('far')

**Rumah saya jauh dari sekolah.** My house is *far from the school.*

**Dia suka menjauh diri dari saudara maranya.** He likes to *distance himself from his relatives.*

**Ibu menasihatkan saya supaya menjauhi tempat-tempat yang bahaya.** Mother advises me to *avoid dangerous places.*

To obtain a transitive verb, the suffix **-i** can also be applied to nouns:

**Nasihat** (n) ('advice')

**Ayah selalu memberi nasihat kepada anak-anaknya.** Dad always gives *advice to his children.*

**Ayah menasihati Atan supaya belajar rajin-rajin.** Dad *advises Atan to study hard.*

**Kepala** (n) ('head')

**Dia menjadi kepala pasukan bola itu.** He is the *captain (head) of the football team.*

**Dia mengepalai rombongan itu semasa rundingan di London.** He *heads the delegation during the conference in London.*

Words such as **baru** ('new'), **ingat** ('remember') and **baik** ('good') can take the form of **me\_i** as well as **memper\_i**:

**Susan seorang gadis yang baik.** Susan is a good *girl.*

**Dia membaiki kereta di tepi jalan.**

or **Dia memperbaiki kereta di tepi jalan.** He *repaired the car by the roadside.*

**Atan beli rumah baru.** Atan bought a *new house.*

**Atan bercadang untuk membarui rumahnya.**

or **Atan bercadang untuk memperbarui rumahnya.** Atan plans to *renovate his house.*

**Saya ingat cerita yang lucu itu.** I remember that funny story.  
**Dia memperingati saya tentang kejadian itu.**  
 or **Dia mengingati saya tentang kejadian itu.** He reminded me about that incident.

See also Lesson 9 on **memper + adjective/verb**.

## Rupa-rupanya mimpi sahaja

Malam begitu gelap sekali. Atan berjalan cepat menuju perhentian bas. Dalam kesunyian itu dia terasa bahawa gerak langkahnya **diikuti** dari belakang. Dia menoleh ke belakang, tapi tidak nampak apa-apa. Dia terus berlari. Kawasan ini memang **dijauhi** orang di waktu malam. Sebelum pulang tadi, dia **dinasihati** supaya jangan menggunakan jalan sepi itu, tapi Atan masih memberanikan diri.

Ketika Atan sampai di persimpangan jalan, dia **dihampiri** satu lembaga yang nampaknya seperti perempuan bertudung. Dia mula merasa lega sebab ada juga orang di jalan itu. Apabila perempuan itu berdepannya, Atan merasai bahawa dia kenal orang itu. Perempuan itu tidak berkata apa-apa, hanya tersenyum saja dan memandang tepat pada mata Atan. Kedua-dua tangannya memeluk bayi kecil yang dibungkus dengan rapi. Atan **merasai** sesuatu yang tidak betul. Dan dia langsung tidak dapat bersuara. Oleh kerana perempuan itu terlalu dekat dengannya, dia dapat menghidu bau-bauan yang amat wangi. Atan mulai gelisah. Dia menoleh ke kiri dan ke kanan. Memang lorong itu tidak banyak **dilalui** orang. ‘Perasaan takut ini perlu **diatasi**’, Atan memberitahu dirinya sendiri.

‘Apa khabar?’ tanya Atan. Perempuan itu masih menyepi. Dia terus menyerahkan bayi itu kepada Atan. **Disentuhinya** tangan Atan dan pada masa itulah terasa benar bahawa tangan perempuan itu sejuk. Pada saat itu juga Atan terdengar bunyi kereta dari belakang. Dia terus menoleh dan ternampak lampu kereta dari jauh memecah kegelapan malam. Atan menoleh semula ke depan, tapi perempuan itu sudah lagi tiada. Yang tinggal hanya bau-bauannya yang wangi serta bungkusan dalam dakapannya. Bayi yang dipegangnya dengan tiba-tiba **dirasainya** berat sekali. Dia membuka bungkusan kain dan Atan terkejut sekali apabila ia **dapati** yang dipegangnya ialah batu nisan!

Atan terus menjerit dan menjerit dengan lebih kuat lagi apabila

terdengar suara wanita memanggil-manggil namanya. Atan membuka matanya. Rupa-rupanya Atan bermimpi. Ibunya berada di sisinya sambil memanggil-manggil nama Atan. ‘Kau bermimpi. Lain kali basuh kaki sebelum tidur!’ kata ibu.

## Vocabulary

<b>tuju/me</b>	to go towards	<b>bau-bauan</b>	aroma
<b>gerak langkah</b>	movement	<b>amat</b>	very
<b>boleh/me</b>	to turn one's head	<b>gelisah</b>	to be worried
<b>mem/berani/kan</b>	brave/to make oneself brave	<b>lorong</b>	lane
<b>lembaga</b>	figure	<b>serah/meny</b>	to hand over
<b>ber/tudung</b>	to cover/to wear (a headscarf)	<b>dakap/_an</b>	embrace
<b>lega</b>	to feel relief	<b>bayi</b>	baby
<b>tersenyum</b>	to smile	<b>sentuh</b>	to touch
<b>di/bungkus/-an</b>	to wrap/wrapped/bundle	<b>tiba-tiba</b>	suddenly
<b>rapi</b>	carefully	<b>terkejut</b>	surprised
<b>meng/hidu</b>	to sniff/smell	<b>batu nisan</b>	gravestone
		<b>jerit/men</b>	to scream
		<b>mimpi/ber</b>	to dream
		<b>sisi</b>	by the side

## Seems like it was just a dream

*The night was very dark. Atan walked quickly towards the bus stop. In the silence he could sense that his movements were being followed from behind. He looked back, but couldn't see anything. He ran. The area was one avoided by people at night. Before setting off for home (just now) he was advised not to use that quiet lane, but Atan still plucked up courage (to walk there).*

*When Atan reached the junction, he was approached by a figure which looked like a woman covered up (in scarves). He started to feel relieved that there were people around. When the woman was face to face with him, Atan sensed that he knew her. The woman didn't say anything but just smiled and looked him straight in the eye. Both her hands were holding a small, carefully wrapped baby. Atan felt that something was wrong. He couldn't find his voice. Because the woman was too close to him he could smell a powerful, pleasant aroma. Atan began to feel worried. He looked left and right. The lane is not used by many passers-by. 'I must overcome this fear!' Atan told himself.*

'How are you?' asked Atan. The woman still kept her silence. She handed over the baby to Atan. Atan's hand was touched by hers and he felt how cold it was. At that moment Atan heard the sound of a car from behind. He looked back and saw the car lights breaking the darkness of the night. He turned back but the woman was no longer there. What was left was just the smell and the bundle in his embrace. The baby that he was holding suddenly seemed very heavy. He opened the bundle and Atan was surprised to find that what he was holding was a gravestone!

Atan screamed, and screamed even louder when he heard a woman's voice calling out his name. Atan opened his eyes. It seemed that he was dreaming. His mother was by his side calling Atan's name. 'You were dreaming. Next time wash your feet before going to sleep!' said his mother.

(Mothers are always telling their children to wash their feet before going to sleep to avoid bad dreams and nightmares!)

## Language points

### The suffix -i in the passive voice

The story above illustrates the use of the suffix -i in the passive voice.

#### Gerak langkah (n) ('movements')

**Gerak langkahnya diikuti dari** His movements were being followed from behind.

#### Jauh (adj) ('avoided')

**Kawasan itu dijauhi orang di waktu malam.** The area is avoided by people at night.

#### Nasihat (n) ('advice')

**Atan dinasihati kawan-kawan supaya jangan menggunakan jalan itu.** Atan was advised by his friends not to use that road.

#### Lalu (vi) ('pass by')

**Jalan itu tidak dilalui orang di waktu malam.** The road is not used (passed by) by people at night.

#### Kenal (vi) ('to know')

**Hassan dikenali sebagai budak yang rajin.**

Hassan is known as a hardworking boy.

## Exercises

### Exercise 1

Change the words in brackets using the **me\_i** form:

- 1 Guru besar (**akhir**) ucapannya dengan satu nasihat kepada pelajar-pelajarnya.
- 2 Samy cuba (**atas**) masalahnya dengan cara yang baik.
- 3 Abu (**kunjung**) pameran itu minggu lepas.
- 4 Menteri itu (**tandatangan**) perjanjian itu selepas rundingan semalam
- 5 Ibu (**nasihat**) anak gadisnya supaya berperangai baik.
- 6 Mak Minah (**susu**) bayinya di dalam bilik.
- 7 Mereka (**hadir**) majlis itu minggu lepas.
- 8 Kami (**temu**) ketua pejabat itu dalam pejabatnya.
- 9 Tan (**jumpa**) beg itu di dalam tong sampah.
- 10 Azman ingin (**dalam**) pengetahuannya dalam bidang sains.

<b>cara</b>	<b>way</b>	<b>sampah</b>	rubbish
<b>rundingan</b>	conference	<b>pengetahuan</b>	knowledge
<b>susu</b>	milk	<b>hadir</b>	to attend

### Exercise 2

Change the following sentences to the passive form. In cases where there are two verbs, attach **nya** to the subject, especially if it is a second or third person, to avoid its repetition. For example:

**Ayah menasihati Abu supaya mencontohi perangai Atan.**  
**Abu dinasihatkan ayah supaya perangai Atan dicontohnya.**

- 1 Saya mengenali penyanyi itu dari jauh lagi.
- 2 Pencuri memasuki rumah itu menerusi pintu belakang.
- 3 Penari itu mengakhiri pertunjukan itu dengan sebuah tarian inang. (*Malay traditional dance*)
- 4 Guru menasihati Abu supaya mencontohi kerja baik Atan.
- 5 Ani mempelajari muzik setiap hujung minggu.

- 6 Perdana Menteri menghadiri upacara itu setelah mengunjungi rumah kanak-kanak cacat.
- 7 Asma mewakili Kedah di pertandingan itu.
- 8 Aman berdoa supaya Tuhan memberkati permintaannya.

<b>muzik</b>	music	<b>liput/me_i</b>	to cover
<b>wakil</b>	representative	<b>contoh/me_i</b>	to make example of
<b>doa/ber_</b>	to pray for	<b>cacat</b>	handicapped
<b>berkat/mem_i</b>	blessing/to bless		

### Exercise 3

Change the sentences below from the passive voice to the active voice. For example:

**Chong diperingati majikannya supaya jangan datang lambat.**  
**Majikan Chong memperingatinya supaya jangan datang lambat.**

- 1 Susan dinasihati ibunya supaya memandu dengan baik.
- 2 Penyanyi itu dikerumuni peminat-peminatnya semasa ia menyanyi.
- 3 Pekerja itu dianugerahi bintang oleh Ketua Menteri kerana keberaniannya.
- 4 Kawasan itu diliputi asap selepas kebakaran itu.
- 5 Kemarahannya dapat diatasi dengan segera apabila anaknya menangis.
- 6 Rumah itu diawasi polis sejak diketahui bahawa pembunuhan itu ada di situ.
- 7 Balai polis itu dihubungi oleh Rahman apabila isterinya tidak pulang.
- 8 Puteri itu dikasih oleh semua penduduk.

<b>minat/peminat</b>	interest/fan	<b>bakar/ke_an</b>	to burn/fire
<b>bintang</b>	medal	<b>anugerah/_i</b>	to award
<b>asap</b>	smoke		

### Exercise 4

Change the following sentences from active to passive and vice versa. The beginnings of the sentences have been provided.

- 1 Ahmad mencintai Aton, anak Pak Hassan.  
Aton, anak Pak Hassan \_\_\_\_\_
- 2 Mereka mengetahui tentang perkara itu dari polis.

- Perkara itu \_\_\_\_\_
- Cek itu ditandatangani Samad di depan saya.  
Samad \_\_\_\_\_
- Kesatuan itu dianggotai Azman sejak tahun lepas.  
Azman \_\_\_\_\_
- Dia tidak merasai kesakitan sehingga dia pulang.  
Kesakitan tidak \_\_\_\_\_
- Basir menghormati orang itu sebagai orang tua.  
Orang itu \_\_\_\_\_
- John didampingi seorang wanita cantik di majlis itu.  
Seorang wanita cantik \_\_\_\_\_
- Semua penduduk meratapi kematian pemerintah itu.  
Kematian pemerintah itu \_\_\_\_\_

<b>hormat/_i</b>	to respect	<b>pemerintah</b>	ruler
<b>ratap/_i</b>	to mourn		

### Exercise 5

Translate the following story into Malay, using among others the given cue words and **me\_i** or **di\_i** affixation as appropriate.

Encik Karim is a school teacher who is loved (**kasih**) by his pupils. He always advised (**nasihat**) his pupils to follow (**ikut**) the lessons in class every day. He obtained (**peroleh**) his qualifications through hard work and is aware (**sedar**) that hard work always leads to success.

Sometimes, during the lesson, he told stories of successful people and encouraged his pupils to follow their examples (**contoh**).

When Encik Karim was ending (**akhir**) his career and, as a dedicated teacher and one who was well respected (**hormat**), the staff and pupils of the school gave him a retirement party. Encik Karim didn't know (**tahu**) about the party. Every member of staff and every pupil was asked to sign (**tandatangan**) a card for Encik Karim.

On the night of the party Encik Karim was asked to go to the school hall. He was still not aware (**sedar**) about the plans for his party. The party was also attended (**hadir**) by his former pupils. When Encik Karim entered (**masuk**) the hall he was surrounded (**kerumun**) by his pupils. In a speech to the students he said that he felt (**rasa**) lucky to be loved (**kasih**) and he too loved (**kasih**) them. He ended (**sudah**) his speech with a rhyme that reminded (**ingat**) his pupils to study hard.

retirement	<b>persaraan</b>	rhyme	<b>pantun</b>
qualification	<b>kelayakan</b>	former	<b>bekas</b>
encourages	<b>menggalakkan</b>	dedicated	<b>berdedikasi</b>

## Conversations

Study the conversations below and note the application of **me\_i**, and **di\_i** in bold print. What roots are they derived from?

### Merawati anak

- BAPAK: Saya **mengetahui** bahawa Tuan Doktor boleh **mengubati** penyakit anak saya ini.
- DOKTOR: Biarlah saya periksanya dahulu dan kalau ada sebarang penyakit, saya akan **merawatinya**.
- BAPAK: Dia tidak dapat tidur semalam kerana dadanya terlalu sakit.
- DOKTOR: Mengapa tidak menghubungi saya lebih awal?
- BAPAK: Saya hanya **menyedari** penyakitnya ini semalam.
- DOKTOR: Buat masa ini anak Encik mesti **menjauhi** sebarang aktiviti berat. Bila dia **mengalami** kesakitan ini lagi, datang ke klinik dengan segera.
- BAPAK: Bulan depan dia **dikehendaki** bermain bola untuk pasukannya.
- DOKTOR: Lebih baik kalau dia tidak bermain. Keadaannya mesti **diawasi!**
- BAPAK: Pada pendapat Tuan Doktor, penyakit ini boleh **mengjangkiti** orang lain?
- DOKTOR: Tidak!

### Vocabulary

<b>sedar/meny_i</b>	to be aware, conscious	<b>jangkit/men_i</b>	to infect
<b>rawat/me_i</b>	to treat	<b>sebarang</b>	any
<b>hubung/meng_i</b>	to contact	<b>awal</b>	early

### Pembangunan bandar

- AHMAD: Saya harap anda akan **menyetujui** rancangan pembangunan ini.
- KASSIM: Saya bersetuju tapi kita juga mesti minta supaya rancan-

gan ini **disetujui** oleh penduduk di sini. Lepas itu bolehlah kerja-kerja **dimulai**.

AHMAD: Jadi kita mesti **menemui** mereka dulu supaya rancangan ini dapat dirunding bersama.

KASSIM: Saya dapat bahawa penduduk-penduduk di sini boleh dibawa berunding. Saya telah **mengikuti** perkembangan pembangunan bandar ini dan saya rasa mereka mempunyai pemimpin-pemimpin yang pintar.

AHMAD: Pemimpin-pemimpin ini mesti **dihubungi** terlebih dahulu dan kalau mereka setuju rancangan ini, kita mulai projek itu.

### Vocabulary

<b>pemimpin</b>	leaders	<b>setuju</b>	to agree
<b>pintar</b>	clever	<b>kembang/per_an</b>	to develop

### Reading

Study the text. Note the applications of **me\_i** and **di\_i** printed in bold, then answer the comprehension questions at the end of the text.

### Dikurniai seorang bayi

Azlan dan Salmah berumah tangga selama sepuluh tahun tapi belum **memperolehi** anak. Setiap hari mereka berdoa supaya satu hari mereka **dikurniai** seorang bayi. Keadaan ini **mengganggu** ketenteraman rumah tangga mereka. Sahabat-sahabat mereka **menasihati** mereka supaya mereka **dirawati** di rumah sakit, tetapi mereka memerlukan wang yang agak banyak untuk tujuan itu.

Oleh kerana ia tidak **mempunyai** anak sendiri, Salmah sentiasa **merindui** anak saudaranya, Anna yang baru berumur 10 bulan. Tiap-tiap minggu dia **mengunjungi** kakaknya untuk bermain dengan anak kecil itu. Selepas beberapa lama, Salmah mendapat tahu bahawa Azlan selalu **didampingi** oleh seorang wanita cantik apabila dia keluar. Salmah sudah lama **mensyaki** Azlan tidak setia kepadanya, tapi dia tidak berani menghadapi kenyataan yang sebenar.

Pada satu hari, Salmah membuat keputusan untuk meninggalkan Azlan. Dia menulis sepucuk surat yang ditinggalkan kepada Azlan

dan meminta supaya dirinya **dilupai**. Salmah bertujuan untuk **menghadapi** hidup seorang diri. Dia **merasai** dirinya sebagai tidak guna lagi sebagai seorang isteri. Dia menyesal bahawa Azlan tidak **menepati** janjinya akan bersamanya walau apa sekalipun terjadi. Salmah **mengakhiri** suratnya dengan meminta ampun dan maaf dari suami yang masih **dikasihil**.

Apabila Azlan menerima surat itu, dia terus **menyesali** sikapnya itu. Azlan menghubungi kakak Salmah untuk **mengetahui** di mana Salmah berada tapi tidak siapa pun yang tahu. Salmah telah menghilangkan diri. Setelah polis dihubungi, mereka menjumpai Salmah di rumah kanak-kanak cacat. Dia **menikmati** hidup baru dengan anak-anak yang **mengasihinya**. Dia kini **dikurniai** anak-anak yang juga mendapat kasih sayangnya.

### Vocabulary

<b>kurnia/_i</b>	to give/to be blessed with	<b>tepat/me_i</b>	to be exact/to fulfil
<b>tenteram/ke_an</b>	peace	<b>ampun</b>	to pardon/to forgive
<b>rindu/me_i</b>	to miss, to long for	<b>sikap</b>	attitude
<b>syak/men_i</b>	to suspect	<b>nikmat/me_i</b>	enjoyment/to enjoy
<b>setia</b>	loyal		
<b>kenyataan</b>	reality		
<b>keputusan</b>	decision		

### Soalan-soalan

- 1 Sudah berapa lamakah Azlan dan Salmah berumah tangga?
- 2 Apakah yang mengganggu ketenteraman rumah tangga mereka?
- 3 Siapakah yang menasihati mereka dan apakah nasihat mereka?
- 4 Siapakah yang dirindui Salmah setiap hari?
- 5 Salmah buat apa setiap hujung minggu?
- 6 Azlan dikatakan berdampingan dengan siapa setiap kali dia keluar?
- 7 Apakah yang Salmah menyesali?
- 8 Bagaimanakah Salmah mengakhiri suratnya kepada Azlan?
- 9 Siapakah Azlan hubungi untuk mencari Salmah?
- 10 Di manakah polis menjumpai Salmah?

# 15 Ayam terlepas keluar

The chickens have escaped

In this lesson you will learn about:

- Expressing involuntary and accidental actions using **ter- + verb**
- Using **ter-** to express ability/inability
- Using **ter-** to indicate the result of an action

### Ayam terlepas keluar

*Pak Mahmud is holding a wedding feast for about five hundred people in three days' time. Preparations are being made for the marriage of his eldest daughter. He is extremely proud, although a little anxious that the wedding should run smoothly*

Dari pagi lagi Pak Mahmud berkejar ke sana sini untuk membeli barang dan menyiapkan makanan untuk kenduri kahwin anaknya, Timah. Isterinya Mak Limah juga sibuk menyiapkan pelamin pengantin. Ramai saudara mara yang datang untuk menolong mereka. Pak Mahmud telah membeli lima puluh ekor ayam untuk membuat kari. Dia telah **terbeli** sepuluh ekor lebih dari yang disuruh oleh Mak Limah. ‘Tak mengapalah’, fikirnya. ‘Lebih banyak tak apa daripada tidak cukup.’ Dia sengaja membeli ayam-ayam yang besar dan gemuk supaya lebih sedap untuk dibuat kari.

Ayam-ayam yang dibeli Pak Mahmud disimpan di dalam reban ayam dan diberi makan dengan cukupnya sebelum disembelih. Pak Mahmud menyuruh anak-anak kecil jirananya untuk memberi makan ayam-ayam itu. Mereka begitu suka sekali. Pak Mahmud terus pergi menyiapkan kerusi untuk tetamu-tetamunya. Tiba-tiba dia **ternampak** ayam-ayamnya berkeliaran. Rupa-rupanya ayam sudah **terlepas** dari reban!

Kanak-kanak kecil tadi juga berkeliaran mengejar ayam-ayam

itu. Semua **terjatuh**; ada yang **tersungkur** dan ada yang **terbaring**. Pak Mahmud sendiri **terpegun** dan tidak dapat membuat apa-apa. Mulutnya **terbuka** dan **tertutup** tapi tak bersuara.

Mak Limah turun dari rumah dan tolong mengejar ayam-ayam itu, tapi kakinya terpijak sarung dan sarungnya pun **tercicir**. Orang ramai yang melihat terus **tergelak** tak henti-henti. Mereka teringat kisah lucu tentang Pak Pandir dan isterinya Mak Andih.

Pak Mahmud cuba menolong Mak Limah. Kanak-kanak yang cuba menolong menangkap ayam-ayam itu berlari ke sana sini. Semua kerusi yang disusun Pak Mahmud **terbalik**.

Pak Mahmud **tersandar** melihat keadaan huru-hara itu. Dan ternganga mulut pengantin perempuan melihat keadaan ibu dan bapanya. Semua ini berlaku kerana Pak Mahmud **terlupa** untuk mengunci reban ayam!

### Vocabulary

<b>kejar/ber</b>	to chase, rush	<b>ingat/ter_</b>	to remember/come to mind
<b>kenduri</b>	feast	<b>cicir/ter_</b>	to drop accidentally
<b>sengaja</b>	purposely	<b>gelak/ter_</b>	to laugh
<b>pelamin</b>	bridal dais	<b>susun/di_</b>	to arrange
<b>pengantin</b>	bride and groom	<b>sandar/ter_</b>	to sit back
<b>reban</b>	coop	<b>nganga/ter</b>	to gape
<b>sembelih/di</b>	to slaughter	<b>cukup</b>	enough
<b>keliaran/ber</b>	to run helter skelter	<b>kari</b>	curry
<b>sungkur/ter_</b>	to fall flat on the face	<b>kerusi</b>	chair
<b>pegun/ter_</b>	to stun/stunned	<b>huru-hara</b>	chaotic situation
<b>pijak/ter_</b>	to step/accidentally step	<b>mulut</b>	mouth

### The chickens have escaped

Since early morning, Pak Mahmud had been rushing here and there to buy things and prepare food for the wedding feast of his eldest daughter, Timah. His wife, Mak Limah, was also busy getting the bridal dais ready. Lots of relatives had come to help them. Pak Mahmud had bought fifty chickens for the curry. He had accidentally bought ten more than Mak Limah had asked for. ‘Never mind,’ he thought, ‘it’s better to have too much, than not enough.’ He had deliberately bought big, fat chickens because they make delicious curry.

All decorations were already hung. The chickens bought by Pak

Mahmud were kept in a chicken coop and were fed up for slaughtering. Pak Mahmud asked the neighbour’s little children to feed the chickens. They were delighted. Pak Mahmud went on to get the chairs ready for his guests. Suddenly he saw the chickens running around, helter-skelter. It seemed that the chickens had escaped from the coop!

The children were also running around chasing after the chickens. Everybody fell over; some fell flat on their faces and some fell flat on their backs. Pak Mahmud himself was stunned and didn’t do anything. His mouth opened and shut but nothing came out.

Mak Limah came down from the house and helped to chase after the chickens but her feet accidentally stepped on her sarong and it came off. The people who were watching burst out laughing. They remembered the funny story about Pak Pandir and his wife Mak Andih [an old tale about an odd couple].

Pak Mahmud tried to help Mak Limah. The children who were trying to catch the chickens ran here and there. All the chairs that had been arranged by Pak Mahmud were overturned.

Pak Mamud sat back and watched the chaos. The bride’s mouth gaped open as she saw the state her mother and father were in. All this happened because Pak Mahmud had forgotten to lock the chicken coop!

### Language point

#### Accidental/unintentional actions

**Ter-** + a transitive verb can be used to indicate accidental actions.

The phrase **tak sengaja** (‘not on purpose’) is often used to emphasize the involuntary and accidental nature of an action. **Sengaja** shows that the action was done on purpose:

#### ter- + lepas

<b>Ayam terlepas dari reban.</b>	The chicken escaped from the coop.
<b>Ayam tak sengaja dilepas dari reban.</b>	The chickens were accidentally let out of the coop.
<b>Dia sengaja melepaskan ayam dari reban.</b>	He deliberately let the chickens out of the coop.

**ter- + putus**

**Tali bendera itu terputus.**  
**Dengan tak sengaja tali itu putus semasa saya mengikat bendera itu.**

The flag string *snapped*.  
 The string *accidentally snapped* while I was tying the flag.

**ter- + pijak**

**Mak Limah terpijak sarungnya.**  
**Mak Limah tak sengaja pijak sarungnya.**  
**Mak Limah sengaja pijak kaki orang itu.**  
**Sarung Mak Limah terpijak olehnya semasa ia berlari.**

Mak Limah *accidentally stepped on* her sarong.  
 Mak Limah did *not deliberately step on* her sarong.  
 Mak Limah *deliberately stepped on* the man's leg.  
 Mak Limah's sarong *was stepped on* by her while she was running. (*lit.*)

**Involuntary actions**

Ter- + an intransitive verb (in the subjective construction) is used to indicate involuntary actions.

**ter- + gelak**

**Mereka tergelak melihat kejadian lucu itu.**  
**Dengan tak sengaja mereka gelak melihat kejadian itu.**

They *burst out laughing* watching the funny incident.  
 (*Without any intention*) they laughed watching the incident.

**ter- + nganga**

**Mulutnya ternganga melihat kejadian itu.**  
**Dia tak sengaja nganga mulutnya semasa melihat kejadian itu.**

His mouth *fell open* as he watched the incident.  
 He did *not deliberately open his mouth* while watching the incident.

**ter- + tidur**

**Amin tertidur semasa membaca buku.**  
**Amin tak sengaja tidur semasa membaca buku.**

Amin *fell asleep* while reading the book.  
 Amin did *not deliberately go to sleep* while reading the book.

**ter- + gigit**

**Saya tergigit lidah semasa bercakap.**  
**Saya tidak sengaja menggigit lidah semasa perbualan itu.**

I *accidentally bit my tongue while talking.*

I *did not deliberately bite my tongue during the conversation.*

**Semuanya teratur** 

*After a morning of near disasters, Pak Mahmud and Mak Limah decided to think again. Pak Mahmud contacted a friend, Musa, who worked at a hotel and told him about the problems. After what had happened, Pak Mahmud hadn't got the energy left to organize anything, so Musa took the matter into his own hands*

Pada pagi hari kenduri perkahwinan itu, Pak Mahmud dan Mak Limah bangun awal, tetapi di halaman luar rumah, sudah **tersusun** kerusi dan meja untuk para tamu yang akan datang petang itu.

Segala perhiasan telah **tergantung**. Pinggan mangkuk untuk jamuan tengah hari juga sudah **tersedia** di dapur. Di pintu masuk kawasan rumah Pak Mahmud, **terdapat** sebuah arca besar dan kiri kanannya **terdapat** bunga-bunga manggar yang berwarna-warni. Dan **terpampang** bendera besar yang mengatakan 'Selamat Datang'.

Di dalam rumah pula, sebuah pelamin cantik yang siap **terhias** dengan pasu-pasu bunga yang harum dan kertas warna-warni. Dua kerusi pengantin terletak di tengah-tengah pelamin untuk persandingan nanti. Di depan pelamin **terbentang** satu permaidani indah di mana para jemputan akan duduk menyaksikan pengantin bersanding.

Para tamu yang tiba pukul 12.00 tengah hari dijemput masuk ke ruang depan rumah Pak Mahmud untuk menyaksikan upacara bersanding. Dari jauh terdengar pukulan kompong yang menandakan ketibaan pengantin lelaki. Pengantin lelaki diiring masuk terus ke pelamin di mana siap **ternanti** pengantin perempuan. Mereka duduk di pelamin buat beberapa lama untuk tatapan para tamu. Kedua-dua pengantin tersenyum melihat telatah kawan-kawan yang nakal.

Tepat pada pukul 12.30 tengah hari, siap **terhidang** segala nasi dan lauk kenduri. Masakan ini telah dimasak oleh pekerja-pekerja Musa di hotelnya. Boleh dikatakan segala-galanya terkawal. Pak Mahmud dan Mak Limah hanya melayan para tamu mereka saja.

Kedua-dua pengantin lelaki dan perempuan diiring keluar untuk makan bersama tetamu mereka. Di kepala meja, siap **tersedia** dan **terhidang** makanan khas untuk pengantin. Sejambak bunga menghiasi meja itu. **Ternyata** benar bahawa Pak Mahmud dan Mak Limah gembira dengan segala persediaan untuk kenduri anak perempuan mereka yang sulung. Akhir-akhirnya semuanya berjalan dengan **teratur**!

### Vocabulary

<b>hias/per_an</b>	to decorate/decoration
<b>gantung/ter</b>	to hang/hung
<b>arca</b>	arch
<b>bunga manggar</b>	<i>a kind of flower made of colourful materials for special occasions</i>
<b>pampang</b>	to display/displayed
<b>sanding/ber_</b>	to sit/stand side by side, especially in marriage ceremony
<b>saksi/meny_kan</b>	to witness
<b>bentang/ter_</b>	to lay out/laid out
<b>kompong</b>	<i>drums played for special occasions such as weddings</i>
<b>tatap/_an</b>	to feast one's eyes on
<b>telatah</b>	antics
<b>sejambak bunga</b>	a bouquet of flowers
<b>nyata/ter_</b>	evidently
<b>permaidani</b>	carpet

### Everything was arranged

*On the morning of the feast, Pak Mahmud and Mak Limah woke up early, but in the house compound, tables and chairs for the guests who were coming that afternoon were already arranged. Plates and bowls for the feast were already in the kitchen. At the entrance to the compound of Pak Mahmud's house was a big arch and there were colourful manggar flowers on the left and right (of the arch). There was also a big flag (displayed), saying 'Welcome'.*

*In the house, a beautiful dais was decorated with aromatic flowers in pots and colourful paper. Two chairs for the bride and groom were already placed in the middle of the dais for the bersanding ceremony later. In front of the dais, a beautiful carpet was laid out on which guests would sit to witness the bride and groom sit side by side.*

*The guests, who arrived at noon, were invited to enter the front hall*

*of Pak Mahmud's house to witness the bersanding ceremony. From a distance, the beat of the kompong drums was heard to mark the arrival of the bridegroom. The groom was led inside, straight to the dais where the bride was waiting. They sat on the dais for a while so the guests could feast their eyes on them. Both the bride and groom smiled, watching the antics of their naughty friends.*

*At 12.30 sharp, all the rice and dishes for the kenduri were ready and laid out. The food had been cooked by Musa's workers at his hotel. It could be said that everything was under control. Pak Mahmud and Mak Limah needed only to entertain their guests.*

*Both the bride and groom were led out to eat with their guests. At the head of the table, a special meal had been laid out and served for the bride and groom. A bouquet of flowers decorated the table. It was evident that Pak Mahmud and Mak Limah were happy with all the preparations for their eldest daughter's feast. Everything turned out to be well planned after all!*

### Language point

#### Stative verbs: the result of an action

Ter- + verb can be used to indicate the result of an action.

##### Ter- + susun

**Di halaman luar, semua kerusi meja siap tersusun.** Out in the compound, all chairs and tables were already *arranged*.

This is the same as:

**Di halaman luar, semua kerusi meja siap disusun (oleh pekerja).** Out in the compound, all chairs and tables were already *arranged* (by the workers).

##### ter- + hidang

**Makanan pengantin siap terhidang di atas meja.** The bridal food was *already served* on the table.

This is the same as:

**Makanan pengantin siap dihidang (oleh seseorang) di atas meja.** The bridal food was *already served by someone* on the table.

### Ter + bentang

**Permaidani itu terbentang di tengah-tengah dewan.** The carpet was *already laid out* in the middle of the hall.

This is the same as:

**Permaidani itu dibentang di tengah-tengah dewan.** The carpet was *laid out* in the middle of the hall.

## Pinggan-pinggan ini tak akan terganti

*Pak Mahmud and Mak Limah were rejoicing after the success of the wedding feast*

Pak Mahmud memang terhutang budi dengan Musa. Segala-galanya berjalan dengan licin dan selepas melayani tetamu-tetamu mereka semalam, Pak Mahmud dan Mak Limah tidak bertenaga lagi untuk membuat apa-apa. Mereka **tak terdaya** mengemas barang-barang yang berselerak di dalam dan di luar rumah. Pak Mahmud menanya Ahmad anak bongsunya sama ada dia **terdaya** mengangkat pinggan mangkuk masuk ke dalam rumah. Ahmad juga mengatakan dia begitu letih selepas bekerja teruk pada hari perkahwinan semalam.

Mak Limah masuk ke dapur dan terkejut melihat makanan yang begitu banyak yang masih ada dalam periuk-periuk. Keluarga Mak Limah **tak termakan** semua makanan ini kerana terlalu banyak. Musa telah masak terlebih untuk kenduri itu. Di bawah rumah pula, terdapat pinggan-pinggan yang pecah. Kalau disuruh ganti pun, memang **tak terganti** sebab pinggan-pinggan ini dibeli Musa di luar negeri.

Mak Limah kemudian pergi balik ke dapur. Pinggan mangkuk yang kotor bersepah memang **tak terbasuh** kesemuanya hari itu juga. Semua saudara maranya sudah pulang dan tak dapat menolongnya lagi. Periuk-periuk besar kepunyaan Musa masih lagi di luar. Dan **tak terangkat** oleh Pak Mahmud seorang diri. Dia terpaksa menunggu Musa datang mengambilnya.

Apabila Musa datang ke rumah Pak Mahmud, dia menyerah kepada Pak Mahmud bil kerja kenduri serta masakan kenduri. Sekali lagi ternganga mulut Pak Mahmud melihat bil sebanyak RM20,000. Dia **tak terfikir** yang belanja nikah kahwin itu begitu banyak. Musa **tergamak** mengenakan bayaran sebanyak itu kepada kawan baiknya sendiri?

### Vocabulary

<b>terhutang budi</b>	to owe in terms of kindness	<b>bil</b>	bill
<b>daya/ter</b>	energy, ability	<b>gamak/ter</b>	to have the heart or be willing (to do something without pity)
<b>selerak/ber</b>	to be in a mess	<b>tenaga/ber</b>	energy/to have the energy
<b>kecuali</b>	unless	<b>periuk</b>	pots (for cooking)
<b>kira/ter</b>	to count	<b>angkut/ter</b>	to lift/able to be lifted
<b>ganti/ter</b>	to replace/replaceable	<b>sama ada</b>	whether

## The plates were irreplaceable

*Pak Mahmud certainly owed Musa a lot for his kindness. Everything had gone smoothly, and after entertaining their guests the previous night, Pak Mahmud and Mak Limah didn't have any energy to do anything. They were unable to tidy up the things left lying around in and outside the house. Pak Mahmud asked his youngest son, Ahmad, whether he had any energy left to carry the plates and bowls to the house. Ahmad also said he was too tired after working hard for the wedding the day before.*

*Mak Limah went to the kitchen and was surprised to see lots of left-over food still in the pots. Mak Limah's family wouldn't be able to get through all the food because there was too much. Musa had cooked too much for the feast. Broken plates were then found under the house. Even if she was asked to replace them, they would certainly be irreplaceable because the plates were bought by Musa from overseas.*

*Later, Mak Limah went back to the kitchen. They would not be able to wash the dirty plates and bowls that same day. All her relatives had gone home and were not able to help her. The big pots belonging to Musa were still outside. And they were too heavy for Pak Mahmud to carry alone. He had to wait for Musa to come and get them.*

*When Musa came to Pak Mahmud's house, he handed over to Pak Mahmud the bill for services and the food. Once again, Pak Mahmud's mouth fell open when he saw a bill for RM20,000. He had never thought that the wedding would cost that much. How could Musa have the heart to charge his own close friend that much?*

## Language points

### Expressing ability or inability

**Ter-** + transitive verb can be used to indicate ability achieved against all odds. To indicate inability, use **tak** or **tidak** in front of it, i.e. **tak ter-** + transitive verb.

You should be able to differentiate by context the use of **ter** + transitive verb which indicates ability and **ter** + transitive verb which indicates accidental action.

#### tak ter- + makan

<b>Keluarga Mak Limah tak termakan makanan sebegitu banyak.</b>	Mak Limah's family <i>won't be able to eat</i> that much food.
---	--

#### ter- + makan

<b>Cili yang begitu pedas termakan oleh Asiah.</b>	A chilli that hot could be eaten by Asiah.
--	--

#### tak ter- + angkat

<b>Pak Mahmud tak terangkat periuk yang begitu berat.</b>	Pak Mahmud <i>isn't able to lift</i> a pot that heavy.
---	--

#### ter- + angkat

<b>Beg yang begitu berat terangkat oleh budak kecil itu.</b>	Such a heavy bag <i>could be lifted</i> by the small child.
--	---

#### tak ter- + bayar

<b>Pak Mahmud tak terbayar hutang sebanyak itu kepada Musa.</b>	Pak Mahmud <i>isn't able to pay</i> that much debt owed to Musa.
---	--

#### ter- + bayar

<b>Pak Mahmud terbayar juga hutang selepas bekerja kuat.</b>	Pak Mahmud <i>is able to pay</i> the debt after working hard.
--	---

#### tak ter- + ganti

<b>Mak Limah tak terganti pinggan-pinggan yang mahal itu.</b>	Mak Limah <i>is not able to replace</i> the expensive plates.
---	---

#### ter- + ganti

<b>Selepas mencari di merata kedai, terganti juga barang kemas yang hilang itu.</b>
---

After searching in shops everywhere, the lost jewellery *was finally replaced*.

#### tak ter- + jamin

<b>Keselamatan Aman tak terjamin sebab dia berada di tempat yang bahaya.</b>
--

Aman's safety *cannot be guaranteed* because he is in a dangerous place.

#### ter- + jamin

<b>Masa depannya terjamin.</b>
--------------------------------

His future *is (able to be) guaranteed*.

<b>jamin</b>	to guarantee
--------------	--------------

### Summary of uses of the ter- prefix

Applied to verbs **ter-** is used to express:

- 1 accidental/unintentional actions, e.g. **termakan**, **tergigit**, **terjatuh**
- 2 involuntary actions, e.g. **tersenyum**, **terbatuk**, **terkejut**, **terpegun**
- 3 a state (result of action), e.g. **tersusun**, **teratur**, **tergantung**, **terbentang**, **terletak**
- 4 ability (against the odds), i.e. **ter-** + verb  
inability , i.e. when preceded by **tak/tidak** + **ter-**

For **ter-** applied to adjectives, see Lesson 13.

### Exercises

#### Exercise 1

Identify whether **ter-** in the following sentences expresses accidental/unintentional or involuntary actions, a state, ability or inability.

- 1 Saya termakan kari yang pedas itu dan sekarang saya sakit perut.
- 2 Rumah saya terletak di atas bukit.
- 3 Oleh kerana terlalu banyak makan, dia termuntah di atas katil.
- 4 Jarinya terpotong semasa dia memotong ikan.
- 5 Kereta itu sungguh mahal. Tak terbeli oleh saya yang hanya bergaji kecil.

- 6 Tergamak dia menghalau emaknya sendiri keluar dari rumah.  
 7 Akhir-akhirnya terbayar juga hutang itu walaupun ia mesti bekerja siang malam.  
 8 Rumah itu terbakar tetapi orang dalam rumah itu terselamat.

<b>pedas</b>	hot	<b>muntah/ter_</b>	to vomit
<b>perut</b>	stomach	<b>halau/meng_</b>	to chase out

### Exercise 2

Say the following sentences in Malay, using the **ter-** prefix. Begin the sentence with the words given, omitting words such as ‘accidentally’, ‘unintentionally’, ‘unable’, ‘able’, etc.

- 1 Ahmad accidentally stepped on the plates. (**pijak**)  
 Ahmad ter- \_\_\_\_\_
- 2 On both sides of the road can be found fruit trees. (**dapat**)  
 Pada kedua-dua belah jalan ter- \_\_\_\_\_
- 3 She unintentionally bought a fake watch. (**beli**)  
 Dia ter- \_\_\_\_\_
- 4 I am unable to answer all these questions in five minutes. (**jawab**)  
 Saya tak \_\_\_\_\_
- 5 Although she is poor, she is still able to send her son to the university. (**daya**)  
 Walaupun dia miskin, dia masih ter- \_\_\_\_\_
- 6 When she told me the story, I laughed so loudly. (**gelak**)  
 Apabila dia memberitau cerita itu, saya ter- \_\_\_\_\_
- 7 The fare of the flight is inclusive of airport tax. (**masuk**)  
 Tambang penerbangan itu ter- \_\_\_\_\_
- 8 Father was stunned when Aman came back with his new hairstyle. (**pegun**)  
 Bapak ter- \_\_\_\_\_
- 9 Five people were injured in the accident. (**cedera**)  
 Lima orang ter- \_\_\_\_\_
- 10 In the confusion, the soldier accidentally shot his friend. (**tembak**)  
 Dalam kekeliruan itu, askar itu ter- \_\_\_\_\_

<b>fake</b>	<b>tiruan</b>	hairstyle	<b>fesyen rambut</b>
-------------	---------------	-----------	----------------------

### Exercise 3

Select the right words to complete the sentences:

- 1 (**beli, pembelian, terbeli, membeli**)  
 Dia ingin \_\_\_\_\_ kereta mahal itu, tapi tak \_\_\_\_\_ olehnya kerana harganya mahal.
- 2 (**pukul, memukul, terpukul, pukulan**)  
 Semasa \_\_\_\_\_ bola dengan kayu hoki, dia \_\_\_\_\_ kaki kawannya.
- 3 (**makan, termakan, memakan, makanan**)  
 Saya tak \_\_\_\_\_ apabila melihat gambar kanak-kanak yang kekurangan \_\_\_\_\_
- 4 (**letak, terletak, meletak**)  
 Meja itu \_\_\_\_\_ di tengah-tengah dewan. Siapa yang \_\_\_\_\_ -nya di sana?
- 5 (**terdiri, mendirikan, berdiri**)  
 Dia \_\_\_\_\_ sebentar selepas mendengar berita buruk itu. Kemudian semua orang \_\_\_\_\_ untuk memberinya sokongan moral.
- 6 (**masuk, termasuk, memasuki, memasukkan**)  
 Dalam kumpulan itu \_\_\_\_\_ seorang gadis yang sangat cantik. Dia \_\_\_\_\_ pertandingan itu setelah ibunya \_\_\_\_\_ namanya ke dalam senarai.
- 7 (**membakar, terbakar, pembakaran**)  
 Semasa Abu \_\_\_\_\_ sampah, dia \_\_\_\_\_ baju yang tergantung di luar rumah.
- 8 (**potong, memotong, terpotong, potongan**)  
 Asma \_\_\_\_\_ jarinya semasa ia \_\_\_\_\_ ikan.
- 9 (**gigit, tergigit, menggigit**)  
 Semasa Chong \_\_\_\_\_ biscut itu, dia \_\_\_\_\_ satu benda keras.
- 10 (**teringat, ingatan, ingat, peringatan**)  
 Hamid \_\_\_\_\_ satu kisah sedih dalam hidupnya. Kejadian itu menjadi satu \_\_\_\_\_ supaya ia selalu berhati-hati.

<b>jari</b>	<b>finger</b>	<b>benda</b>	thing
<b>biskut</b>	biscuit		

### Conversations

#### Majikan dengan pekerja

- M: Apa yang sudah terjadi?  
 P: Saya terbayar upah Amat kepada orang lain?  
 M: Macam mana tersalah bayar?

- P: Saya ternampak nama Amat pada kertas tuntutan upah itu, jadi saya terus bayar pembawanya.
- M: Tak terfikirkah yang dia mungkin Ahmad, atau Aman?
- P: Saya sudah tersilap baca. Terkejut Amat bila saya tak dapat cari duitnya!
- M: Kamu terpaksa cari orang itu dan minta balik duit itu.

### Vocabulary

<b>upah</b>	payment	<b>silap/ter_</b>	to be wrong
<b>tuntutan</b>	demand		

### Pasar raya peniaga tempatan

- A: Di mana terletak bangunan pasar raya baru itu?
- B: Pasar raya itu bukannya mudah dicari. Ia terapit oleh dua bangunan besar di Jalan Bangsar.
- A: Anda sudah ke sana?
- B: Saya termasuk salah seorang penjual di situ. Jadi saya ke sana setiap hari.
- A: Bagaimana keadaannya?
- B: Barang-barang tersusun kemas, jual-beli semuanya dijalankan dengan teratur dan harganya terjamin murah.
- A: Siapa tuan punya pasar raya itu?
- B: Mereka terdiri dari peniaga-peniaga tempatan.

### Vocabulary

<b>tuan punya</b>	owner	<b>apit/ter_</b>	to be wedged
<b>pasar raya</b>	supermarket		between two objects

### Reading

Read the text below, noting in particular the uses of **ter** in its various forms and functions, then answer the questions at the end.

### Teringat kisah lucu

Dua tahun selepas perkahwinan anak sulungnya, Timah, Pak Mahmud dan Mak Limah mendapat berita bahawa mereka telah mendapat cucu. Dan sepuluh tahun selepas itu, semasa merayakan

hari jadi cucu mereka yang ke dua belas, Pak Mahmud dan Mak Limah **terkenang** kembali kisah yang bercampur suka dan duka semasa perkahwinan anak mereka.

Hutang perbelanjaan Pak Mahmud kepada Musa masih belum **terbayar**, tapi mereka **terpaksa** membayar secara **beransur-ansur** kepada Musa. Dan hutangnya bukanlah begitu banyak.

Musa tersilap kira sehingga Pak Mahmud dikenakan bayaran sebanyak RM20,000. Perbelanjaan sebenarnya hanya RM10,000, **terlebih** RM10,000 lagi. Walaupun tak **terhingga** kegembiraannya, itu pun masih **tidak terbayar** oleh Pak Mahmud. Dan Musa yang mengenangkan budi baik Pak Mahmud, membenarkan Pak Mahmud membayar sebanyak mana yang ia mampu setiap bulan. Pak Mahmud rasa **terharu** dengan kebaikan Musa.

Melihat kebahagian rumah tangga anaknya Timah, Pak Mahmud rasa cita-citanya **tercapai**. Timah mempunyai rumah besar dan suami yang baik. Rumah mereka **terletak** di atas sebuah bukit yang indah dan apabila Pak Mahmud dan Mak Limah **teringat** cucu mereka, Adi, mereka akan melawatnya. Timah mahu membayar hutang Pak Mahmud, kerana dia tak **tergamak** melihat bapanya bekerja kuat semasa tua untuk membayar hutang. Tapi Pak Mahmud enggan menerima pertolongannya. Dia menganggap belanja kenduri itu sebagai hadiah kepada anaknya. Timah tidak **tersinggung** dengan sikap Pak Mahmud dan dia tahu bahawa hutang itu lama kelamaan akan **terbayar** juga.

Sekali sekala Timah **teringat** kisah lucu anak-anak kecil mengejar ayam pada hari perkahwinannya. Mereka **tergelak** beramai-ramai teringatkan Mak Limah yang terburai kainnya. Adi sungguh tertarik dengan cerita-cerita ini dan selalu meminta datuk dan neneknya menceritakan kisah-kisah lucu ini berkali-kali. Dan tak **terjawab** Mak Limah segala soalan Adi yang memang suka bertanya. Mak Limah menceritakan bagaimana mulut emak Adi, Timah, **ternganga** ketika melihat kain ibunya **terburai** dan bagaimana Pak Mahmud **tersandar** sambil mulutnya terbuka dan **tertutup** tanpa bersuara. Semua kenangan ini **tersemai** dalam kenangan Pak Mahmud dan Mak Limah.

### Vocabulary

<b>duka</b>	sadness	<b>bahagia/ke_an</b>	happy/happiness
<b>campur/ber</b>	to add	<b>cita-cita</b>	ambition
<b>hutang</b>	debt	<b>capai/ter</b>	to achieve
<b>haru/ter</b>	to disturb/disturbed	<b>singgung/ter</b>	to elbow/offended

<b>enggan</b>	to refuse	<b>semai/ter</b>	to plant/implanted
<b>burai/ter</b>	to unfold and drop		

### Soalan-soalan

- 1 Pak Mahmud dan Mak Limah mendapat cucu setelah berapa tahun anak mereka berkahwin?
- 2 Apakah hutang Pak Mahmud kepada Musa masih tak terbayar?
- 3 Mengapakah Pak Mahmud dikatakan berhutang RM20,000? Berapakah wang yang terlebih dalam kiraannya?
- 4 Bagaimanakah pembayaran hutang Pak Mahmud kepada Musa setiap bulan?
- 5 Mengapakah Musa membenarkan Pak Mahmud membayar sebanyak mana yang dia mampu setiap bulan?
- 6 Di manakah terletaknya rumah Timah dengan suaminya?
- 7 Apakah yang diingat selalu oleh Pak Mahmud dan Mak Limah tentang hari perkahwinan Timah?
- 8 Apakah kejadian lucu yang berlaku pada Mak Limah?
- 9 Bagaimanakah mulut Timah semasa melihat keadaan ibu dan bapanya?
- 10 Apakah yang mereka buat semasa terkenang kisah-kisah lucu ini?

## 16 Bermaaf-maafan di Hari Raya

**Asking for forgiveness on the Day of Eid**

**In this lesson you will learn about:**

- Plural verbs
- Equivalents of the English 'When'
- Adverbs
- More on the functions of **se-**
- The uses of **pun, saja** and **kan**

### Bermaaf-maafan di Hari Raya

*David Smith has heard a little about Hari Raya Aidil Fitri, which is the day that marks the end of Ramadan, the month of fasting for all Muslims. He is keen to know more and asks his friend Ani about it*

DAVID: Malam ini riuh rendah sekali. Tadi terdengar bunyi meriam. Apakah itu tanda esok Hari Raya?

ANI: Ya, semua orang Islam **tertunggu-tunggu** bunyi meriam itu, kerana itu menandakan mereka sudah nampak anak bulan malam ini.

DAVID: Apakah maksudnya?

ANI: Kemunculan anak bulan bermakna tahun baru bagi umat Islam. Ramai orang bukan Islam yang tak mengerti, **tertanya-tanya** mengapa anak bulan begitu penting sekali.

DAVID: Semasa bunyi tembakan meriam tadi, saya nampak anak-anak kecil **berlompat-lompat**.

ANI: Mereka **berlompat-lompat** kerana seronok hari Raya. Di waktu pagi, semua anak-anak **bersalam-salaman** dengan ibu bapa dan saudara mara mereka. Mereka sama-sama **bermaaf-maafan** sekiranya ada yang bercakap atau berbuat salah. Selepas pergi ke mesjid untuk sembahyang Hari

- Raya, mereka **kunjung-mengunjung** sahabat dan saudara mara. Kanak-kanak ini diberi duit pada Hari Raya.
- DAVID: Wah! Meriah sekali perayaan ini.
- ANI: Ya, kalau anda **berjalan-jalan** ke bandar malam ini anda akan nampak lampu warna warni **menyala-nyala** menyeriakan bandar.
- DAVID: Marilah kita keluar **bersuka-suka**!
- ANI: Tak boleh, sebab saya mesti **bersiap-siap** untuk esok. **Masak-memasak, sapu-menyapu, simpan-menyimpan** ... semua itu tugas saya.
- DAVID: Harus ada **tolong-menolong** antara jiran! Mereka tak datang menolong Ani?
- ANI: Mereka juga sibuk. Pergilah David tengok budak-budak **bermain-main** dengan mercun!
- DAVID: Mereka harus **berjaga-jaga**, nanti terbakar tangan!

### Vocabulary

<b>Hari Raya</b>	Eid Day (to celebrate end of Ramadan)	<b>lompat/ber_</b>	to jump
<b>riuh rendah</b>	noisy	<b>kelip/ber_</b>	to twinkle
<b>meriam</b>	cannon	<b>seri/meny_ kan</b>	to brighten
<b>anak bulan</b>	new moon, (lit) moon's child	<b>mercun</b>	fireworks
<b>umat</b>	followers of religion	<b>jaga/ber_</b>	to beware
<b>seronok</b>	to be happy, to enjoy	<b>Ramadan</b>	month in the Islamic calendar

### Asking for forgiveness on the Day of Eid

- DAVID: It's very noisy tonight. Just now I heard the sound of cannon being fired. Is that the sign that tomorrow is Hari Raya?
- ANI: Yes. All Muslims wait for the sound of the cannon because it shows they have sighted the new moon.
- DAVID: What does that mean?
- ANI: The appearance of the new moon means a new year for the followers of Islam. Lots of non-Muslims who do not understand ask why the new moon is so important.
- DAVID: During the firing of the cannon just now, I saw children jumping up and down.
- ANI: They were jumping up and down because they're happy that tomorrow is Hari Raya. In the morning, all the children shake their parents' and relatives' hands. They all forgive

and ask for forgiveness for anything that is wrongly said or done. After going to the mosque, for the Hari Raya prayer, they visit relatives and friends. The children are given money on Hari Raya.

- DAVID: Wow! Then it is a happy occasion!
- ANI: Yes, if you walk to the town tonight, you'll see colourful lights twinkling and brightening up the town.
- DAVID: Let's go and have fun!
- ANI: I can't, because I must get ready for tomorrow. All the cooking, sweeping, tidying up - these are all my job!
- DAVID: There must be help among neighbours! Don't they come and help you?
- ANI: They are busy too. Go and watch the children playing with fireworks!
- DAVID: They must be careful, their hands will get burnt!

### Language points

#### Plural verb forms

Malay verbs can be expressed in the plural form, the idea being to indicate that the actions occur many times, repeatedly and often continuously. Their forms vary, depending on what category the verbs belong to. As for the subject (doer), this is mostly in the plural, but can also be in the singular depending on the context.

#### Independent verbs

Simply double the verb. The subject can be in the singular or plural.

- Mereka duduk-duduk di tepi jalan sambil berbual.** They sat by the roadside and chatted.  
**Kami makan-makan di restoran itu.** We eat at the restaurant.

#### Verbs with ber, me and ter prefix

Double the base verb. The subject can be in the singular or plural.

- Mereka melaung-laung nama** They shouted my name from outside the house.  
**saya dari luar rumah.**  
**Mari kita bersuka-suka.** Let's have fun.

**Umat Islam** *tertunggu-tunggu* The followers of Islam *wait* for the  
**bunyi meriam yang menan-** firing of the cannon that marks  
**dakan anak bulan telah** the sighting of the new moon.  
**kelihatan.**

**Lampu itu menyala-nyala di langit.** The lamp *shines* in the sky.

**Mereka membuka-buka komik itu.** They turned the pages of the comic.

## *Reciprocal verbs with me*

**Saling** can also be used as an alternative. The subject is sometimes in the singular but connotatively it is plural.

**Pada Hari Raya, kami *maaf-memaafkan* satu sama lain. (saling memaafkan)** On Hari Raya, we *forgive* each other.

**Mereka suka tolong menolong** They like to *help* each other.  
sesama sendiri. (saling  
menolong)

**Kami suka masak-memasak di rumah. (saling memasak)** We like cooking at home.

### *Reciprocal verbs with the prefix ber*

As explained in Lesson 10, the words **makanan**, **minuman**, **pelukan** etc. are verbal nouns derived from base-verbs **makan**, **minum** and **peluk**. In Lesson 6 we also learned that when the prefix **ber-** is attached to a noun, it transforms it into an intransitive verb. The combination of these two rules brings about the following verb form. Note that the subject is always in the plural.

<b>peluk</b>	base-verb: 'to hug/brace'
<b>pelukan</b>	verbal noun: 'a hug/brace'
<b>berpeluk-pelukan</b>	'to hug each other'
<b>Dalam pertemuan itu mereka berpeluk-pelukan.</b>	During the meeting they <i>embraced each other.</i>

<b>salam</b>	base-verb: 'to shake hands'
<b>bersalam</b>	verbal noun: 'shaking hands'
<b>bersalam-salaman</b>	'shaking hands with each other'
<b>Semasa mahu pulang mereka bersalam-salaman.</b>	When they were going home, they shook hands with one another.

## ***Exercises***

## Exercise 1

Cover the column of sentences on the right with a piece of paper. Insert the first words on the left into the model sentence. Reveal the first sentence on the right and see whether your sentence is the same. Continue doing this with the remaining words on the left.

<b>kesukaan</b>	Mereka berteriak-teriak kerana kesukaan.
<b>ketakutan</b>	Mereka berteriak-teriak kerana ketakutan.
<b>minta tolong</b>	Mereka berteriak-teriak minta tolong.
<b>minta perhatian</b>	Mereka berteriak-teriak minta perhatian.
<b>minta duit</b>	Mereka berteriak-teriak minta duit.

**Model: Dia melihat-lihat saja, tidak beli.**

<b>cakap/belajar</b>	Dia bercakap-cakap saja, tidak belajar.
<b>rehat/tidur</b>	Dia berehat-rehat saja, tidak tidur.
<b>baca/tulis</b>	Dia membaca-baca saja tidak menulis.

## Exercise 2

Say the following in Malay, using the double verb.

- 1 Children are playing in the street, lighting fireworks.
  - 2 On the eve of Hari Raya, children jumped up and down.
  - 3 Muslims wait for the appearance of the new moon.
  - 4 They send each other cakes.
  - 5 They embrace each other and forgive each other.
  - 6 Children have lots of fun on Hari Raya.
  - 7 They visit friends and relatives who give them money.
  - 8 Mothers are usually busy cooking, and preparing for the happy occasion.

appearance kemunculan

## **Memohon jawatan**

*Ali is being interviewed for a job*

- i: Bila saudara lulus peperiksaan Sijil Tinggi Pelajaran?  
A: Saya lulus STP dalam tahun 1987.

- I: Bila keluar universiti?  
A: Saya keluar universiti tahun 1991.  
I: Semasa di universiti saudara belajar apa?  
A: Saya belajar dalam bidang ekonomi.  
I: Ketika itu saudara mendapat pinjaman atau biasiswa?  
A: Ketika itu saya mendapat biasiswa.  
I: Waktu belajar dulu, saudara pernah bekerja?  
A: Saya pernah bekerja waktu cuti universiti.  
I: Kalau saudara diterima, bila boleh anda mula bekerja?  
A: Saya boleh kerja bila-bila masa saja.

### Vocabulary

biasiswa scholarship

### Applying for a job

- I: When did you pass your Higher School Certificate?  
A: I passed the HSC in 1987.  
I: When did you leave university?  
A: I left university in 1991.  
I: During your time at university what did you study?  
A: I studied in the field of economics.  
I: During that time did you have a loan or a scholarship?  
A: During that time I had a scholarship.  
I: Whilst you were studying, did you ever work?  
A: I worked during university breaks.  
I: If you are accepted, when can you start work?  
A: I can start work any time.

### Language points

#### Using 'when'

**Bila**, **ketika**, **waktu**, **semasa**, **kalau** and **jika** all translate into one word in English, namely, 'when'.

**Bila** is used in questions relating to time:

- Bila anda lulus STP?** When did you pass your HSC?  
**Bila dia datang?** When did he come?

**Ketika**, **waktu** and **masa** are usually used to indicate two actions happening at the same time.

**Ketika dia membaca buku itu**, While he was reading the book, he dia tertidur. fell asleep.

**Masa dia tinggal di London**, When he was in London, he always dia selalu tulis surat kepada wrote to me. saya.

**Dia suruh semua orang diam** He asks everyone to keep quiet waktu dia sembahyang. when he is praying.

**Kalau** and **jika** are used in conditional sentences, hence they are very close to 'if' in English:

**Jika dia datang, suruh dia tunggu.** If he comes, ask him to wait.

**Kalau hujan jangan keluar.** If it rains, don't go out.

### Exercises

#### Exercise 3

Cover the sentences on the right with a piece of paper. Insert the first words on the left into the model sentence. Reveal the first sentence on the right and see whether your sentence is the same. Continue doing this with the remaining words on the left:

1 Model: **Bila saudara tiba di Kuala Lumpur?**

- |                     |  |
|---------------------|--|
| <b>Pak Aman</b>     | Bila Pak Aman tiba di Kuala Lumpur?      |
| <b>Pulau Pinang</b> | Bila Pak Aman tiba di Pulau Pinang?      |
| <b>berangkat ke</b> | Bila Pak Aman berangkat ke Pulau Pinang? |
| <b>Mak Som</b>      | Bila Mak Som berangkat ke Pulau Pinang?  |

2 Model: **Susan datang ketika saya membaca buku.**

- |                         |                                     |
|-------------------------|-------------------------------------|
| <b>pergi/mandi</b>      | Susan pergi ketika saya mandi.      |
| <b>makan/tidur</b>      | Susan makan ketika saya tidur.      |
| <b>belajar/bersenam</b> | Susan belajar ketika saya bersenam. |
| <b>waktu</b>            | Susan belajar waktu saya bersenam.  |
| <b>baring/berenang</b>  | Susan baring waktu saya berenang.   |

3 Model: **Kalau tidak tahu harap bertanya.**

- |                      |                                  |
|----------------------|----------------------------------|
| <b>suka/beritahu</b> | Kalau tidak suka harap beritahu. |
| <b>hujan/keluar</b>  | Kalau tidak hujan, kita keluar.  |
| <b>panas</b>         | Kalau tidak panas, kita keluar.  |
| <b>makan/lapar</b>   | Kalau tidak makan kita lapar.    |

jika	Jika tidak makan kita lapar.
lulus/menangis	Jika tidak lulus saya menangis.

### Exercise 4

Give the Malay equivalents of the following, using **bila**, **ketika**, **waktu**, **jika**, **kalau**, as appropriate:

- 1 When was this book written?
- 2 I was studying when he came in.
- 3 When are you going to see Mr Johnson?
- 4 When I wrote that letter, I was sad.
- 5 If you don't understand the question, don't hesitate to ask.
- 6 When is your holiday?
- 7 When you phoned, I was talking to my mother.
- 8 When I am praying do not make any noise.
- 9 If they don't come, cancel the plans.
- 10 If I am rich, I will give you money.

hesitate      **berlengah**      cancel      **batal**

### Susun elok-elok



Tahir has employed a new salesman, Tony, in his shoe shop. He is quite impressed with him

Tahir memerhatikan bahawa Tony datang ke kedai **awal-awal** lagi. Dia bertugas **diam-diam** tapi kerja masih juga berjalan. Tony susun **elok-elok** kasut-kasut untuk dijual itu. Apabila pelanggan masuk, dia tanya **dengan baik** jenis kasut yang hendak dibeli. Kemudian dia mencari kasut **cepat-cepat** supaya pelanggan tidak **tertunggu-tunggu**.

Apabila pelanggan membeli kasut, Tony membungkus **rapi-rapi** kasut itu. Dia bilang wang dengan cermat. Kalau pelanggan tidak tahu saiz kasut mereka, Tony ukur **tepat-tepat** kakinya, untuk mendapatkan kasut yang sesuai.

Tahir nampak bahawa Tony bekerja **betul-betul** dan berharap dia akan bekerja **lama-lama** dengannya.

### Vocabulary

<b>elok</b>	nice	<b>jenis</b>	type of
<b>kasut</b>	shoes	<b>ukur</b>	to measure

### Arranging things nicely

Tahir notices that Tony comes to the shop early. He works quietly but he gets his work done. Tony arranges the shoes nicely for selling. When a customer comes in, he asks nicely what sort of shoes he wants to buy. After that he finds the shoes quickly so that the customer is not kept waiting.

When a customer pays (money), Tony wraps up the shoes neatly. He counts the money with care. If the customers don't know their shoe size, Tony accurately measures their feet to get them suitable shoes.

Tahir notices that Tony works properly. Tahir hopes that Tony will work with him for a long time.

### Language points

#### Adverbs

Using adverbs in Malay is simple. There are various forms of adverbs, derived from adjectives, as indicated below. One form is often preferred to another, depending on the individual taste of the speaker. The adverb can be placed at the beginning, middle or end of the sentence. They can be made in three ways: (1) double adjective; (2) dengan + adjective; (3) secara + adjective. Examples:

#### Cantik

**Dia menyusun bunga itu cantik-cantik.**

**Dia menyusun bunga itu dengan cantik.**

#### Cepat

**Dengan cepat dia berlari ke depan.**

**Dia berjalan cepat-cepat menuju pejabat pos.**

#### Senyap

**Secara senyap dia keluar ikut pintu belakang.**

**Senyap-senyap dia keluar ikut pintu belakang.**

**Dia keluar dengan senyap ikut pintu belakang.**

Sometimes an intensifier is required to go with the adverbs, e.g. quite well, very carefully, etc. In Malay, **sangat** and **sekali** are used to mean 'very'. **Sangat** is placed before the adjective and **sekali** is placed after the adjective.

- Dia makan lambat sekali.** He eats *very slowly*.  
**Aman belajar rajin sekali.** Aman studies *very hard*.  
**Anna bangun sangat lambat.** Anna wakes up *very late*.

## Exercises

### Exercise 5

Cover the sentences on the right with a piece of paper. Insert the first words on the left into the model sentence. Reveal the first sentence on the right and see whether your sentence is the same. Continue doing this with the remaining words on the left.

1 Model: **Ruby menulis surat itu lambat-lambat.**

- |                         |  |
|-------------------------|--|
| <b>dengan lambatnya</b> | Ruby menulis surat itu dengan lambatnya. |
| <b>lambat sekali</b>    | Ruby menulis surat itu lambat sekali.    |
| <b>sangat lambat</b>    | Ruby menulis surat itu sangat lambat.    |
| <b>lambat-lambat</b>    | Lambat-lambat Ruby menulis surat itu.    |
| <b>mengutip</b>         | Lambat-lambat Ruby mengutip surat itu.   |
| <b>secara pantas</b>    | Secara pantas Ruby mengutip surat itu.   |
| <b>dengan pantas</b>    | Ruby mengutip surat itu dengan pantas.   |

2 Model: **Asiah mengira wang itu betul-betul.**

- |                      |  |
|----------------------|--|
| <b>cermat-cermat</b> | Asiah mengira wang itu cermat-cermat.    |
| <b>dengan cermat</b> | Asiah mengira wang itu dengan cermat.    |
| <b>cermat sekali</b> | Cermat sekali Asiah mengira wang itu.    |
| <b>dengan pantas</b> | Dengan pantas Asiah mengira wang itu.    |
| <b>bayar</b>         | Dengan pantas Asiah membayar wang itu.   |
| <b>hutang</b>        | Dengan pantas Asiah membayar hutang itu. |
| <b>pantas sekali</b> | Pantas sekali Asiah membayar hutang itu. |

### Exercise 6

Translate the following story into Malay. Take particular care with the use of the adverbs.

Mr Johnson is a very busy man. He is always anxious when he gets up in the morning. He quickly takes a shower and has a little breakfast. He goes to the office early because he doesn't want to be caught in the traffic jam.

At the office, he examines his letters. He reads them carefully and tells his secretary which ones need to be answered immediately. If there is a problem, he usually goes to the boss for advice.

Mr Johnson also meets clients for his company. He asks them to sit comfortably and always talks to them politely. He questions them carefully about their proposals and insists on reading every contract carefully. He pays his clients promptly and makes sure that they do their work efficiently and quickly.

anxious	<b>khuatir</b>	to insist	<b>berkeras</b>
caught in	<b>terperangkap dalam</b>	examine	<b>meneliti</b>
traffic jam	<b>kesesakan jalan raya</b>	promptly	<b>dengan cepat</b>
comfortable	<b>selesa</b>		

## Kita pun mesti pulang

*Hasnah has just received a phone call from her brother. Her mother is seriously ill. Hasnah, who lives with her younger sister, Rozi, decides to leave for their home town as soon as possible*

HASNAH: Rozi, abang telefon tadi. Mak sakit kuat. Abang pulang kelmarin. Kita **pun** mesti pulang juga.

ROZI: Mak sakit apa, kakak?

HASNAH: Abang tak tahu. Katanya, sudah berubat di hospital **pun** tak baik juga.

ROZI: Bila kita pulang?

HASNAH: Kalau kita mahu pulang sekarang **pun**, tidak ada kenderaan. Kita harus tunggu esok pagi. Kakak mesti telefon pejabat untuk memberitahu mereka kakak terpaksa pulang. Apa sekali **pun** kata mereka, kakak akan pulang juga.

ROZI: Rozi akan telefon sekolah untuk memberitahu Mak sakit kuat. Sekarang **pun** Rozi boleh telefon Encik Ismail di rumahnya.

HASNAH: Kita boleh naik kereta api, kita naik kapal terbang **pun** boleh. Apa pendapat Rozi?

ROZI: Mana-mana **pun** boleh. Tapi Rozi rasa kapal terbang lebih cepat.

## Vocabulary

<b>kenderaan</b>	transport
------------------	-----------

## We must go home as well

HASNAH: *Rozi, Brother phoned just now. Mother is seriously ill. Brother went back yesterday. We must go home as well.*

ROZI: *What is Mother's illness, Sister?*

HASNAH: *Brother doesn't know. He said, even after treatment at the hospital, she is still not well.*

ROZI: *When do we go home?*

HASNAH: *Even if we want to go home now, there's no transport. We must wait till tomorrow morning. I must phone the office to tell them that I have to go home. Whatever they say, I will still go home.*

ROZI: *Rozi will phone the school to tell them that Mother is very ill. Even now I can phone Encik Ismail at home.*

HASNAH: *We can take the train, we can also take the plane. What do you think, Rozi?*

ROZI: *Either is fine. But I think the plane is faster.*

## Language points

### Using the particle pun

The particle **pun** can be attached to almost any word or phrase one wishes to emphasize. It can mean: 'too', 'also', 'as well', 'even' and 'ever':

'too'/'also'/'as well':

**Abang pulang kelmarin. Kita pun mesti pulang.** Brother went home yesterday. We have to go home *as well*.  
**Baju saya cantik. Baju dia pun cantik.** My dress is beautiful. Her dress *too* is beautiful.

'even':

**Kalau kita mahu pulang sekarang pun, tidak ada kenderaan.** Even if we want to go home now, there's no transport.  
**Kalau dia datang pun, saya tidak mahu berjumpa dia.** Even if she comes, I don't want to see her.

'ever':

**Apa pun kata mereka kakak akan pulang juga.** Whatever they say, I will still go home.

**Ke mana pun awak pergi dia akan ikut awak.** Wherever you go, he will follow you.

## Exercises

### Exercise 7

Say the following in Malay, using the particle **pun**:

- 1 Whatever you ask for, I'll give you.
- 2 Wherever you go, I'll go with you.
- 3 Any time you need me, just phone me.
- 4 If you don't want to go, I too don't want to go.
- 5 Whoever took my money will not be able to sleep properly.
- 6 She can't even do that simple sum!
- 7 Even when the phone rings, she won't answer.
- 8 Whatever happens to me, you must not tell my mother.

## Ya, aku ingat dia

*Jasin and Munah were contemporaries at school. They are looking at an old school magazine and begin to reminisce about old friends and old times*

JASIN: Eh, kau ingat orang ini tak?  
MUNAH: Manalah aku ingat?  
JASIN: Kan kau **sekelas** dengan dia! Dia ada **seorang** adik **sedarjah** dengan aku.  
MUNAH: Mari aku tengok lebih dekat lagi. Oh, ya! Aku ingat dia ...  
JASIN: Dia **kan** yang jadi pelajar terbaik di sekolah kita?  
MUNAH: Di mana agaknya dia sekarang?  
JASIN: Aku selalu nampak seorang guru baru di sekolah anak aku. Rupa dia macam rupa perempuan ini.  
MUNAH: Mungkin dia tak? Dia **secantik** dulu juga?  
JASIN: Dulu dia muda, sekarang sudah tua sedikit.  
MUNAH: Setengah orang lagi tua **kan**, lebih cantik?

- JASIN: Aku nampak dia ada dua orang anak dan memandu **sebuah** kereta mahal. Setiap kali aku jumpa dia, macam ada **sesuatu** yang dia nak cakap dengan aku.
- MUNAH: Mungkin dia ingat kau. Kan kau terkenal di sekolah dulu?
- JASIN: Mungkin satu hari aku tegur dia!

### Vocabulary

**tegur** to speak

### Yes, I remember her

- JASIN: Hey, do you remember this person or not?
- MUNAH: What year is that? How can I remember!
- JASIN: Weren't you in the same class as her! She had a younger brother in the same class as me.
- MUNAH: Let me look closer. Oh, yes! I remember her.
- JASIN: Wasn't she the best student at our school?
- MUNAH: I wonder where she is now?
- JASIN: I always see a new teacher at my child's school. She looks like this person.
- MUNAH: Perhaps it's her. Is she as beautiful as before?
- JASIN: Before she was young, now she is a little bit older.
- MUNAH: For some people, the older, the more beautiful, right?
- JASIN: I see that she has two children and drives an expensive car. Every time I see her, it's as if there's something she wants to say to me.
- MUNAH: Maybe she remembers you. Weren't you very popular in school before?
- JASIN: Maybe one day, I'll speak to her.

### Language points

#### The prefix se-

We have already come across a number of uses of **se**. Let's summarize these and look at a couple of new ones. Basically **se** means 'one'.

**Se- + noun = to share**

**Dia sekelas dengan saya.**  
**Adik dia sepejabat dengan bapa saya.**

She's in the *same class* as me.  
His younger sister is in the *same office* as my father.

Seorang, seekor, sebuah, etc.

As we saw in Lesson 4, these are equivalent to 'a' or 'an' in English. They are used with concrete objects. (For abstract objects use **suatu**.)

<b>seorang anak perempuan</b>	<i>a daughter</i>
<b>sebuah kereta</b>	<i>a car</i>
<b>seekor anjing</b>	<i>a dog</i>

**Se- + time (hour, day, week, etc.)**

**Sudah setahun saya bekerja di situ.** I've already worked here for *a year*.  
**Saya tunggu dia selama sejam.** I waited for her for *an hour*.

**Se- + adjective**

See Lesson 13.

**Dia secantik dulu lagi.** She is *as beautiful* as before.

**Se- + number**

See Lesson 6.

<b>sepuluh</b>	<i>ten</i>
<b>seratus</b>	<i>a hundred, etc.</i>

A further use of **se-** to note:

<b>seseorang</b>	<i>somebody (not to be confused with seorang)</i>
<b>sesuatu</b>	<i>something (not to be confused with suatu)</i>
<b>seketika</b>	<i>a while (not to be confused with ketika)</i>

## kan short for bukan

**Kan** is short for **bukan**, a question tag used when the speaker makes a statement which in his or her view is obvious or factually true and hence assumes that the person spoken to will agree. It is broadly equivalent to ‘isn’t it’, ‘aren’t you’, ‘right?’, etc. **Kan** is widely used in Malay. It can be placed in front or at the end of the sentence.

**Kan dia sekelas dengan kau?** Wasn’t she in the same class as you?  
**Dia pelajar terbaik dalam sekolah kita dulu, kan?** She’s the best student in our class, right?

## Exercises

### Exercise 8

Fill in the blanks with appropriate **se** words, from **sebuah, seorang, setahun, seratus, sekejap, sepejabat, seekor, sepandai, sesuatu, setahun, sebulan**:

- 1 Sepuluh kali sepuluh jadi \_\_\_\_\_
- 2 Dia membeli \_\_\_\_\_ kereta buruk.
- 3 Dia mandi tiga kali \_\_\_\_\_
- 4 Dia berhenti \_\_\_\_\_ untuk berehat.
- 5 Dalam \_\_\_\_\_ ada 365 hari. Dalam \_\_\_\_\_ -ada 30 hari.
- 6 Ada \_\_\_\_\_ yang saya harus ceritakan kepada anda.
- 7 Atau \_\_\_\_\_ dengan anak saya. Mereka bekerja sebagai kerani.
- 8 Dia memang \_\_\_\_\_ ibu yang baik.
- 9 Tadi saya lihat \_\_\_\_\_ kucing memanjat tembok itu.
- 10 Budak itu tidak \_\_\_\_\_ anak saya.

**panjat/me-** to climb

## Suruh mereka pulang saja

Ali is going on leave for a month and is briefing his clerk what to do in his absence

ALI: Buat saja apa yang patut semasa saya tiada.  
 AMAT: Tapi saya seorang saja yang kerja di sini. Mungkin saya tak dapat buat semuanya.

ALI: Tak apa. Buat apa yang penting-penting saja. Yang lain tinggal sampai saya balik.

AMAT: Kalau orang datang minta hutang, apa harus saya buat?  
 ALI: Suruh mereka pulang saja. Beritahu mereka saya tak ada.

## Just ask them to go back

ALI: *Do anything that is possible while I am not here.*

AMAT: *But I’m the only one working here. Maybe I can’t do everything.*

ALI: *Never mind. Do only the important things. Leave the rest until I get back.*

AMAT: *If someone comes and ask for payment of debts, what should I do?*

ALI: *Just ask them to call back. Tell them I’m not around.*

## Language point

### Using saja

**Saja** does not have full vocabulary status. Being a word that adds flavour, it is never used on its own and is found only in fixed phrases. From the example above, it carries three meanings: ‘only’, ‘any’ and ‘just’ and sometimes it has no meaning at all. It can also have a plural connotation.

**Buat apa yang penting saja.** Just do whatever is important.

**Tentu saja!** Of course! Certainly! (Here, **saja** has no meaning)

**Dia baru saja pulang.** He just went home.

**Ke mana saja dia pergi, dia akan belikan saya cenderamata.** Wherever he goes, he buys me souvenirs.

**Suruh mereka pulang saja.** Just ask them to go home.

**Dia beli satu saja. Tak cukup!** He bought only one. It’s not enough!

## Exercises

### Exercise 9

Say the following in Malay using **saja**:

- 1 I need to eat just one a day.
- 2 Don't just sit there. Do something.
- 3 She is just a small girl. Let her play.
- 4 She cooks for five people only. You can't invite any more!
- 5 Whatever you wish, let me know.
- 6 Just do what I tell you to.
- 7 She just arrived with her new friend.
- 8 I just asked for one drink. It hasn't arrived.
- 9 He can do anything, from cooking to dancing.
- 10 Don't just stand there! Help her!

## Concluding message

Lesson 16 completes the course component of *Colloquial Malay*. You should now be able to communicate in basic situations. However, to consolidate your achievement, you are strongly advised to get as much practice as you can in reading and speaking. As always, the best way to improve your language skills is through contact with native speakers of the language. Remember that what you have learned in *Colloquial Malay* is the most often heard form of the language. You will discover that there are quite a few dialects, so you'll need to keep your ears peeled to understand what's going on. Good luck!

# Grammar summary

## Accidental actions

These are expressed by means of **ter**:

<b>tergigit</b>	accidentally bitten
<b>Lidahnya tergigit.</b>	He (accidentally) bit his tongue.
<b>terpijak</b>	to step accidentally
<b>Kakinya terpijak kaca.</b>	He (accidentally) stepped on glass.

See Lesson 15.

## Active voice

Where the subject of the sentence is the person or the thing doing the action or responsible for the action. It is usually marked by the application of the prefix **me** to a transitive verb:

<b>Dia menghantar surat kepada saya.</b>	He sent me a letter.
<b>Saya membaca surat khabar setiap hari.</b>	I read the newspaper every day.

See Lesson 8.

## Ada

**Ada** has two meanings: (1) 'there is/are'; (2) 'to have/own':

<b>Ada sebuah buku di atas meja.</b>	There is a book on the table.
<b>Pak Ali ada isteri dan anak.</b>	Pak Ali has a wife and a child.

**Ada** meaning 'to have', 'to own' has a synonym, **punya/mempunyai**. They can be used interchangeably. See Lesson 3.

Adalah ('is/are', 'am (to be)')

**Adalah** is used only when the speaker needs to define something:

<b>Guru adalah orang yang patut dihormati.</b>	A teacher is someone who should be respected.
<b>Anak saya adalah kebahagian saya.</b>	My child is my happiness.

See Lesson 4.

## Adjectives

An adjective denotes quality:

<b>rumah besar</b>	big house
<b>kereta buruk</b>	old car

See Lesson 1.

## Adverbs

Adverbs denote how someone does something or how something is done:

<b>Dia keluar perlahan-lahan.</b>	He leaves quietly.
<b>Dia gelak kuat-kuat.</b>	She laughs loudly.

In Malay the adverbs are expressed by doubling the adjectives. The adjectives can also be used with **dengan** and **secara**:

<b>Dia menjerit dengan kuat.</b>	She screamed loudly.
<b>Secara senyap-senyap dia keluar.</b>	She leaves quietly.

See Lesson 16.

## Affixation

The application of affixes such as **me**, **ber**, **i**, **an** and **kan** to a root word:

<b>me + pukul</b> becomes <b>memukul</b>	to strike
<b>main + an</b> becomes <b>mainan</b>	a toy

Affixation is one of the principal characteristics of the Malay language.

See Lessons 6, 8, 9, 13, 14, 15.

## -an

Attached to a transitive verb, this suffix forms a noun indicated by the verb:

<b>makan</b> ('to eat') + <b>an</b> becomes <b>makanan</b> ('food')
<b>minum</b> + <b>an</b> becomes <b>minuman</b> ('drink')

See Lesson 10.

## apa

**Apa** is a question word that means 'what'. It can be used at the beginning of a sentence as well as at the end:

<b>Apa dia mahu?</b>	What does he want?
<b>Dia mahu apa?</b>	(lit.) He wants what?

See Lesson 5.

## apakah

**Apakah** is the same as **apa** above, serving as a question word. The suffix **kah** adds to the strength of the question. See Lesson 2.

## Assimilation

The modification of a sound due to its joining with another sound. In the example in the last entry, the root **pukul** changes to **mukul** because it bumps into the prefix **me**. See table on page 106, and Lesson 8.

## Auxiliary verbs

Auxiliary or help verbs are similar to their counterparts in English:

<b>boleh</b>	can/may
<b>mesti</b>	must/have to

When asking questions, inversion should be applied and at the same time **kah** added.

**Maukah dia beli untuk saya?** Will she buy it for me?

See Lesson 5.

## bagaimana

**Bagaimana** translates as ‘how’ when one is asking about something or somebody.

**Bagaimana dia?** How is she?

See Lesson 1.

## banyak

**Banyak** is equivalent to the English ‘plenty’, ‘much’, and ‘lot(s)’. It can be used for countable as well as uncountable nouns:

<b>banyak ikan</b>	many fish
<b>banyak garam</b>	plenty of salt

The same applies to its opposite, i.e. **sedikit/sikit** meaning ‘a few’, ‘a little’. See Lesson 3.

## Base-verbs

Base-verbs are verbal roots, the meanings of which may not be clear until completed by an affix (see above). The verbal root **ajar**, for example, has an ambiguous meaning. But when the base is joined with the prefix **ber** (**belajar** – ‘to study’), with **me** (**mengajar** – ‘to teach’), with **pe** (**pengajar** – ‘a teacher’), etc. then the meaning becomes clear. Base verbs are asterisked (\*) in the Glossary at the back of the book.

## Beneficent verbs

This type of verb is marked by a **kan** ending. Originally it comes from a transitive verb:

<b>membeli</b>	to buy
<b>membuat</b>	to make
<b>mencari</b>	to find

Preceded by the suffix **kan** they become **membelikan**, **membuatkan**, **mencarikan**, which mean ‘to buy something’, ‘to make something’, ‘to find something for somebody’, respectively. In each case someone ‘benefits’ from the action. See Lesson 9.

## ber (prefix)

The prefix **ber** can be attached to base verbs to produce intransitive verbs, e.g. **berjalan** (‘to walk’), **berkumpul** (‘to assemble’), **bermain** (‘to play’). **Ber** can also be applied to a noun to carry the meaning of ‘to own/to have’ or ‘to wear’:

<b>berkereta</b>	to have a car
<b>berbaju merah</b>	to wear a red dress.

See Lesson 6.

A further application is to make nouns into intransitive verbs. From **demonstrasi** (n) comes **berdemonstrasi** meaning ‘to demonstrate’ (vi.); from **usaha** (n) comes **berusaha** (‘to work hard’). It can be assumed that a verb that has **ber** in it is generally intransitive. See Lesson 6.

## bukan

**Bukan** is equivalent to the English ‘no/not’, but should be followed by a noun, not a verb or an adjective:

<b>Dia bukan penyanyi.</b>	He is not a singer.
<b>Saya bukan anak Pak Ali.</b>	I am not Pak Ali’s child.

See Lesson 2.

## Causative verbs

New verbs can be created by applying **me\_kan** to adjectives:

<b>menakutkan</b>	to make someone scared
-------------------	------------------------

Causative verbs can also be derived from intransitive verbs:

<b>turun</b>	to bring down
<b>menurunkan</b>	to bring down something/someone
<b>Dia menurunkan bendera itu.</b>	He lowered the flag.

See Lesson 9.

## Classifiers

There are a number of classifiers (i.e. ‘a’ and ‘an’) in Malay depending on the nature of the noun, that is, whether it is human, animal or inanimate:

For humans **orang** is used:

<b>seorang lelaki</b>	a man
<b>seorang anak perempuan</b>	a girl

For animals **ekor** is used:

<b>seekor tikus</b>	a mouse
<b>seekor biri-biri</b>	a lamb

For inanimate objects **buah**, **helai**, **batang**, etc. are used depending on the shape of the object:

<b>sebuah radio</b>	a radio
<b>sehelai kertas</b>	a sheet of paper
<b>sebatang rokok</b>	a cigarette

See Lesson 4.

## Commands

Giving commands or orders involves actions: they should be brief. Further commands can be harsh or polite depending on the mood of the person giving the command. A short verb form that fits the meaning of the message must be found:

<b>Pergi jauh dari sini!</b>	(lit.) Go far away from here!
<b>Lepaskan dia!</b>	Let her go!

To change harsh into soft commands, one can either (1) say them with persuasive inflection, or (2) add to them one of the following polite words, whichever is appropriate: **silakan**, **tolong**, **lah**. See Lesson 12.

## Compound nouns

In Malay the main noun comes first and is then followed by the qualifier. This is the opposite to English where the qualifiers come first, followed by the main noun:

when qualifiers are nouns (compound nouns):

<b>pegawai bank</b>	bank officer
<b>pejabat pos</b>	post office

when the qualifiers are adjectives (note that **yang** can be inserted when the mood is comparative):

<b>buku merah</b>	a red book
<b>budak pandai</b>	a clever child
<b>meja yang besar</b>	a big table ( <i>lit.</i> a table that is big [as opposed to one that is small])

when the qualifiers are verbs:

<b>rumah makan</b>	(an) eating house/restaurant
<b>bilik tidur</b>	a sleeping room/bedroom

If **yang** is inserted it serves as a relative pronoun:

<b>orang (yang) pakai baju merah</b>	the person who wears the red dress
<b>kereta yang saya beli</b>	the car that I bought

See Lesson 3.

## dari, di, ke

These three short words are the main prepositions that relate to place. They translate roughly as:

<b>di</b>	on, in, at
<b>dari</b>	from
<b>ke</b>	to

Each can be combined with the words of location:

<b>di dalam</b>	inside
<b>ke dalam</b>	into
<b>dari dalam</b>	from inside

See Lesson 4.

## Imperatives, see Commands

## Independent verbs

There are around fifty-seven base-verbs that can be used in sentences without requiring any affixation. The meanings of these verbs are already fixed. Most of them are intransitive. Being straightforward, they are especially useful for beginners. Some linguists call them 'easy verbs' or 'no-prefix verbs'. A list is provided in the book. See Lesson 4.

## Informal pronouns

Emotion and feeling play an important role in choosing the appropriate personal pronouns. When conversants know each other well, **aku** ('I') and **kamu** ('you') are normally used. On the other hand **saya** and **anda/saudara** are the proper pronouns to use for conversants who know each other less well. **Saya**, however, is acceptable for all occasions, informal and formal. Here are the informal pronouns:

<b>aku</b> ('I'), <b>kamu</b> ('you')	subject
<b>ku</b> ('my'), <b>mu</b> ('your')	possessive
<b>rumahku</b>	my house
<b>seluarmu</b>	your trousers
<b>kepadaku</b>	to me
<b>dariku</b>	from me

Like **saya**, **mereka** ('they') and **kami/kita** are not affected by any social setting. They are free to be used in all situations, but bear in mind that although both **kami** and **kita** mean 'us' or 'our' in Malay, the former excludes the listener, whilst the latter includes the listener:

- Jangan ambil tempat kami.** Do not take our place.  
**Hormatilah bendera kita.** Respect our flag.

See Lesson 3.

## Intransitive verbs

This is the group of verbs that do not take objects. In Malay, these verbs normally have the prefix **ber**, although a few have the prefix **me**:

<b>berdiri</b>	to stand
<b>berlari</b>	to run
<b>mendarat</b>	to land
<b>meluncur</b>	to glide

In English there is no difference in form between intransitive and transitive verbs. For example, 'to run' in 'She's running to the post office' is intransitive, but 'She's running the shop by herself' is transitive. The Malay equivalent for the former is **berlari**, for the latter **menjalankan**. See the whole of Lesson 6.

## kah

This particle is used in 'yes-no' questions for emphasis:

- Tahukah dia nama saya?** Does he know my name?  
**Malaskah dia?** Is he lazy?

See also Lesson 5.

## kalau/jika

**Kalau** is equivalent to the English 'if/when' in a conditional sentence:

- Kalau tidak suka, jangan dibeli.** If you don't like it, don't buy it.  
**Saya akan ke rumahmu kalau tidak hujan malam ini.** I'll come to your house if it doesn't rain tonight.

See also Lesson 16.

## kepada

**Kepada** conveys the meaning of 'to (somebody)':

- Saya kirim surat kepada ibu saya.** I sent a letter to my mother.  
**Dia baik kepada semua orang.** He is kind to everybody.  
**Beg ini diberikan kepada siapa?** (lit.) To whom is this bag given?

See Lesson 4.

## Ke\_an

**Ke\_an** applied to an adjective produces an abstract noun:

<b>besar</b>	('big')	<b>kebesaran</b>	('pomp')
<b>sihat</b>	('healthy')	<b>kesihatan</b>	('health')
<b>baik</b>	('kind')	<b>kebaikan</b>	('kindness')

**Ke\_an** applied to a base-verb can produce words which indicate ability:

<b>mendengar</b>	('to hear')	<b>kedengaran</b>	('audible')
<b>melihat</b>	('to see')	<b>kelihatian</b>	('visible')

See Lesson 10.

## ketika

**Ketika** is equivalent to the English ‘when’. It is used when there are two actions taking place:

**Saya sedang duduk di luar rumah ketika pelanggaran itu berlaku.** I was sitting outside the house when the collision happened.

**Ketika saya sedang makan, telefon berbunyi.** When I was eating, the phone rang.

A synonym for **ketika** is **waktu**. See Lesson 17.

## lah

When used in the imperative, **lah** belongs to the group of polite words used to soften the order: **duduklah**, **makanlah**, **tengoklah**, etc. **Lah** is also used to emphasize a word in a sentence which the speaker considers to be important:

**Dialah yang membayar duit itu.** He is the one who paid the money.

See Lesson 2.

## lebih

This is used in making comparisons. It need only be placed in front of the adjective concerned, regardless of the number of syllables in the adjective.

**Singapura lebih besar daripada Pulau Pinang.** Singapore is bigger than Penang.

See Lesson 13.

## Locative verbs

This term refers to verbs with the suffix *i*. They are transitive and are derived mostly from verbs (intransitive) with a preposition. They are locative because they have the characteristic of locating or finding the object.

### intransitive

**duduk di** (vi) ('to sit on')  
**Dia duduk di atas kerusi.**  
**Jepun menduduki Malaya selepas perang.**

### locative

**Menduduki** (vt) ('to occupy')  
He sits on the chair.  
Japan occupied Malaya after the war.

## me (prefix)

The significance of the prefix **me** is that the whole word that includes it becomes a verb, and the subject of the sentence in which the word occurs does the action as indicated by the verb. Hence the sentence is in the active voice. The root to which the **me** is added can be a verb, a noun or an adjective. The resulting **me**-verbs can be either intransitive or transitive.

root	whole word (verb) in active voice	
(v) tulis	<b>Dia menulis surat.</b>	He wrote a letter.
(n) darat	<b>Pesawat sudah mendarat.</b>	The plane has landed.
(a) hijau	<b>Rumput di padang itu menghijau.</b>	The grass is greening in the field.

## me\_kan

Generally **kan** is a transitive verb maker. It is normally combined with **me** for the active voice or **di** for the passive voice. It has several functions:

To create new transitive verbs in addition to the existing ones. The new meanings differ but still bear some relation to the old ones.

transitive verb	another transitive verb
<b>mendengar</b> ('to hear')	<b>mendengarkan</b> ('to let it be heard')
<b>menyewa</b> ('to rent')	<b>menyewakan</b> ('to let')
<b>meminjam</b> ('to borrow')	<b>meminjamkan</b> ('to lend')

To create new transitive verbs in addition to the existing ones. The new meaning implied is 'for the benefit of'. See Beneficent verbs, above.

Applied to adjectives and independent verbs, this forms new transitive verbs. The new meaning implied is to cause or to make the object do the action as indicated by the root. See Causative verbs, above.

See Lessons 8 and 9.

## memper\_kan

This is an extension of the causative verb type. The difference is that the root has the prefix **ber**:

<b>bermain</b>	becomes <b>mempermainskan</b>
<b>bersatu</b>	becomes <b>mempersatukan</b>

The causative quality is still there. See Lesson 9.

## Nouns

There are several kinds:

Ordinary nouns – names of things as listed alphabetically in the dictionary, e.g. **buku** ('book'), **meja** ('table'), etc.

Nouns developed from independent verbs with the help of the suffix **-an**. See **-an**, above.

Nouns, mostly abstract, developed from the prefix **ber** with the help of the suffix **an**. The **b** in **ber** converts to a **p**:

**bermain** ('to play')

**bertemu** ('to meet')

**berlari** ('to run')

**permainan** ('game')

**pertemuan** ('meeting')

**perlarian** ('fugitive')

Nouns developed from the prefix **me** with the help of the suffix **-an**.

**memberi** ('to give')

**meminta** ('to request')

**melihat** ('to see')

**pemberian** ('a gift')

**permintaan** ('a request')

**penglihatan** ('sight')

Abstract nouns, developed by applying **ke\_an** to a number of adjectives. See **ke\_an** above.

See the whole of Lesson 9.

## Numbers

See Lesson 3.

## nya

For the various uses of **nya** see Lesson 5.

## paling

**Paling** is used for expressing superlatives, whether with adjectives or adverbs. It is equivalent to 'most' or '-est' in English:

**Siapa yang paling berani?** Who is the bravest?

**Dia paling tinggi dalam darjahnya.** He is the tallest in his class.

See Lesson 13.

## Passive voice

Transformation from an active sentence to a passive sentence depends on the performers of the action. These are divided into two groups: first and second persons (**saya/aku/kami/kita** and **anda/saudara/kamu/engkau**) on the one hand, and third person singular or plural (**dia/mereka**) on the other:

Agent – first and second person:

**Saya/Aku menulis surat itu.** (A) **Surat itu saya/aku tulis.** (P)

I wrote the letter. (*lit.*) That letter was written by me.

**Anda/Kamu membaca surat ini.** (A) **Surat ini anda/kamu baca.** (P)

You read this letter. (*lit.*) This letter was read by you.

Note the 'infinitive' form of the verb in the passive.

Agent – third person:

**Ali menaiki basikal.** (A) **Basikal dinaiki (oleh) Ali.** (P)

Ali rode a bicycle. (*lit.*) The bicycle was ridden by Ali.

**Ayah memasukkan kereta ke garaj.** (A) **Kereta dimasukkan ke garaj oleh Ayah.**

The agent, if not required, can be dropped:

**Kereta sudah dimasukkan ke garaj.** The car has been put in the garage.

## pe-

**Pe\_an, pem\_an, per\_an:** see Nouns, above

## Plural of actions

Actions can be pluralized very simply. Note the different verb forms used:

**Kami melihat-lihat saja.** We're just looking.

**Mereka lama bercakap-cakap.** They chatted a long time.

See Lesson 16.

## Plural of nouns

For concrete objects the form is very simple. Just say it twice:

<b>kedai-kedai</b>	shops
<b>budak-budak</b>	boys/girls
<b>perusahaan-perusahaan</b>	industries

When a number or a word of quantity is used, the noun remains in the singular:

<b>Banyak orang di pesta itu.</b>	Many people were at the festival.
<b>Dia ada lima anak.</b>	She/he has five children.

See Lesson 3.

## Polite Words

Some words are often used to soften an order/request. They are **silakan** ('if you please'), **tolong** ('to help') and the particle **lah**, all of which translate into one word in English: please!

<b>Tolong belikan saya roti.</b>	Please buy me some bread.
<b>Tidurlah di bilik besar!</b>	Sleep in the big room, please!

See Lesson 12.

## Prepositions

See Lesson 4 under 'Adjuncts of place and time'.

## Pronouns

Personal pronouns: **saya, aku, anda, saudara, kamu, dia, mereka, kami, kita**.

Possessive Pronouns: the same as above, e.g. **kawan saya** ('my friend'), **kereta mereka** ('their car'); in short form, e.g. **bukuku, rumahmu** (only for informal personal pronouns).

Relative pronouns: **yang** is used for all pronouns: humans, animals and inanimate objects:

<b>Orang yang duduk di sana itu.</b>	the person who's sitting there
<b>Kucing yang ekornya panjang itu.</b>	the cat with the long tail
<b>seluar yang saya beli kelmarin.</b>	the trousers which I bought yesterday

## pun

See Lesson 16.

## Qualifiers

See Compound nouns, above

## Questions (yes-no)

This is a type of question the answer to which is either 'yes' or 'no'. You can ask the question in two ways:

(1) Raise the intonation at the end of the sentence:

<b>Dia suka makan rambutan?</b>	She likes to eat rambutan?
<b>Anda boleh makan kari pedas?</b>	You can eat hot curry?

(2) Reverse the order – put the predicate in front of the subject:

<b>Suka dia makan rambutan?</b>	Does she like to eat rambutan?
<b>Boleh anda makan kari pedas?</b>	Can you eat hot curry?

For both you can put the suffix **kah**. In (1) i.e. after a statement, the **kah** can be put at the end of the sentence.

**Dia suka makan rambutankah?** Does she like to eat rambutan?

However, if **kah** is put after the subject (**dia**), the meaning totally changes:

**Diakah suka makan rambutan?** Is she the one who likes to eat rambutan?

For (2), when you put the predicate to the front, attach **kah** to it:

**Sukakah dia makan rambutan?**  
**Bolehkah anda makan kari pedas?**

See Lessons 2 and 5.

## Question ('what', 'who', 'where', 'how', 'why')

To form questions of this type use the question words **apa** ('what'), **siapa** ('who') **di mana** ('where') **bagaimana** ('how') and **mengapa** ('why').

To make a question, insert the corresponding question word into

the statement question. The question word takes over the place of the word in question.

- S **Mary pergi ke panggung wayang.** Mary is going to the cinema.  
 Q **Siapa pergi ke panggung wayang?** Who is going to the cinema?  
 Q **Mary pergi ke mana?** Where did Mary go?  
 S **Dia makan nasi dengan tangan.** She eats rice with her fingers.  
 Q **Dia makan apa dengan tangan?** She eats what with her fingers?  
 Q **Dia makan nasi bagaimana? or Bagaimana dia makan nasi?** How did she eat the rice?

The rule, however, does not apply to **mengapa** ('why'). As in English, it is always placed at the front of the sentence:

- Mengapa Mary pergi ke pang-gung wayang?** Why did Mary go to the cinema?

See Lesson 5.

## Question tag

**Bukan/kan** and **tidak/tak** serve as question tags in Malay, when placed either in the middle or at the end of the sentence. With **bukan/kan** the speaker does not usually need confirmation of his question or statement. But with **tidak/tak** he or she does:

- Dia sakit, bukan/kan?** He is ill, no?  
**Dia kan sakit?** He is ill, isn't he?  
**Dia makan tidak/tak?** He eats (or doesn't he?).

See Lesson 16.

## Reciprocal actions

See Lesson 16.

## sangat/sekali

**Sangat** and **sekali** are used to intensify the meaning of an adjective or an adverb. **Sekali** is placed after the adjective/adverb, whereas **sangat** is placed in front of them:

- Rumah itu besar sekali.** The house is very big.  
**Rumah itu sangat besar.** The house is very big.

See Lesson 16.

## Semi-transitive verbs

Semi-transitive verbs are verbs that seemingly take objects such as:

- Dia bermain piano.** He plays the piano.  
**Dia suka nasi goreng.** He likes fried rice.

However, unlike true transitive verbs, they cannot be changed into the passive voice, without adding **di\_kan** or **di\_i** to them:

- Piano dimainkannya.** The piano was played by him.  
**Nasi goreng disukainya.** (lit.) Fried rice is liked by him.

This is not very common in colloquial Malay.

## tak

Short for **tidak**. See below.

## ter as a prefix

A **ter** prefix can be attached to verbs and nouns to mean different things:

**Ter + verb** to express something accidental.

- Dia terpijk cawan itu.** He (accidentally) stepped on to a cup.  
**Kakinya luka.** His foot is cut.

**Ter + verb** to express an involuntary action:

- Dia tergelak melihat kejadian itu.** He (involuntarily) laughed when he saw the incident.

**Ter + verb** to express a state of readiness as a result of an action:

- Bila saya masuk ke dapur, makanan sudah terhidang.** When I entered the kitchen, the food was already laid out.

**Ter + verb** to express ability. When preceded by **tak/tidak** it means inability:

- Termakan juga Hasnah kari yang begitu pedas.** Hasnah could, after all, eat that very hot curry.  
**Dia tak termakan semua makanan itu.** He couldn't eat all that food.

**Ter** + adjective to express, for example, the most, the smallest, the least, etc.:

**Dia pelajar terbaik di sekolah** He is the best pupil in the school.  
itu.

### tidak

When put in front of an adjective or a verb, **tidak** carries the meaning of 'no' or 'not':

**Saya tidak/tak makan.**

I did not eat.

**Mereka tidak rajin.**

They are not hardworking.

See **Bukan** for comparison. See Lesson 2.

### Transitive verbs

See Intransitive verbs, above.

### yang

**Yang** is equivalent to the English relative pronouns, 'who(m)', 'which' and 'that':

**Orang yang makan banyak**

(lit.) The person who is eating a lot is my elder sister.

**Kereta yang kau pinjam itu rosak.**

The car that you borrowed has broken down.

In phrases where a noun is combined with an adjective such as **buku merah** ('red book') and **budak rajin** ('hardworking child') etc., **yang** can be inserted between noun and adjective when the speaker is in a comparative mood. In this situation, he/she uses the adjective, which serves as a qualifier, to point out the object more specifically:

**buku yang merah** the book that is red (not any other colour)

**budak yang rajin** the boy who is hardworking (not the lazy one)

See also Compound nouns, above. See Lesson 3.

# Key to the exercises

### Lesson 1

#### Exercise 1

- 1 I am Jack Smith. I am an American.
- 2 My name is Ali. I am a student.
- 3 This is Samad. He is my friend.
- 4 That is Henry. He is a friend from the office.
- 5 This is Mr and Mrs Smith. They are English language teachers.
- 6 We are bank officers. Our names are John and Jane.
- 7 You are a student of the Malay language. I am also a student of the Malay language. We are students of the Malay language.

#### Exercise 2

- 1 Ini John Stanton, pengurus bank.
- 2 Ini Siti, setiausaha di bank.
- 3 Ini Mary Jones, guru bahasa Inggeris.
- 4 Ini Gopal, pengurus restoran.
- 5 Ini Tan, kerani di pejabat pos.
- 6 Ini John Smith dan isterinya Jane. Mereka guru bahasa Inggeris. Mereka orang Amerika.
- 7 Ini Anne Johnson, pelancong dari England.
- 8 Ini suami/isteri saya.
- 9 Ini Susan, anak perempuan John.

#### Exercise 3

- 1 Anda siapa/Siapa anda?
- 2 Itu siapa?/Itu guru siapa?
- 3 Dia siapa?/Dia setiausaha siapa?

- 4 Ini apa?/Ini meja apa?
- 5 Nama dia siapa?
- 6 Apa nama anda?
- 7 Itu apa?/Itu bilik apa?
- 8 Ini siapa?/Ini isteri siapa?
- 9 Siapa mereka?

#### *Exercise 4*

- 1 Maafkan saya, apa nama anda?
- 2 Nama saya Hassan. Saya suami Asiah.
- 3 Kami pelajar di sini.
- 4 Ini restoran Malaysia.
- 5 Isterinya doktor di klinik itu.
- 6 Siapa pengurus bank ini?
- 7 Selamat petang. Saya Wong, pengurus hotel ini.
- 8 Bill kerani pejabat pos dan Mary guru.
- 9 Selamat pagi. Saya kawan Susie.
- 10 Apa nama suami anda?

#### *Exercise 5*

- 1 Selamat datang.
- 2 Selamat tinggal.
- 3 Selamat jalan.
- 4 Selamat pagi.
- 5 Selamat makan.
- 6 Selamat berjaya.

#### *Exercise 6*

- 1 Maafkan saya, siapa nama pengurus bank anda?
- 2 Maaf, siapa nama isteri pengurus anda?
- 3 Maafkan saya, di mana dia tinggal.
- 4 Maafkan saya, dia dari mana?
- 5 Maaf, siapa setiausaha pengurus itu?

#### *Exercise 7*

- 1 Maaf, saya mesti pergi.
- 2 Maaf, saya tak tahu.
- 3 Maafkan saya. Saya terlambat.
- 4 Maaf, saya terlupa namanya.

## **Lesson 2**

#### *Exercise 1*

- 1 tidak/tak
- 2 bukan
- 3 tidak/tak
- 4 tidak/tak; bukan
- 5 Bukan; bukan
- 6 tidak/tak; tidak/tak
- 7 tidak/tak; tidak/tak
- 8 Tidak/tak.
- 9 tidak/tak

#### *Exercise 2*

- A: Di mana anda berkerja sebelum ini?  
 G: Sebelum ini saya bekerja sebagai kerani sekolah.  
 A: Anda kerani besar di sana?  
 G: Bukan. Saya bukan kerani besar.  
 A: Anda suka bekerja di sana?  
 G: Ya. Tapi saya mahu cuba bekerja di bank.  
 A: Anda merokok atau tidak? Anda marah atau tidak kalau orang lain merokok?  
 G: Saya tidak merokok tapi saya tak marah kalau orang lain merokok.

#### *Exercise 3*

- R: Siapa yang duduk dekat tingkap itu?  
 A: Dia Mary Ong.  
 R: Dia penulis kolumn untuk akhbar ini?  
 A: Ya.  
 R: Dia kakitangan akhbar ini atau wartawan bebas?  
 A: Dia bukan kakitangan. Dia wartawan bebas. Dia menulis sekali seminggu.  
 R: Siapa orang yang bekerja di komputer di hujung bilik itu?  
 A: Dia Azlan.  
 R: Dia Ketua Pengarangkah?  
 A: Bukan. Ketua Pengarang ialah Susan. Dia menghadiri mesyuarat.  
 R: Siapa wanita yang berjalan dengan kamera itu?  
 A: Dia Mary, juru gambar.

- R: Dia bekerja setiap harikah?  
 A: Tidak. Dia hanya bekerja tiga hari seminggu.  
 R: Siapa ambil gambar pada hari yang Mary tidak bekerja?  
 A: Maniam juru gambar seorang lagi di akhbar ini.

#### **Exercise 4**

- i: Silakan masuk dan sila duduk.  
 c: Terima kasih.  
 i: Siapa nama anda?  
 c: Nama saya Helen Tan.  
 i: Apa minat anda?  
 c: Saya mahu bekerja sebagai doktor.  
 i: Anda minat dalam bidang sains?  
 c: Ya.  
 i: Ibu bapa anda doktorkah?  
 c: Bukan. Mereka bukan doktor, mereka guru.  
 i: Anda mahu belajar di Amerika?  
 c: Tidak. Saya mahu belajar di England.  
 i: Anda akan bekerja apabila lulus peperiksaan?  
 c: Ya.

#### **Exercise 5**

- 1 Sila datang/datanglah ke majlis hari jadi saya.
- 2 Sila masuk/masuklah.
- 3 Silakan duduk/duduklah.
- 4 Silalah makan/makanlah.
- 5 Sila berdiri/berdirilah.

#### **Exercise 6**

- 1 Terima kasih. Saya akan datang ke majlis itu.
- 2 Ya, terima kasih.
- 3 Di mana? Sini atau sana?
- 4 Maaf, saya tak merokok dan saya tak minum.
- 5 Ya, terima kasih. Sedap.
- 6 Maafkan saya, boleh saya bercakap dengan anda?

#### **Exercise 7**

- 1 Susan pengurus bankkah?
- 2 Anwar pelajarkah?
- 3 Amran suami Hasnah?
- 4 Peter kerani pejabatkah?
- 5 Rumah Asmah besarkah?
- 6 Dia pergi ke sekolahkah pagi tadi?
- 7 Arifin datang ke pejabat hari ini?
- 8 Lily anak Richardkah?
- 9 Mereka suka makan rotikah?
- 10 Dia sakit semalam?

#### **Exercise 8**

- 1 Henry Tan pembekal buah segarkah?
- 2 Dia eksport tak buah-buahan dari luar negeri?
- 3 Roti segera Maniam terkenalkah?
- 4 Dia bekal tak untuk majlis-majlis?
- 5 Dia bekal kuah tak untuk roti itu?
- 6 Adakah Maniam pembekal yang boleh dipercayai?
- 7 Dia ada kakitangan yang besarkah?

#### **Exercise 9**

khabar, dari, Bila, kerja, Sila, Terima kasih

#### **Lesson 3**

#### **Exercise 1**

- 1 to have
- 2 there are
- 3 there are
- 4 to have
- 5 there are/to have
- 6 there are
- 7 to have
- 8 to have
- 9 to have
- 10 there is

**Exercise 2**

- 1 Sebagai pelajar Hassan ada/mempunyai banyak kawan.
- 2 Dia ada/mempunyai kerja sambilan.
- 3 Dia tidak ada/mempunyai abang atau kakak.
- 4 Dia juga tidak ada/mempunyai banyak wang.
- 5 Dia tidak ada/mempunyai baju mahal.
- 6 Dia ada/mempunyai bilik sendiri.
- 7 Dia hanya ada/mempunyai basikal buruk.

**Exercise 3**

- 1 Ada berapa orang dalam pejabat itu?
- 2 Berapa penduduk Malaysia?
- 3 Berapa umur anak lelaki anda?
- 4 Berapa saya pinjam dari anda?
- 5 Tidak berapa ramai orang datang ke majlis itu.
- 6 Berapa harga buku yang anda beli?
- 7 Berapa tahun anda tinggal di negara ini?
- 8 Apa nombor kereta yang anda nampak?
- 9 Ini tahun apa?
- 10 Apa nombor biliknya?

**Exercise 4**

empat, sembilan, sebelas, dua belas, lapan belas  
 dua puluh, dua puluh tiga, dua puluh lapan, dua puluh sembilan,  
 tiga puluh lima  
 lima puluh empat, enam puluh tujuh, tujuh puluh, tujuh puluh  
 tujuh, lapan puluh dua  
 lapan-puluh lapan, lapan puluh sembilan, sembilan puluh, sembilan  
 puluh enam, seratus  
 seratus sepuluh, seratus dua puluh tiga, seratus tiga puluh satu,  
 seratus lima puluh sembilan, dua ratus empat puluh dua  
 enam ratus lapan puluh dua, tujuh ratus lima puluh satu, lapan  
 ratus, sembilan ratus dua puluh, sembilan ratus sembilan puluh  
 sembilan  
 seribu satu; seribu sembilan ratus; dua ribu lima ratus tiga puluh  
 tiga; empat ribu lima puluh; lima ribu dua ratus sebelas; enam  
 ribu sembilan ratus dua puluh lapan  
 sepuluh ribu empat ratus; dua puluh enam ribu, sembilan ratus

tujuh puluh dua; empat puluh satu ribu, tiga ratus dua puluh  
 empat; sebelas juta, empat ratus dua puluh tiga ribu, dua ratus  
 dua belas; lima puluh satu juta, tiga ratus dua puluh satu ribu,  
 tiga ratus enam puluh lima

**Exercise 5**

- 1 Anak-anak ada di sekolah.
- 2 Ali ada tiga orang anak dan enam orang cucu.
- 3 Ada banyak gerai makanan di tepi jalan.
- 4 Dia minum banyak air tapi dia tidak minum kopi.
- 5 Rumah-rumah di kawasan saya mahal.
- 6 Ada banyak gula dalam teh saya.
- 7 Ada banyak surat khabar di atas meja.
- 8 Dia cuba tak makan terlalu banyak roti, tapi dia makan banyak  
 nasi.
- 9 Mereka ada ramai saudara mara di Seremban.
- 10 Ariffin ada banyak masalah di pejabat.

**Exercise 6**

- 1 tujuh anak
- 2 dua tahun
- 3 seratus km dari sini
- 4 dua tahun
- 5 sebelas tahun
- 6 seratus empat puluh tiga ribu, lima ratus empat ringgit
- 7 dua satu satu sembilan enam lapan tiga
- 8 tujuh pagi
- 9 lima hari
- 10 empat kali
- 11 dua jam
- 12 dua ribu lapan ratus empat puluh sembilan ringgit
- 13 tiga rumah

**Exercise 7**

- 1 Kereta saya yang merah tak ada dalam garaj.
- 2 Dia ada kalkulator yang kecil.
- 3 Kawannya yang baru datang kelmarin.
- 4 Johan pelajar yang baik. Semua guru suka dia.

- 5 John hilang begnya yang hitam.
- 6 Rose anak yang kedua dalam keluarga itu.
- 7 Wanita yang duduk di meja keempat dalam bilik ini ialah doktor.
- 8 Pegawai itu marah dengan kerani yang datang lambat.
- 9 Polis mencari pencuri yang curi beg itu.
- 10 Ibu membaca buku yang dia pinjam dari perpustakaan.
- 11 Mereka menonton cerita yang sedih.
- 12 Wanita yang sakit itu meninggal dunia pada hari Ahad.

#### **Exercise 8**

- 1 Puan Asiah ada tiga orang anak.
- 2 Anak pertamanya laki-laki. Namanya Ahmad.
- 3 Anak keduanya perempuan. Namanya Asma.
- 4 Tina ialah anak ketiga. Dia ialah anak perempuannya yang kedua.
- 5 Puan Asiah merayakan hari jadinya yang keempat puluh. Suaminya Ismail memberinya sebuah kereta. Ini keretanya yang kedua.
- 6 Mereka akan pergi bercuti ke luar negeri buat pertama kali dalam bulan Julai.

#### **Lesson 4**

##### **Exercise 1**

- |                      |                                       |
|----------------------|---------------------------------------|
| 1 dalam kereta       | 14 ke tengah                          |
| 2 di luar rumah      | 15 di tepi                            |
| 3 di dalam bilik     | 16 di atas meja                       |
| 4 di panggung wayang | 17 ke kanan Mrs Tan                   |
| 5 ke panggung wayang | 18 dari tengah                        |
| 6 di belakang garaj  | 19 untuk Mr Harris                    |
| 7 di bawah kerusi    | 20 ke Jerantut                        |
| 8 di atas bangunan   | 21 di Jepun.                          |
| 9 di dalam bangunan  | 22 pada pukul enam                    |
| 10 di tepi rumah     | 23 dalam bulan Januari                |
| 11 di kiri           | 24 pada hari Isnin                    |
| 12 di sudut          | 25 dalam tahun 1993, pada tahun 1993  |
| 13 di tengah         | 26 pada hujung tahun/pada akhir tahun |

#### **Exercise 4**

- |                  |                 |
|------------------|-----------------|
| 1 di             | 11 pada, ke     |
| 2 dari           | 12 di           |
| 3 ke             | 13 untuk        |
| 4 di             | 14 dalam        |
| 5 untuk/daripada | 15 pada         |
| 6 pada           | 16 ke/pada      |
| 7 untuk          | 17 pada         |
| 8 di dalam       | 18 Dari/Dari/ke |
| 9 ke             | 19 dari/ke      |
| 10 pada          | 20 di           |

#### **Exercise 5**

- |                   |
|-------------------|
| 1 seorang/seorang |
| 2 sehelai         |
| 3 seekor          |
| 4 seorang         |
| 5 sebuah/sebuah   |
| 6 segelas/sebijji |
| 7 seorang         |
| 8 sepucuk         |
| 9 sebatang        |
| 10 sehelai        |
| 11 sebotol        |

#### **Lesson 5**

##### **Exercise 1**

- 1 Bila Adam pergi ke Seremban?
- 2 Adam pergi ke mana minggu lalu?
- 3 Siapa pergi ke Seremban minggu lalu?
- 4 Hassan makan nasi goreng di mana setiap hari?
- 5 Siapa makan nasi goreng di rumah setiap hari?
- 6 Hassan makan apa di rumah setiap hari?
- 7 Nama penuhnya apa?
- 8 Pelancong itu datang dari mana?

**Exercise 2**

- 1 Sebab apa/mengapa John pergi ke Singapura?
- 2 Mengapa/sebab apa Asmah gembira?
- 3 Mengapa/sebab apa mereka masak banyak?
- 4 Sebab apa/mengapa Ali tidak hadir di mesyuarat?
- 5 Mengapa/sebab apa dia beri hadiah kepada Ani?

**Exercise 3**

- 1 Dapurnya besar.
- 2 Bilik tidurnya kecil.
- 3 Ruang tamunya dicat hijau.
- 4 Pintu-pintunya luas.
- 5 Bilik-bilik mandinya bersih dan besar.
- 6 Halaman-halaman depan dan belakangnya cantik.

**Exercise 4**

- 1 Masakannya sedap.
- 2 Tingginya 32,000 kaki.
- 3 Harganya lima ringgit.
- 4 Harganya lima ratus ribu ringgit.
- 5 Katanya dia sakit.

**Exercise 5**

- 1 Umur Amran berapa?
- 2 Baha tinggal di Taiping dengan siapa?
- 3 Mereka pergi ke luar negeri dengan siapa?
- 4 Tahun lalu Pak Kassim dan anak-anaknya berkelah di mana?
- 5 Harga buku itu berapa?

**Exercise 7**

- 1 Pakaianya mahal-mahal.
- 2 Cenderamatanya murah-murah.
- 3 Orangnya baik-baik.
- 4 Hotelnya bagus-bagus.
- 5 Tamannya besar-besar.
- 6 Polisnya baik-baik.
- 7 Orang lelakinya tinggi-tinggi dan orang perempuannya cantik-cantik.

**Exercise 8**

- 1 Di London, cuaca sejuk sekali. Di Kuala Lumpur panas sekali.
- 2 Makanan murah sekali di Malaysia tapi perjalanan mahal sekali.
- 3 Pakaian yang dia pakai mahal sekali.
- 4 Suaminya tinggi sekali tapi anaknya pendek sekali.
- 5 Guru marah sekali dan pelajar-pelajarnya takut sekali.

**Exercise 9**

- 1 Di Malaysia, di mana Pulau Pinang?
- 2 Berapa besarkah pulau itu?
- 3 Berapa jauhkah Pulau Pinang dari Kuala Lumpur?
- 4 Berapa lama penerangan dari Kuala Lumpur?
- 5 Berapa lama kalau berkereta dari Seremban?
- 6 Berapa tinggi Bukit Maxwell?

**Exercise 10**

- 1 Birmingham berada di kawasan tengah England.
- 2 Kolej Perubatan tempat kajian anda berada di pusat bandar.
- 3 Anda boleh berjumpa saya pada hari anda tiba di lapanganbang Heathrow.
- 4 Ya, anda boleh singgah di rumah saya semasa anda tiba di London.
- 5 Perjalanan kereta api dari London ke Birmingham dua jam lebih.
- 6 Birmingham kira-kira dua ratus batu dari London.
- 7 Ya, ada makanan halal di Birmingham.
- 8 Ya, anda boleh masak di rumah sewa anda.
- 9 Ya, anda boleh membawa masuk makanan dari Malaysia ke England.
- 10 Musim sejuk di England ialah dalam bulan Disember.
- 11 Pakaian-pakaian sejuk di England mahal.
- 12 Musim panas bermula pada bulan Jun.
- 13 Kadar pertukaran wang ringgit dengan wang sterling ialah empat ringgit bagi satu paun sterling.
- 14 Anda boleh pergi ke mesjid di Birmingham untuk sembahyang Jumaat.
- 15 Scotland tidak jauh dari Birmingham. Sama jauhnya dengan London.
- 16 Surat udara dari London akan tiba di Malaysia dalam masa tiga hari.

## Lesson 6

### Exercise 1

- 1 berkelahi/bergaduh
- 2 bermain
- 3 bertemu
- 4 berbaring
- 5 bersenam
- 6 berbaris
- 7 berhenti
- 8 berlari
- 9 bertanya
- 10 bergerak

### Exercise 2

- 1 bekerja di/pergi ke/pulang ke
- 2 akan/boleh/tak mahu
- 3 terbang ke/datang dari/tinggal di
- 4 berkelah/bermain bola
- 5 berkumpul/bermain/berbaris
- 6 belajar di/ berehat di/keluar dari
- 7 bekerja di/berangkat ke/berada di
- 8 melawat/tidak suka/tinggal di
- 9 bercakap/faham/belajar

### Exercise 3

- 1 Saya bekerja di rumah/di pejabat/di kilang/di hospital
- 2 Saya pergi ke pejabat pos/bank/sekolah
- 3 Hassan tinggal di Seremban/di rumah abangnya
- 4 Asiah tidur di dalam bilik/di atas katil/di luar bilik
- 5 Kamal letak kasutnya di dalam almari/di atas papan tingkat/di bawah katil
- 6 Ani jumpa beg itu di dalam tong sampah/di tepi jalan/di atas lantai
- 7 Rumahnya di Kuala Lumpur/dekat sekolah.

### Exercise 4

- 1 Dia berjalan ke pejabatnya, masuk ke dalam dan duduk.
- 2 Dia bangun pada pukul enam, mandi dan pakai baju.
- 3 Untuk sarapan pagi, kami makan nasi goreng dan minum kopi.
- 4 Isterinya bekerja dari pukul sembilan hingga pukul lima tapi dia duduk di rumah sahaja.
- 5 Anaknya tidak pernah mau belajar. Dia selalu menonton televisyen.
- 6 Kereta itu berhenti di depan rumah. Enjinnya rosak.
- 7 Budak-budak itu berlari ke sana sini. Sangat bising.
- 8 Saya suka berenang tapi adik lelaki/abang lelaki saya tidak suka.
- 9 Patrick sudah berkahwin dan dia ada tiga anak.
- 10 Rumah saya kecil dan ada dua bilik saja.
- 11 Mereka berkata mereka berjaya dalam peperiksaan.

### Exercise 5

- 1 Marilah kita pergi berjalan.
- 2 Marilah kita makan nasi goreng.
- 3 Marilah kita pergi berenang.
- 4 Marilah kita pergi ke panggung wayang.
- 5 Marilah kita bermain tenis.
- 6 Marilah kita menyanyi lagu.
- 7 Marilah kita masak untuk malam ini.

### Exercise 6

Jimmy sudah berkahwin dan isterinya bernama Jane. Mereka ada dua anak, seorang lelaki berumur empat tahun dan seorang lagi perempuan berumur dua tahun. Jimmy berumah besar dengan taman besar. Dia memandu kereta biru.

Isterinya, yang berkaca mata, berbasikal ke tempat kerja. Anak-anak mereka berkawan dengan anak-anak jiran dan jarang berkelahi. Mereka sering bertemu jiran mereka untuk minum teh dan berbincang berkenaan keselamatan kawasan di mana mereka tinggal.

## Lesson 7

### Exercise 1

- 1 Rabu/Khamis
- 2 Jumaat/Sabtu
- 3 Ahad/Sabtu
- 4 Khamis/Sabtu
- 5 Rabu/Selasa
- 6 Rabu/Selasa
- 7 Selasa/Selasa
- 8 Sabtu
- 9 Isnin

### Exercise 2

- 1 dua belas
- 2 sebulan
- 3 dua puluh empat
- 4 satu jam
- 5 enam puluh
- 6 satu minggu
- 7 dua hari
- 8 dua tahun
- 9 tiga minggu
- 10 setahun

### Exercise 3

- 1 November
- 2 Jun
- 3 April
- 4 lepas
- 5 depan
- 6 September/Oktoper

### Exercise 4

- 1 Kelmarin satu haribulan Januari.
- 2 Hari ini enam belas haribulan September.
- 3 Esok lapan haribulan Disember.
- 4 Hari Krismas dua puluh lima haribulan Disember.

- 5 Hari kemerdekaan Amerika ialah empat haribulan Julai.
- 6 Tahun baru satu haribulan Januari.
- 7 Hari Kemerdekaan Malaysia tiga puluh satu haribulan Ogos.
- 8 Hari jadi saya . . .

### Exercise 5

dua puluh lapan haribulan Jun sembilan belas lapan puluh lima,  
 satu haribulan Februari sembilan belas sembilan puluh,  
 dua puluh dua haribulan April sembilan belas empat puluh lapan,  
 empat belas haribulan Mei sembilan belas enam puluh tujuh,  
 tiga puluh satu haribulan Januari lapan belas empat puluh tiga,  
 dua puluh sembilan haribulan Ogos lapan belas enam puluh lima,  
 enam belas haribulan Julai sembilan belas sembilan puluh satu,  
 tujuh haribulan Disember sembilan belas empat puluh dua,  
 lapan belas haribulan Mac sembilan belas tiga puluh sembilan,  
 tiga puluh haribulan Oktober sembilan belas empat puluh enam

### Exercise 6

- 1 Setiap pagi saya bangun pada pukul enam setengah.
- 2 Saya pakai baju pada pukul tujuh.
- 3 Saya makan sarapan pada pukul tujuh lima belas minit/suku.
- 4 Saya mula bekerja pada pukul lapan setengah/lapan tiga puluh minit.
- 5 Saya ada mesyuarat pagi pada pukul sembilan setengah/tiga puluh minit.
- 6 Pada pukul dua belas setengah/tiga puluh minit saya makan tengah hari selama sejam.
- 7 Saya berangkat dari pejabat pada pukul lima.
- 8 Pada pukul tujuh lima belas minit/suku saya makan malam dengan keluarga saya.
- 9 Saya membaca akhbar dari pukul lapan setengah/tiga puluh minit sampai pukul sembilan.
- 10 Pada pukul sepuluh saya tidur.

### Exercise 7

- 1 Dua puluh minit selepas pukul tujuh, lima setengah, kurang lima belas minit pukul tiga.
- 2 Enam setengah, tujuh, kurang lima belas minit pukul lapan.

- 3 Lapan setengah, kurang lima belas minit pukul sepuluh, sepuluh setengah.
- 4 Kurang lima belas minit pukul enam, enam setengah, empat setengah.
- 5 Tiga suku, kurang lima belas minit pukul tiga, satu setengah petang.

#### **Exercise 8**

- 1 Dia pakai baju warna merah dan biru dengan reben putih.
- 2 Bunga di atas meja itu warna kuning/merah jambu/merah.
- 3 Kasut Ani warna kelabu/merah tua.
- 4 Kereta Samad warna biru muda/kelabu.
- 5 Warna kesukaan saya ialah warna kuning/ungu/hijau.

### **Lesson 8**

#### **Exercise 1**

- 1 membaca
- 2 mengirim
- 3 mengambil
- 4 menggali
- 5 memasak

#### **Exercise 2**

- 1 undang
- 2 jaga
- 3 hilang
- 4 keluh
- 5 langgar

#### **Exercise 3**

- 1 Dia menulis surat. (tulis)
- 2 Dia mengambil pen dari laci. (ambil)
- 3 Saya menangkap pencuri itu bila dia keluar dari kedai. (tangkap)
- 4 Orang lelaki itu membuka kedai pada pukul sembilan. (buka)
- 5 Orang membeli dan menjual barang di pasar. (beli/jual)
- 6 Amir mencari pekerjaan. (cari)

- 7 Anna mencuba baju barunya. (cuba)
- 8 Pelayan itu membawa dua cawan teh. (bawa)
- 9 Mr. Simmons mengajar bahasa Perancis. (ajar)

#### **Exercise 4**

- 3 Mariam bermain piano di bilik tamu.
- 4 Mariam berehat di bilik tamu.
- 5 Mariam berjalan di dalam taman.
- 6 Mariam mengajar bahasa Inggeris.
- 7 Mariam menulis surat.
- 8 Mariam menulis surat di pejabat.
- 9 Mariam bekerja di pejabat.
- 10 Mariam bermesyuarat dengan teman-temannya di pejabat.
- 13 Asma pergi dengan Mary ke restoran.
- 14 Asma pergi makan mee goreng di restoran.
- 15 Asma berbual di restoran sebelum pulang.
- 16 Asma keluar dari restoran.
- 17 Asma mencari teksi.
- 18 Asma memanggil teksi.
- 19 Asma naik teksi.
- 20 Asma turun dari teksi.

#### **Exercise 5**

- 1 Saya perlu meminta visa di kedutaan Malaysia di Washington.
- 2 Saya mesti pergi berjumpa doktor untuk mendapatkan suntikan.
- 3 Saya perlu membeli wang Malaysia di bank.
- 4 Saya perlu menempah tiket penerbangan ke Kuala Lumpur.
- 5 Saya perlu seorang guru untuk mengajar saya bahasa Melayu.
- 6 Saya perlu mencari peta Malaysia di kedai buku.
- 7 Saya perlu menelefon kawan untuk memberitau dia mengenai perjalanan saya.
- 8 Saya perlu menulis surat kepada seorang kawan Melayu di Malaysia.

#### **Exercise 6**

- 1 Mrs Wong mula bekerja pada pukul 9.30 pagi.
- 2 Dia melawat setiap bilik di rumah itu dan bercakap dengan kanak-kanak di setiap bilik.

- 3 Dia membincangkan masalah kanak-kanak itu dengan juru rawat.
- 4 Semasa mesyuarat pagi dengan kakitangan dia merancangkan kegiatan-kegiatan minggu itu.
- 5 Selepas mesyuarat, dia membuka semua surat dan menjawabnya sendiri.
- 6 Di waktu petang, dia membawa sekumpulan kanak-kanak ke taman haiwan.
- 7 Dia membeli mereka aiskrim dan minuman dan memberitahu mereka tentang haiwan itu.
- 8 Di rumah anak-anak yatim itu, dia meminta kanak-kanak itu supaya melukis gambar-gambar setengah dari haiwan itu.
- 9 Pada pukul lima petang itu, dia mengadakan satu lagi mesyuarat dengan timbalan pengarah yang memberitahunya bahawa seseorang telah memberi derma sebanyak RM1,000.
- 10 Mrs Wong meminta setiausahaannya menyediakan surat terima kasih kepada penderma.
- 11 Sebelum pulang, Mrs Wong melawat kanak-kanak itu sekali lagi di pusat kegiatan.
- 12 Mrs Wong mengucap selamat tinggal kepada kanak-kanak itu dan kakitangannya.

#### **Exercise 7**

- 1 Pernah anda pergi ke Jepun?
- 2 Saya pernah beli durian beberapa kali di London.
- 3 Dia tidak pernah makan rambutan.
- 4 Saya pernah melihat seorang lelaki menggigit anjing.
- 5 Saya tak pernah berjalan seorang diri di waktu malam.
- 6 Pernahkah dia sakit?

#### **Lesson 9**

#### **Exercise 1**

- 1 trans.
- 2 intrans.
- 3 trans. benef.
- 4 trans. benef.
- 5 trans.
- 6 trans.
- 7 trans. caus.

- 8 trans. benef.
- 9 trans. benef.
- 10 intrans.

#### **Exercise 2**

- 1 naik, menaikkan
- 2 berhenti, menghentikan
- 3 membelikan, membeli
- 4 mengerjakan, bekerja, kerja
- 5 menjanjikan, berjanji

#### **Exercise 3**

- 1 Ibu itu mendudukkan anaknya di atas kerusi kecil.
- 2 Budak itu memasukkan permainan ke dalam kotak.
- 3 Pemandu itu mengeluarkan kereta dari garaj.
- 4 Isteri saya membuatkan saya baju baru.
- 5 Saya mengambil duit dari bank.
- 6 Pelajar-pelajar mengadakan sebuah majlis selepas peperiksaan.
- 7 Berhenti. Saya mahu keluar dari kereta.
- 8 Boleh anda berhentikan kereta?

#### **Exercise 4**

- 1 matikan.
- 2 meminjam, membayar
- 3 memasukkan
- 4 mendengar
- 5 bertemu
- 6 mengemas, memasakkan
- 7 berdiri
- 8 meminta, mendirikan
- 9 membacakan
- 10 beristeri, berhutang

#### **Exercise 5**

- 1 Mereka mendengar kuliah.
- 2 Mereka mencatatkan penjelasan pensyarah.
- 3 Mereka membuat latihan.
- 4 Mereka menanya pensyarah beberapa soalan.

- 5 Mereka membincangkan topik yang diberi oleh pensyarah.
- 6 Mereka berehat dan makan tengah hari.
- 7 Mereka kembali ke kelas.
- 8 Mereka menyambung pelajaran.
- 9 Mereka pulang pada pukul empat.

#### *Exercise 6*

- 1 Selepas makan malam dia belajar.
- 2 Dia membuat kerja rumah.
- 3 Dia menghabiskan buku cerita yang dia sedang membaca.
- 4 Dia menterjemahkan kira-kira dua puluh ayat bahasa Inggeris ke bahasa Melayu.
- 5 Dia mengarang kira-kira satu setengah muka.
- 6 Dia pergi ke bilik tidur.
- 7 Dia memadamkan lampu.
- 8 Dia tidur.

### **Lesson 10**

#### *Exercise 1*

- 1 perdagangan
- 2 perjalanan
- 3 pembicaraan
- 4 pembunuhan
- 5 penjelasan
- 6 pertandingan
- 7 pertemuan
- 8 kekayaan, kerajinan
- 9 kesihatan
- 10 harapan
- 11 kematian
- 12 tulisan, penulis
- 13 latihan
- 14 pemain, permainan
- 15 pekerja, kerajinan

#### *Exercise 2*

- 1 bersatu, kesatuan
- 2 bermain, pemain, permainan
- 3 menjelaskan, penjelasan, kejelasan

- 4 minum, minuman
- 5 bekerja, pekerja, pekerjaan
- 6 menjual, penjualan, penjual
- 7 membeli, pembelian, pembeli
- 8 menari, tarian, penari
- 9 bersedih, kesedihan, menyedihkan
- 10 berbahagia, kebahagiaan, membahagiakan
- 11 menulis, penulis, penulisan
- 12 membersihkan, kebersihan, pembersih
- 13 adil, pengadilan, pengadil
- 14 makmur, kemakmuran
- 15 memakai, pemakai, pakaian

#### *Exercise 3*

- 1 minum, minuman, minum, peminum
- 2 pemain, bermain, memainkan, permainan
- 3 pekerjaan, pekerja, mengerjakan, pekerjaan, pekerja, bekerja
- 4 menjual, jualan, penjualan, penjual, menjual
- 5 bersedih, menyedihkan, kesedihan, sedih
- 6 membersihkan, kebersihan, bersih, pembersih, membersih
- 7 mengajar, pelajar, belajar, pelajaran, mengajar, pengajaran
- 8 melahirkan, lahir, kelahiran
- 9 benar, membenarkan, kebenaran
- 10 jatuh, kejatuhan, menjatuhkan

#### *Exercise 4*

- 1 Perjalanan itu membuat saya penat.
- 2 Pemandangan itu mengagumkan.
- 3 Teorinya mempunyai banyak kelemahan.
- 4 Saya tak faham perkataan itu.
- 5 Perkahwinan antara orang timur dan orang dari barat adalah perkara biasa sekarang ini.
- 6 Pekerjaannya tidak memuaskan.
- 7 Semasa pertemuan dengan bapanya dia meminta kebenarannya untuk pergi bercuti.
- 8 Makanan yang dihidangkan di restoran itu sedap, hiburannya juga bagus.
- 9 Penyakitnya menjelaskan pekerjaannya.
- 10 Penerbangan dari London ke Kuala Lumpur memakan masa tiga belas jam.

## Lesson 11

### Exercise 1

- 1 Surat ditulis (oleh) Ahmad.
- 2 Pintu rumah ditutup (oleh) dia.
- 3 Sani dibawa Asma ke sekolah.
- 4 Kepada siapa buku itu diberi Hashim?
- 5 Apa yang dibacanya?
- 6 Apa yang dibuat mereka?
- 7 Siapa yang dihantar Bill ke stesen bas?
- 8 Gambar rumah dilukis Ahmad.
- 9 Budak itu dimarahi bapanya.
- 10 Pokok ditanam mereka di taman.
- 11 Buku Anna diambil Mary.
- 12 Saya ditelefon setiausaha itu di rumah.

### Exercise 2

- 1 Rumah itu dibeli oleh bapa saya.
- 2 Buku itu dibaca Ahmad kelmarin.
- 3 Siapa yang dibawa ke stesen?
- 4 Apa yang dicuri dari rumah itu?
- 5 Makanan itu disediakan oleh ibu saya pagi ini.
- 6 Wang itu diberi olehnya.
- 7 Lagu itu dinyanyikan oleh mereka.
- 8 Kereta itu dipandu oleh Samad ke stesen.
- 9 Tiket itu dibeli oleh Ali bulan lepas.
- 10 Surat itu ditulis olehnya kepada ibunya di Ipoh.
- 11 Siapa yang diberi buku itu di majlis itu?
- 12 Kanak-kanak itu ditolong oleh guru mereka di sekolah.

### Exercise 3

- 1 Siapa yang dibawa Din ke rumah sakit?
- 2 Apa yang dibakar kanak-kanak itu?
- 3 Apa yang dibeli Susan untuk Anna?
- 4 Apa yang dimakannya?
- 5 Apa yang diberi oleh Bill kepada Zain?
- 6 Siapa yang dihantar bapa Ramli ke sekolah pagi itu?
- 7 Apa yang disimpan oleh ibu Mansor di dalam beg?
- 8 Siapa yang dipanggil oleh Susan masuk ke dalam bilik?

### Exercise 4

- 1 Pak Ali is very fortunate. Recently he was promoted. Now he is the Managing Director of his company. His salary has been increased. His family was given a big house and his car was replaced with one that is big and expensive. He is always asked to go overseas to meet clients. His children are sent to study at a private school. And his wife is helped by two helpers.
- 2 On the other hand, Pak Aman is less fortunate. He was found to have used the company's money. His car was repossessed. He was asked to stop work. He was asked to report to the police station. He will be questioned by the police about the missing money. If found guilty, he will certainly be put in prison.

### Exercise 5

Husin baru saja lulus peperiksaan. Semua soalan yang diberi oleh guru dijawabnya dengan betul. Bila keputusan diterimanya minggu lepas, Husin diberikan sebuah basikal oleh ibunya sebagai hadiah. Sebuah jam tangan dihadiahkan kepadanya oleh bapanya.

### Exercise 6

Seorang pencuri telah memecah tingkap rumah Ainon dan mencuri barang-barangnya. Ainon menelefon polis dan memberitahu mereka tentang kejadian itu. Polis menyuruhnya supaya menulis senarai barang-barang yang hilang. Kemudian Ainon mengemas bilik yang bersepeh itu.

## Lesson 12

### Exercise 1

- |       |        |
|-------|--------|
| 1 (p) | 10 (h) |
| 2 (b) | 11 (p) |
| 3 (p) | 12 (h) |
| 4 (p) | 13 (b) |
| 5 (p) | 14 (h) |
| 6 (p) | 15 (b) |
| 7 (h) | 16 (h) |
| 8 (p) | 17 (b) |
| 9 (p) |        |

**Exercise 2**

- 1 Silakan masuk dan duduk.
- 2 Silakan makan dan minum di sini.
- 3 Silakan berehat.
- 4 Silakan buat apa saja.
- 5 Silakan duduk di mana saja.
- 6 Silakan balik bila-bila masa saja.
- 7 Silakan bayar seberapa yang boleh.
- 8 Silakan pilih baju mana yang anda suka.

**Exercise 3**

- 1 Tolong keluarkan kereta dari garaj.
- 2 Tolong bawa kereta ke bengkel.
- 3 Tolong tanya apa yang rosak.
- 4 Tolong tanya berapa harganya.
- 5 Tolong bersihkan kereta itu.
- 6 Tolong jualkan kereta itu.
- 7 Tolong masukkan duit ke dalam bank.
- 8 Tolong carikan kereta baru.

**Exercise 4**

- 1 Lihatlah ke belakang.
- 2 Masuklah ke pejabat.
- 3 Mainlah tenis.
- 4 Pergilah sekarang.
- 5 Datanglah esok.
- 6 Tanyalah nama jalan itu.
- 7 Tunggulah di sini.
- 8 Pergilah malam nanti.
- 9 Kembalikanlah duit saya.
- 10 Jawablah soalan saya.
- 11 Kerjalah rajin-rajin.
- 12 Masaklah kuih yang sedap.

**Exercise 5**

- 3 Janganlah pakai barang kemas.
- 4 Janganlah bawa banyak duit dalam beg.
- 5 Janganlah pukul anak kuat-kuat.

- 6 Janganlah marah dia di hadapan orang.
- 7 Janganlah bawa orang itu ke rumah saya.
- 8 Janganlah pakai baju kotor.
- 9 Janganlah berjalan kaki.
- 10 Janganlah berhenti kereta di tengah jalan.
- 11 Janganlah lupa kawan lama.

**Lesson 13****Exercise 1**

- 3 Meja makan ini lebih panjang daripada meja tulis.  
Meja tulis ini lebih pendek daripada meja makan.
- 4 Buku sejarah ini lebih nipis daripada buku ilmu alam.  
Buku ilmu alam itu lebih ini lebih tebal daripada buku sejarah.
- 5 Beg ini lebih ringan daripada beg itu.  
Beg itu lebih berat daripada beg ini.
- 6 Kereta itu berjalan lebih perlahan daripada kereta saya.  
Kereta saya berjalan lebih laju daripada kereta itu.
- 7 Julie mendapat dua markah kurang daripada Susan.  
Susan mendapat dua markah lebih daripada Julie.
- 8 Rumah itu lebih rendah daripada rumah ini.  
Rumah ini lebih tinggi daripada rumah itu.

**Exercise 3**

Aziz dan Omar adalah kembar tetapi mereka begitu berlainan sekali. Aziz lebih pendiam dan lebih suka membaca daripada menonton televisyen. Apa yang dia paling suka ialah pergi ke perpustakaan di mana dia boleh bersendirian dengan semua buku-buku yang menarik. Omar lebih suka keluar ke panggung wayang dan majlis. Dia paling suka menari. Kedua-dua mereka pandai tetapi Aziz lebih berjaya daripada Omar. Omar, walau bagaimanapun, lebih berjaya membuat kawan daripada membuat duit.

**Exercise 4**

- 1 terlalu/agak
- 2 seperti/terlalu
- 3 agak
- 4 terlalu
- 5 sama dengan

- 6 agak
- 7 terlalu/agak
- 8 seperti
- 9 terlalu
- 10 agak/terlalu

## Lesson 14

### Exercise 1

- 1 mengakhiri
- 2 mengatasi
- 3 mengunjungi
- 4 menandatangani
- 5 menasihati
- 6 menyusui
- 7 menghadiri
- 8 menemui
- 9 menjumpai
- 10 mendalamai

### Exercise 2

- 1 Penyanyi itu dikenali saya dari jauh lagi.
- 2 Rumah itu dimasuki pencuri menerusi pintu belakang.
- 3 Pertunjukan itu diakhiri oleh penari itu dengan satu tarian inang.
- 4 Abu dinasihati guru supaya kerja baik Atan dicontohnya.
- 5 Muzik dipelajari Ani setiap hujung minggu.
- 6 Upacara itu dihadiri oleh Perdana Menteri selepas rumah kanak-kanak cacat dikunjunginya.
- 7 Kedah diwakili oleh Asma di pertandingan itu.
- 8 Aman berdoa supaya permintaannya diberkati Tuhan.

### Exercise 3

- 1 Ibu Susan menasihatinya supaya memandu dengan baik.
- 2 Peminat-peminat penyanyi itu mengerumuninya semasa ia menyanyi.
- 3 Ketua Menteri itu menganugerahi bintang kepada pekerja itu kerana keberaniannya.
- 4 Asap meliputi kawasan itu selepas kebakaran itu.

- 5 Dia dapat mengatasi kemarahannya apabila anaknya menangis.
- 6 Polis mengawasi rumah itu sejak mereka ketahui bahawa pembunuhan itu ada di situ.
- 7 Rahman menghubungi balai polis apabila isterinya tidak pulang.
- 8 Semua penduduk pengasih puteri itu.

### Exercise 4

- 1 dicintai Ahmad
- 2 diketahui mereka dari polis
- 3 menandatangani cek itu di depan saya
- 4 menganggotai kesatuan itu sejak tahun lepas
- 5 dirasainya sehingga ia pulang
- 6 dihormati oleh Basir sebagai orang tua
- 7 mendampingi John di majlis itu
- 8 diratapi semua penduduk

### Exercise 5

Encik Karim ialah seorang guru yang dikasihi oleh murid-muridnya. Dia selalu menasihati pelajar-pelajarnya untuk mengikuti pelajaran dalam kelas setiap hari. Dia memperolehi kelayakannya menerusi kerja kuat dan dia menyedari bahawa kerja kuat selalu membawa kejayaan.

Kadang-kadang, semasa pelajaran, dia menceritakan kisah-kisah orang yang berjaya dan menggalakkan murid-muridnya untuk mencantohi mereka.

Semasa Encik Karim mengakhiri kerjayanya dan sebagai seorang guru yang berdedikasi dan seorang yang dihormati, kakitangan dan murid-murid sekolah itu memberinya satu majlis selamat bersara. Encik Karim tidak mengetahui tentang majlis itu. Setiap kakitangan dan pelajar disuruh menandatangani sekeping kad untuk Encik Karim.

Pada malam majlis itu, Encik Karim diminta pergi ke dewan sekolah. Dia masih tidak sedar tentang rancangan bagi majlis itu. Majlis itu dihadiri oleh bekas-bekas pelajarnya. Bila Encik Karim memasuki dewan, dia dikerumuni pelajar-pelajarnya. Dalam satu ucapan kepada pelajar-pelajar, dia berkata dia merasa bernasib baik kerana dikasihi dan dia juga mengasih mereka. Dia menyudahi ucapannya dengan sebuah pantun yang memperingati pelajar-pelajarnya supaya belajar rajin-rajin.

## Lesson 15

### Exercise 1

- 1 accidental
- 2 state
- 3 involuntary
- 4 accidental
- 5 inability
- 6 ability
- 7 ability
- 8 accidental

### Exercise 2

- 1 terpijak pinggan
- 2 terdapat pokok buah
- 3 terbeli jam tiruan
- 4 terjawab semua soalan ini dalam masa lima minit
- 5 terdaya menghantar anaknya ke universiti
- 6 tergelak
- 7 termasuk dalam cukai lapangan terbang
- 8 terpegun apabila Aman balik dengan fesyen rambutnya yang baru
- 9 tercedera dalam kejadian itu
- 10 tertembak kawannya

### Exercise 3

- 1 membeli/terbeli
- 2 memukul/terpukul
- 3 termakan/makanan
- 4 terletak/meletak
- 5 terdiri/berdiri
- 6 termasuk/memasuki/memasukkan
- 7 membakar/terbakar
- 8 terpotong/memotong
- 9 menggigit/tergigit
- 10 teringat/peringatan

## Lesson 16

### Exercise 2

- 1 Kanak-kanak bermain-main di jalan, membakar mercun.
- 2 Pada hari sebelum Hari Raya, kanak-kanak berlompat-lompat di jalan.
- 3 Umat Islam menanti-nanti kemunculan anak bulan.
- 4 Mereka hantar-menghantar kuih.
- 5 Mereka berpeluk-peluk dan maaf-memaafkan.
- 6 Kanak-kanak bersuka-suka pada Hari Raya.
- 7 Mereka kunjung-mengunjung sahabat dan saudara mara yang beri mereka duit.
- 8 Ibu-ibu selalunya sibuk masak-memasak dan bersiap-siap untuk hari yang mulia itu.

### Exercise 4

- 1 Bila buku ini ditulis?
- 2 Saya sedang belajar ketika dia masuk.
- 3 Bila anda akan pergi berjumpa Mr Johnson?
- 4 Ketika saya menulis surat itu saya merasa sedih.
- 5 Kalau anda tidak faham soalan itu, jangan berlengah bertanya.
- 6 Bila cuti anda?
- 7 Ketika anda menelefon, saya sedang bercakap dengan ibu saya.
- 8 Ketika saya sembahyang jangan membuat bising.
- 9 Jika mereka tidak datang, batalkan rancangan itu.
- 10 Kalau saya kaya saya akan beri kamu wang.

### Exercise 6

Mr Johnson ialah seorang yang sibuk. Dia selalu khuatir semasa ia bangun pagi. Dia mandi cepat-cepat dan makan sedikit sarapan. Dia pergi ke pejabat awal-awal sebab dia tak mau terperangkap dalam kekesakan lalu lintas.

Di pejabat dia meneliti surat-suratnya. Dia membaca dengan cermat dan memberitau setiausaha yang mana perlu dijawab dengan segera. Sekiranya ada masalah dia biasanya pergi berjumpa ketuanya untuk meminta nasihat.

Mr Johnson juga bertemu dengan pelanggan-pelanggan syarikatnya. Dia menyuruh mereka duduk dengan selesa dan selalu bercakap dengan mereka baik-baik. Dia menyoal mereka dengan

teliti mengenai cadangan mereka dan berkeras untuk membaca setiap kontrak dengan berhati-hati. Dia membayar pelanggan-pelanggannya dengan cepat dan mempastikan bahawa mereka membuat kerja mereka dengan cekap dan cepat.

#### Exercise 7

- 1 Apa pun yang anda minta saya akan beri kepada anda.
- 2 Di mana anda pergi, saya pun pergi dengan anda.
- 3 Pada masa-masa manapun yang anda memerlukan saya, telefon saya.
- 4 Kalau anda tak mau pergi, saya pun tak mau pergi.
- 5 Siapa pun yang ambil duit saya tak akan dapat tidur betul-betul.
- 6 Dia tak boleh pun buat kira-kira yang senang begitu!
- 7 Walau pun telefon berbunyi dia tak mau jawab.
- 8 Walau apa pun yang berlaku kepada saya, jangan beritahu ibu saya.

#### Exercise 8

- 1 seratus
- 2 sebuah
- 3 sehari
- 4 sekejap
- 5 setahun/sebulan
- 6 sesuatu
- 7 sepejabat
- 8 seorang
- 9 seekor
- 10 sepandai

#### Exercise 9

- 1 Saya perlu makan ini satu saja sehari.
- 2 Jangan duduk saja. Buat sesuatu.
- 3 Dia budak kecil saja. Biarlah dia main.
- 4 Dia memasak untuk lima orang saja. Anda tidak boleh menjemput lebih ramai lagi!
- 5 Apa saja yang anda ingin, beritahu saya.
- 6 Buat saja yang apa saya katakan.
- 7 Dia baru saja sampai dengan kawannya.
- 8 Saja minta satu gelas minuman saja. Belum lagi datang.
- 9 Dia boleh buat apa-apa saja, dari memasak hingga ke menari.
- 10 Jangan berdiri saja di situ, tolong dia!

# Malay–English glossary

This glossary covers words that have been used in this book and their derivatives. They are arranged in alphabetical order according to their rootforms, e.g. **berjalan** appears under **jalan**, **menuulis** under **tulis**, etc. The derivatives, however, are arranged by meaning rather than alphabetically. Remember that the affixation can be:

**ber, me, me\_kan, me\_i, memper\_kan, an, ke\_an, pe, per, se, ter, ber\_an**

The meanings of base-verbs, except independent verbs, are usually ambiguous or vague; hence their English translations are not given. These verbs are marked with an asterisk\*. New meanings appear as an affixation is applied to them.

The following abbreviations have been used: adj (adjective), n (noun), ad (adverb), prep (preposition) vi (intransitive verb), vt (transitive verb), sb (somebody), smn (someone), st (something).

<b>acara</b>	event	<b>adik</b>	younger sister
<b>ada</b>	there is/are, to have/own	<b>perempuan</b>	
<b>berada</b>	to be at, to be well off	<b>adil</b> (adj)	just, fair
<b>mengadakan</b>	to hold, to organize	<b>mengadili</b>	to try
<b>keadaan</b>	situation, condition	<b>pengadil</b>	judge
<b>adat resam</b>	customs and traditions	<b>aduh!</b>	<i>an expression of dismay or pain</i>
<b>adik</b>	younger siblings	<b>agak</b>	rather
<b>adik laki-laki</b>	younger brother	<b>agama</b>	religion
		<b>ugama</b>	
		<b>agar</b>	hopefully
		<b>Ahad</b>	Sunday
		<b>air</b>	water
		<b>aiskrim</b>	ice cream

<b>ajak*</b>		<b>anda</b>	you, your
<b>mengajak</b>	to invite, to ask smn to go along	<b>anggota</b>	member
<b>ajar *</b>		<b>keanggotaan</b>	membership
<b>belajar</b>	to learn, study	<b>menganggotai</b>	to be a member
<b>mempelajari</b>	to learn, study	<b>angkat*</b>	
<b>mengajar</b>	to teach	<b>mengangkat</b>	to carry
<b>ajaran (n)</b>	lesson, the teachings	<b>berangkat</b>	to leave
<b>pelajaran (n)</b>	lesson	<b>angkut*</b>	
<b>pelajar</b>	student	<b>mengangkut</b>	to lift, carry
<b>pengajar</b>	teacher	<b>anjing</b>	dog
<b>pengajaran</b>	lesson/moral	<b>anjur*</b>	
<b>akan</b>	will	<b>menganjur</b>	to organize
<b>akhbar</b>	newspaper	<b>anugerah (n)</b>	award
<b>aku</b>	I ( <i>informal</i> )	<b>menganuger-</b>	
<b>alam</b>	world/nature	<b>akan</b>	to award
<b>mengalami</b>	to experience	<b>dianugerahi</b>	to be given an award
<b>pengalaman</b>	experience	<b>apa</b>	what
<b>berpengalaman</b>	to have experience	<b>apa(kah)</b>	
<b>alam sekitar</b>	environment	<b>apabila</b>	when
<b>aman</b>	peaceful	<b>api</b>	fire
<b>keamanan</b>	peace	<b>apit*</b>	
<b>almari</b>	cupboard	<b>terapit</b>	to be wedged in between
<b>amat</b>	very	<b>arah*</b>	
<b>ambil*</b>		<b>mengarah</b>	to order, to command
<b>mengambil</b>	to take	<b>arah</b>	order, command
<b>ambilkan</b>	take	<b>pengarah (n)</b>	director
<b>mengambil alih</b>	to take over	<b>arca</b>	arch
<b>diambil balik</b>	is repossessed	<b>asap (n)</b>	smoke
<b>ampun (n)</b>	pardon, forgiveness	<b>Asia Tenggara</b>	South East Asia
<b>mengampuni</b>	to forgive	<b>asyik</b>	to be engrossed in st
<b>anak</b>	child	<b>atas (prep)</b>	above, on
<b>lelaki</b>	son	<b>mengatasi</b>	to overcome
<b>perempuan</b>	daughter	<b>atur*</b>	
<b>yatim</b>	orphan	<b>mengatur</b>	to arrange
<b>bulan</b>	new moon	<b>beratur</b>	to line up
<b>ancam*</b>		<b>peraturan</b>	rules, regulations
<b>mengancam</b>	to threaten	<b>awal</b>	early
<b>ancaman</b>	threat		

<b>awas*</b>		<b>pusat bandar</b>	city centre
<b>mengawasi</b>	to monitor	<b>banding*</b>	
<b>pengawas (n)</b>	monitor	<b>membanding-</b>	to compare
<b>ayah</b>	father	<b>kan</b>	
<b>baca*</b>		<b>perbandingan</b>	comparison
<b>membaca</b>	to read	<b>bangga*</b>	
<b>bacaan (n)</b>	reading text	<b>berbangga</b>	to be proud
<b>bagai</b>	as	<b>membang-</b>	st to be proud
<b>sebagai</b>		<b>gakan</b>	of
<b>berbagai</b>	various	<b>bangsa</b>	race
<b>bagaimana</b>	how	<b>kebangsaan</b>	national
<b>bagus (adj)</b>	good, nice	<b>bangun</b>	to wake up
<b>bahagia,</b>	happy	<b>membangun-</b>	to develop
<b>bahagia (adj)</b>		<b>kan</b>	
<b>berbahagia</b>	to be happy	<b>pembangunan</b>	development
<b>kebahagiaan</b>	happiness	<b>bangunan</b>	building
<b>bahan</b>	ingredients, material	<b>banjir (n)</b>	flood
<b>bahasa</b>	language	<b>bantah*</b>	
<b>bahawa</b>	that; <i>Dia berkata</i>	<b>memban-</b>	to object/protest
	<i>bahawa . . . He</i>	<b>tahkan</b>	
	said that	<b>pembantahan</b>	
<b>baik (adj)</b>	good	<b>bantahan (n)</b>	protest
<b>baiklah</b>	all right, okay	<b>bantu*</b>	
<b>kebaikan (n)</b>	goodness	<b>membantu</b>	to help
<b>membaiki</b>	to repair/ renovate	<b>bantuan (n)</b>	assistance, help
<b>memperbaiki</b>	to repair/ renovate	<b>pembantu (n)</b>	helper
<b>sebaik saja</b>	as soon as	<b>banyak</b>	many
<b>baju</b>	items of clothing such as dress, skirt, shirt, etc	<b>memperban-</b>	to increase
		<b>yakkan</b>	
<b>bakar*</b>		<b>bapa, bapak</b>	father
<b>membakar</b>	to burn	<b>barang</b>	things
<b>kebakaran (n)</b>	fire	<b>barang-barang</b>	goods
<b>terbakar</b>	accidentally burnt	<b>sebarang</b>	anything, whatever
<b>balai</b>	station	<b>barat</b>	west
<b>balai polis</b>	police station	<b>baring *</b>	
<b>bandar</b>	city, town	<b>berbaring</b>	
<b>luar bandar</b>	rural area	<b>terbaring</b>	to lie down
		<b>baru, baharu (adj)</b>	new
		<b>membarui</b>	to renew
		<b>memper-</b>	
		<b>baharui</b>	to renew

<b>bas</b>	bus	<b>berbelanja</b>	
<b>basikal</b>	bicycle	<b>perbelanjaan</b>	expenses
<b>berbasikal</b>	to ride a bicycle	<b>beli*</b>	
		<b>membeli</b>	to buy
<b>batal*</b>		<b>membeli belah</b>	to shop
<b>membatalkan</b>	to cancel	<b>pembeli</b>	buyer
<b>batu</b>	stone, mile	<b>pembelian (n)</b>	purchase
<b>-nisan</b>	gravestone	<b>belum</b>	not yet
<b>batuk</b>	cough	<b>sebelum</b>	before
<b>bau*</b>	to smell	<b>benda</b>	thing
<b>terbau</b>		<b>bendera</b>	flag
<b>bau-bauan</b>	aroma	<b>bengkel</b>	workshop
<b>bawal</b>	pomfret	<b>bentang*</b>	
<b>bayar*</b>		<b>membentang</b>	to lay out
<b>membayar</b>	to pay	<b>terbentang</b>	laid out
<b>bayaran</b>	payment	<b>berani (adj)</b>	
<b>bayi</b>	baby	<b>memberanikan</b>	to make oneself brave
<b>bebas*</b>		<b>keberanian</b>	bravery
<b>membebaskan</b>	to set free	<b>berapa</b>	how much/many?
<b>kebebasan</b>	freedom	<b>beras</b>	uncooked rice
<b>wartawan</b>	freelance	<b>beri*</b>	
<b>bebas</b>	journalist	<b>memberi</b>	to give
<b>bebas cukai</b>	tax-free	<b>memberikan</b>	
<b>beberapa</b>	several	<b>pemberian (n)</b>	gift
<b>beza*</b>		<b>pemberi</b>	giver
<b>berbeza</b>	to differ	<b>beritahu/tau</b>	to tell
<b>perbezaan</b>	difference	<b>memberitahu/tau</b>	
<b>beg</b>	bag	<b>berkat</b>	blessing
<b>beg galas</b>	rucksack	<b>memberkati</b>	to bless
<b>begitu</b>	like that	<b>berlian</b>	diamond
<b>sebeginu</b>		<b>berontak*</b>	
<b>kalau begitu</b>	if so	<b>memberontak</b>	to rebel
<b>bekal*</b>		<b>bertengkar</b>	to argue
<b>membekal</b>	to supply	<b>pertengkaran</b>	argument
<b>pembekal</b>	supplier	<b>berus*</b>	
<b>bekalan</b>	supply	<b>memberuskan</b>	to brush
<b>bekas</b>	former	<b>pemberus (n)</b>	brush
<b>bela*</b>		<b>besar (adj)</b>	big
<b>membela</b>	to rear	<b>membesar</b>	to grow
<b>belanja*</b>			
<b>membelanja</b>	to give a treat, to spend		

<b>membesarkan,</b>		<b>kebolehan</b>	ability
<b>memper-</b>		<b>bongsu</b>	youngest child
<b>besarkan</b>	to enlarge	<b>buah</b>	fruit
		<b>bual*</b>	
<b>betik</b>	papaya	<b>berbual</b>	to converse, chat
<b>biar</b>	to let, to allow	<b>berbual-bual</b>	
<b>biasanya</b>	usually	<b>perbualan</b>	conversation
<b>biasiswa</b>	scholarship	<b>buat*</b>	
<b>bicara</b>		<b>membuat</b>	to make, to do
<b>membicara</b>	to judge	<b>pembuat</b>	maker
<b>pembicaraan</b>	trial	<b>perbuatan</b>	behaviour/deed
<b>bidang</b>	width, field (e.g. the field of science)	<b>budak</b>	child
		<b>budak-budak</b>	children
<b>bil</b>	bill	<b>budaya</b>	culture
<b>bila</b>	when	<b>kebudayaan</b>	cultural
<b>bilik</b>	room	<b>budi (n)</b>	to be courteous, polite
<b>mandi</b>	bathroom	<b>berbudi bahasa</b>	to have good manners
<b>tidur</b>	bedroom	<b>buka (vi)</b>	to open
<b>rehat</b>	lounge	<b>membuka (vi)</b>	to open
<b>tamu</b>	guest room	<b>pembukaan (n)</b>	the opening of no/not (in front of nouns); also as question tag, isn't it, did you, did he, was she, etc.
<b>makan</b>	dining room	<b>bukan</b>	
<b>bimbang*</b>		<b>bukit</b>	hill
<b>membim-</b>	to be worried	<b>buku</b>	book
<b>bangkan</b>		<b>bulan</b>	month, moon
<b>kebimbangan</b>	worry	<b>berbulan madu</b>	to go on honey-moon
(n)		<b>bunga</b>	flower
<b>binatang</b>	animals	<b>bunga</b>	special decorative flowers for special ceremonies
<b>bincang*</b>		<b>manggar</b>	a bouquet of flowers
<b>berbincang</b>	to discuss	<b>sejambak</b>	
<b>membin-</b>		<b>bunga</b>	
<b>cangkan</b>		<b>bungkus*</b>	
<b>perbincangan</b>	discussion		
<b>bintang</b>	star, medal (award)		
<b>bintang filem</b>	film star		
<b>bir</b>	beer		
<b>biru</b>	blue		
<b>bising (adj)</b>	noisy		
<b>biskut</b>	biscuit		
<b>blaus</b>	blouse		
<b>boleh</b>	can		
<b>membolehkan</b>	to enable		

<b>membungkus</b>	to wrap	<b>cheque</b>	
<b>bungkusan</b>	bundle, parcel	<b>cekap (adj)</b>	efficient
<b>bunuh*</b>		<b>kecekapan</b>	efficiency
<b>membunuhan</b>	to kill, murder	<b>cenderamata</b>	souvenir
<b>pembunuhan</b>	killer, murderer	<b>cerita (n)</b>	story
<b>terbunuhan</b>	murder	<b>menceritakan</b>	to tell a story about
<b>burai*</b>		<b>cermat (adj)</b>	careful, with care
<b>terburai</b>	to unfold and drop	<b>cetak*</b>	
<b>buruk (adj)</b>	old	<b>mencetak</b>	to print
<b>but (n)</b>	boot	<b>Cik</b>	printer/publisher
<b>cacat</b>	handicap	<b>Cina (orang)</b>	Miss
<b>kecacatan</b>		<b>cinta (n)</b>	Chinese
<b>cadang*</b>		<b>mencintai</b>	love
<b>bercadang</b>	to propose	<b>jatuh cinta</b>	to love
<b>mencadangkan</b>		<b>cicir/ter</b>	to fall in love
<b>cadangan</b>	proposal	<b>cita-cita</b>	to drop
<b>cakap*</b>		<b>bercita-cita</b>	accidentally
<b>bercakap</b>	to talk	<b>contoh (n)</b>	ambition
<b>campur*</b>		<b>mencontohi</b>	to have ambition
<b>bercampur</b>	to mix		example
<b>cantik (adj)</b>	beautiful	<b>cuaca</b>	to make example of
<b>kecantikan</b>	beauty	<b>cuba*</b>	weather
<b>capai*</b>		<b>mencuba</b>	
<b>mencapai</b>	to achieve	<b>percubaan (n)</b>	to try, to attempt
<b>pencapaian</b>	achievement	<b>cuci *</b>	attempt
<b>tercapai</b>	achieved	<b>mencuci</b>	
<b>cara</b>	way (i.e. the way to do st)	<b>cucu</b>	to clean, to wash
<b>cari*</b>		<b>cukup</b>	grandchildren
<b>mencari</b>	to find/search	<b>curi*</b>	enough
<b>mencarikan</b>	to find/search st for smn	<b>mencuri</b>	
<b>cat</b>	paint	<b>kecurian</b>	to steal
<b>catat</b>		<b>pencuri</b>	theft
<b>mencatat</b>	to note down	<b>cuti*</b>	thief
<b>catatan</b>	notes	<b>bercuti</b>	
<b>cawan</b>	cup	<b>percutian</b>	to go on holiday
<b>secawan</b>	a cup of	<b>dawah</b>	holiday
<b>cek kembara</b>	traveller's	<b>daerah</b>	drugs
		<b>pegawai daerah</b>	area, district
			district officer

<b>dagang*</b>		<b>dengar</b>	to hear, listen
<b>berdagang</b>	to trade	<b>pendengaran</b>	hearing
<b>perdagangan</b>	trade	<b>terdengar</b>	can be heard
<b>dahulu, dulu</b>	before	<b>derita*</b>	
<b>dakap*</b>		<b>menderita</b>	to suffer
<b>mendakap</b>	to embrace	<b>penderitaan</b>	suffering
<b>dakapan (n)</b>	embrace	<b>derma (n)</b>	donation
<b>dalam</b>	in	<b>menderma</b>	to donate
<b>di dalam</b>	inside	<b>dewan</b>	hall
<b>damping*</b>		<b>Dewan Bahasa dan Pustaka</b>	National Language and Literacy Bureau
<b>berdamping</b>	to be with	<b>dewasa</b>	adult
<b>berdampingan</b>		<b>di (prep)</b>	at, on, in
<b>didampingi</b>	accompanied by	<b>dia</b>	he/she/it
<b>dan</b>	and	<b>diam</b>	to be quiet
<b>dansa</b>	a dance	<b>didik*</b>	
<b>berdansa</b>	to dance	<b>mendidik</b>	to teach
<b>dapat*</b>		<b>pendidik</b>	teacher
<b>terdapat</b>		<b>pendidikan</b>	education
<b>mendapat</b>	to get	<b>dinding</b>	wall
<b>mendapatkan</b>		<b>diri*</b>	
<b>pendapat</b>	idea	<b>berdiri</b>	to stand
<b>pendapatkan</b>	income	<b>mendirikan</b>	to build
<b>dapur</b>	kitchen	<b>pendirian</b>	standpoint
<b>darat (n)</b>	land	<b>terdiri</b>	to consist of
<b>mendarat</b>	to land	<b>doa (n)</b>	prayer
<b>pendaratan</b>	landing	<b>berdoa</b>	to say a prayer
<b>dari (prep)</b>	from ( <i>as in</i> from A to B)	<b>doktor</b>	doctor
<b>daripada (prep)</b>	than ( <i>as in</i> stronger than)	<b>dokumen</b>	document
<b>darjah</b>	standard, class	<b>dua</b>	two
<b>datang</b>	to arrive, to come	<b>kedua-dua</b>	both
<b>datuk</b>	grandfather	<b>duduk</b>	
<b>daya/ter</b>	having the ability	<b>mendudukkan</b>	to sit sm
<b>dedikasi (n)</b>	dedication	<b>menduduki</b>	to occupy
<b>berdedikasi</b>	dedicated	<b>penduduk</b>	population
<b>dekat (prep)</b>	with dedication	<b>pendudukan</b>	occupation
<b>demonstrasi (n)</b>	near	<b>kedudukan</b>	status
<b>berdemonstrasi</b>	demonstration	<b>duga*</b>	to come to one's mind
<b>dengan (prep)</b>	to demonstrate	<b>tak terduga</b>	did not enter one's mind
	and/with		

<b>duit</b>	money; <i>also wang</i>	<b>tergadai</b>	pawned	
<b>duka (adj)</b>	sad	<b>gadis</b>	young girl	
<b>dulu</b>	first, previously, before; <i>also dahulu</i>	<b>gaduh*</b>	<b>bergaduh</b>	to fight/argue
<b>dunia</b>	world	<b>pergaduhan</b>	a fight/argument	
<b>meninggal</b>	to die	<b>gaji</b>	salary	
<b>dunia</b>		<b>bergaji</b>	to have a salary	
<b>menggalak</b>		<b>galak*</b>		
<b>duta</b>	ambassador	<b>menggalak(an)</b>	to encourage	
<b>kedutaan</b>	embassy	<b>galakan</b>	encouragement	
<b>ekonomi</b>	economy	<b>gambar</b>	picture, photographs	
<b>ekor</b>	tail, for animals	<b>juru gambar</b>	photographer	
<b>eksport</b>	to export	<b>ganggu*</b>		
<b>ekspres</b>	express	<b>menganggu(i)</b>	to disturb	
<b>elok</b>	nice	<b>gangguan</b>	disturbance	
<b>emak</b>	mother; <i>also mak</i>	<b>ganti*</b>		
<b>emas</b>	gold; <i>also mas</i>	<b>mengganti</b>	to change/ replace	
<b>empat</b>	four	<b>menggantikan</b>		
<b>enak</b>	delicious	<b>gantung*</b>		
<b>enam</b>	six	<b>menggantung</b>	to hang	
<b>Encik</b>	sir, mister	<b>tergantung</b>	already hung	
<b>enggan</b>	to refuse	<b>garaj</b>	garage	
<b>enjin</b>	engine	<b>gaul*</b>		
<b>esok</b>	tomorrow	<b>bergaul</b>	to mix	
<b>faham</b>		<b>gaya</b>	style	
<b>memaham</b>	to understand	<b>bergaya</b>	to be fashion- able, stylish	
<b>memahami</b>		<b>gelak/ter</b>		
<b>fail</b>	file	<b>gelak</b>	to laugh	
<b>fasih</b>	fluent	<b>gelisah</b>	uncontrollably	
<b>fesyen</b>	fashion	<b>gemar</b>		
<b>fesyen rambut</b>	hairstyle	<b>digemari</b>	like	
<b>fikir*</b>		<b>gembira (adj)</b>	is liked by	
<b>berfikir</b>	to think	<b>bergembira</b>	happy	
<b>memikirkan</b>	to think about something	<b>kegembiraan</b>	to be happy	
<b>filem</b>	film	<b>gemuk</b>	happiness	
<b>gadai*</b>		<b>gerai</b>	fat	
<b>bergadai</b>	to pawn	<b>gerai</b>	stall	

<b>gerak langkah</b>	movement	<b>menghalau</b>	to chase out
<b>giat*</b>		<b>hampir</b>	almost, nearly
<b>bergiat</b>	to be active	<b>menghampiri</b>	to approach
<b>kegiatan</b>	activities	<b>berhampiran</b>	nearby
<b>gigi</b>	teeth	<b>handal</b>	skilful
<b>gigit*</b>		<b>kehandalan</b>	skill
<b>menggigit</b>	to bite	<b>hantar*</b>	
<b>tergigit</b>	to accidentally bite	<b>menghantar</b>	to send
<b>goreng</b>	to fry	<b>(kan)</b>	
<b>gosok</b>	to iron	<b>hanya</b>	only
<b>gula</b>	sugar	<b>haram</b>	illegal
<b>guna*</b>		<b>harap*</b>	
<b>mengguna</b>	to use	<b>berharap (vi)</b>	
<b>menggunakan</b>		<b>mengharapkan</b>	to hope for st
<b>berguna</b>	useful	<b>harapan</b>	hope, expectation
<b>gunung</b>	mountain	<b>harga</b>	price
<b>guru</b>	teacher; <i>also cik</i>	<b>berharga</b>	to cost
	<b>gu</b>	<b>hari</b>	day
<b>habis</b>	to finish	<b>hari jadi</b>	birthday
<b>menghabiskan</b>	to finish st	<b>Hari Raya</b>	<i>a Muslim</i>
<b>-masa</b>	to spend time		<i>religious</i>
<b>hadap*</b>			<i>celebration at</i>
<b>berhadap</b>	to face		<i>the end of</i>
<b>menghadapi</b>	to face		<i>Ramadan</i>
<b>hadapan</b>	in front	<b>harta benda</b>	properties
<b>hadiah</b>	present, gift	<b>haru</b>	
<b>menghadiah-kan</b>	to give a present	<b>terharu</b>	to be sad, upset
<b>hadir</b>		<b>harus</b>	must, should
<b>menghadiri</b>	to attend, to be present	<b>hati</b>	heart
	presence	<b>berhati-hati</b>	to be cautious
<b>kehadiran</b>		<b>perhati</b>	to watch, to observe
<b>hairan</b>		<b>memerhatikan</b>	to watch
<b>menghairiran-kan</b>	to be shocked/ perplexed	<b>perhatian</b>	attention
<b>haiwan</b>	animals	<b>hebat</b>	fantastic
<b>taman haiwan</b>	zoo	<b>hendak</b>	to want
<b>hal ehwal</b>	affairs	<b>nak</b>	<i>short for hendak</i>
<b>halaman</b>	compound/yard	<b>hias*</b>	
<b>halau</b>		<b>berhias</b>	to decorate
		<b>mengiasi</b>	decorating
		<b>perhiasan</b>	decoration

<b>hidang</b>		<b>India (orang)</b>	Indian
<b>menghidang-</b>	to serve	<b>industri</b>	industry
<b>kan</b>		<b>perindustrian</b>	industrial
<b>hidangan</b>	meal that is laid out on the table	<b>ingat</b>	
<b>terhidang</b>	ready served	<b>mengingatkan</b>	to remind
<b>hidu*</b>		<b>teringat</b>	to remember
<b>menghidu</b>	to smell	<b>peringatan</b>	reminder
<b>hidup</b>	to live	<b>Inggeris</b>	English
<b>menghidupkan</b>	to bring to life	<b>ingin</b>	to want/desire
<b>kehidupan</b>	life	<b>ini</b>	this
<b>taraf hidup</b>	standard of living	<b>istana</b>	palace
<b>hijau</b>	green	<b>isteri</b>	wife
<b>-tua</b>	dark green	<b>beristeri</b>	to have a wife
<b>-muda</b>	light green	<b>istimewa</b>	special
<b>hitam</b>	black	<b>itu</b>	that
<b>hormat</b>		<b>jadi*</b>	
<b>menghormati</b>	to respect	<b>menjadi</b>	to become
<b>kehormatan</b>	respectability	<b>kejadian</b>	incident
<b>hotel</b>	hotel	<b>jadi</b>	so ( <i>as in</i> so he went home)
<b>hubung*</b>		<b>jaga*</b>	
<b>berhubung</b>	in connection with, to contact	<b>menjaga</b>	to take care of
<b>hubungan</b>	relation	<b>penjaga</b>	the caretaker
<b>perhubungan</b>	relationship	<b>jalan</b>	road
<b>hujan</b>	rain	<b>berjalan</b>	to walk
<b>hujung</b>	at the end	<b>perjalanan</b>	journey
<b>hukum*</b>		<b>menjalankan</b>	to carry out st
<b>hukuman</b>	sentence (after a trial)	<b>jam</b>	watch, clock
<b>huru hara</b>	chaotic	<b>jambak</b>	
<b>hutang</b>	debt	<b>sejambak</b>	a bouquet
<b>berhutang</b>	to borrow	<b>jamin</b>	to assure/guarantee
<b>ibu</b>	mother; <i>also emak, mak</i>	<b>menjaminkan</b>	
<b>ibu bapa</b>	parents	<b>terjamin</b>	assured/guaranteed
<b>ikan</b>	fish	<b>jam*</b>	
<b>ilmu alam</b>	geography	<b>jamuan</b>	party
<b>indah (adj)</b>	beautiful	<b>jamuan malam</b>	dinner party
		<b>jangan</b>	don't
		<b>jangkit</b>	
		<b>berjangkit</b>	to infect
		<b>penyakit</b>	infectious disease

<b>berjangkit</b>		<b>penjual</b>	seller
<b>janji (n)</b>	promise	<b>penjualan</b>	sale
<b>berjanji</b>	to promise	<b>judi</b>	
<b>menjanjikan</b>	to promise st to sb	<b>berjudi</b>	to gamble
<b>perjanjian</b>	agreement	<b>perjudian (n)</b>	gambling
<b>temujanji</b>	appointment	<b>juga</b>	also
<b>jarang</b>	seldom	<b>jujur (adj)</b>	honest
<b>jari</b>	finger	<b>kejujuran (n)</b>	honesty
<b>jatuh (vi)</b>	to fall	<b>Jumaat</b>	Friday
<b>menjatuhkan</b>	to let fall	<b>jumpa*</b>	
<b>kejatuhan</b>	the decline of	<b>berjumpa</b>	to meet
<b>jauh</b>	far	<b>perjumpaan</b>	a meeting
<b>berjauhan</b>	to be far apart	<b>menjumpai</b>	to find
<b>jawab*</b>		<b>jururawat</b>	nurse
<b>menjawab</b>	to answer	<b>juru gambar</b>	cameraman, photographer
<b>jawapan</b>	answer	<b>kabinet</b>	cabinet
<b>jaya</b>		<b>kaca</b>	glass
<b>berjaya</b>	to succeed	<b>kacak (adj)</b>	good-looking, handsome
<b>kejayaan</b>	success	<b>Jelapang Padi</b>	Rice Bowl (of Malaysia)
		<b>jelas</b>	clear
		<b>menjelaskan</b>	to explain
		<b>penjelasan</b>	explanation
<b>jemput*</b>		<b>jemput</b>	to invite, to fetch
		<b>jemputan</b>	invitation
		<b>para jemputan</b>	guests
		<b>mengagum-kan</b>	
<b>jemur</b>		<b>kahwin</b>	
<b>menjemur</b>	to hang out to dry	<b>berkahwin</b>	to marry
<b>jenis</b>	type (e.g. type of person)	<b>mengahwini</b>	to marry
			someone
		<b>mengahwin-kan</b>	to marry off smn
<b>jerit*</b>		<b>perkahwinan</b>	marriage
		<b>kajian</b>	research
<b>menjerit</b>	to scream	<b>kakak</b>	elder sister
<b>jiran</b>	neighbour	<b>kaki</b>	leg, foot
<b>berjiran</b>	to be neighbours with	<b>kakitangan</b>	staff
<b>jual</b>		<b>kalah</b>	to lose
<b>menjual</b>	to sell	<b>mengalahkan</b>	to defeat smn (vt)
<b>menjualkan</b>			

<b>kekalah</b> (n)	the defeat	<b>kau</b>	you (informal)
<b>kalau</b>	if	<b>kawal*</b>	
<b>kali</b>	times, e.g. <b>dua</b>	<b>mengawal</b> (vt)	to control
	<b>kali dua</b> . . . two	<b>pengawal</b>	controller
	times two; <b>tiga</b>	<b>kawan</b> (n)	friend
	<b>kali</b> . . . three	<b>berkawan</b> (vi)	to be friends
	times	<b>kawasan</b>	area
<b>kalkulator</b>	calculator	<b>kaya</b> (adj)	rich
<b>kamera</b>	camera	<b>memper-</b>	to enrich
<b>kami</b>	we ( <i>excluding person spoken to</i> ), us	<b>kayakan</b>	
<b>kampung</b>	village	<b>kekayaan</b> (n)	wealth
<b>kamu</b>	you (informal)	<b>ke</b> (prep)	to
<b>kanan</b>	right	<b>kebun</b>	garden
<b>kantin</b>	canteen	<b>kecil</b>	small
<b>kapal</b>	ship	<b>kecuali</b>	unless
<b>perkapalan</b>	shipping	<b>kedai</b>	shop
<b>kapal terbang</b>	aeroplane	<b>kejam</b> (adj)	cruel, harsh
<b>karang*</b>		<b>kejar*</b>	
<b>mengarang</b>	to compose, to (vt) write	<b>mengejar</b> (vt)	to chase after, to rush
<b>pengarang</b>	editor	<b>kejut*</b>	
<b>karangan</b> (n)	essay, writing	<b>terkejut</b>	surprised
<b>kari</b>	curry	<b>kelab</b>	club
<b>kasih</b> (n)	love	<b>kelip</b>	
<b>menghasihi</b> (vt)	to love	<b>berkelip</b> (vi)	to twinkle
<b>dikasihi</b>	to be loved	<b>keliru</b>	
<b>kasihan</b>		<b>mengelirukan</b>	confusing
<b>mengasihani</b>	to have pity on (vt)	<b>kelmarin</b>	yesterday
<b>belas kasihan</b>	pity	<b>kelola*</b>	
		<b>pengelola</b>	organiser
<b>kastam</b>	custom	<b>keluar</b>	to go out
<b>kasut</b>	shoes	<b>mengeluar-</b>	to get smn out
<b>kata</b>		<b>kan</b> (vt)	
<b>berkata</b> (vi)	to say	<b>kemas</b>	tidy
<b>mengatakan</b>		<b>mengemas</b>	to tidy up
			(vt)
<b>perkataan</b> (n)	word	<b>kembali</b>	to return
<b>mengata</b> (vt)	to gossip	<b>mengem-</b>	to return st to
		<b>balikan</b> (vt)	smn
<b>katil</b>	bed	<b>kembar</b>	twins
		<b>kenal</b>	
		<b>berkenal</b> (vi)	to get to know

<b>mengenal</b> (vt)	to recognize	<b>khkus</b>	specific
<b>terkenal</b>	famous	<b>kilang</b>	factory
<b>kenang*</b>		<b>kira*</b>	
<b>mengenang</b>	to remember	<b>kira-kira</b>	approximately, about
	(vt)		
<b>kenangan</b> (n)	memory	<b>mengira</b> (vt)	to count
<b>kenderaan</b>	transport	<b>kirim*</b>	
<b>kenduri</b>	a feast	<b>mengirim</b> (vt)	to send
<b>kepala</b>	head	<b>kisah</b>	story, an account of
<b>mengepalai</b>	to head		
	(vt)	<b>kita</b>	we ( <i>including person spoken to</i> )
<b>kepung</b>			
<b>mengepong</b>	to surround	<b>klinik</b>	clinic
	(vt)	<b>kocek</b>	pocket
<b>kerani</b>	clerk	<b>kolam</b>	pool
<b>keras</b> (adj)	hard	<b>kolam renang</b>	swimming pool
<b>berkeras</b> (vi)	to insist	<b>kolej</b>	college
<b>kereta</b>	car	<b>kolum</b>	column
<b>berkereta</b> (vi)	to go by car	<b>kompong</b>	<i>a special drum</i> <i>used during special occasions such as weddings</i>
<b>kerja*</b>		<b>kopi</b>	coffee
<b>bekerja</b> (vi)	to work	<b>kot</b>	coat
<b>pekerja</b>	worker	<b>kotak</b>	box
<b>pekerjaan</b> (n)	job, occupation	<b>kotor</b> (adj)	dirty
<b>mengerjakan</b>	to do st	<b>kredit</b>	credit
	(vt)	<b>kuah</b>	gravy
<b>kertas</b>	paper	<b>kuasa</b>	power
<b>kertas kerja</b>	working paper	<b>berkuasa</b> (vi)	to have the authority
<b>kerumun*</b>		<b>kucing</b>	cat
<b>berkerumun</b>	to surround/	<b>kuih</b>	cakes
	(vi)	<b>kukuh</b> (adj)	stable, strong
<b>mengerumuni</b> (vt)	gather/flock	<b>kuliah</b>	lecture
<b>kerusi</b>	chair	<b>kulit</b>	skin/complexion
<b>kesal*</b>			leather (bag)
<b>menyesal</b> (vi)	to regret	<b>kunc</b>	key
<b>ketagih</b>	to be addicted to	<b>mengunci</b> (vt)	to lock
<b>ketat</b> (adj)	tight	<b>terkunci</b>	to lock
<b>ketua</b>	head, chief		
<b>khabar</b>	news		
<b>surat khabar</b>	newspaper		
<b>apa khabar</b>	how are you?		
<b>Khamis</b>	Thursday		
<b>khuatir</b>	to worry		

<b>kuning</b>	accidentally	<b>lanjut</b>	customers
<b>kunjung</b>	yellow	<b>melanjutkan</b>	
<b>mengunjungi</b> (vt)	to visit	(vt)	to further
<b>berkunjung</b> (vi)		<b>lantai</b>	floor
<b>kunjungan</b> (n)	a visit	<b>lapangan</b>	airport
<b>kurang</b>	less	<b>terbang</b>	
<b>kurnia</b>	blessings	<b>lapar</b>	hungry
<b>kutip*</b>		<b>kelaparan</b>	hunger
<b>mengutip</b> (vt)	to collect	<b>lari</b>	
<b>lagu</b>	song	<b>berlari</b> (vi)	to run
<b>lain</b>	other, different, another	<b>latih*</b>	
<b>lain-lain</b>	others	<b>berlatih</b> (vi)	to train, to practise
<b>laju</b> (adj)	fast	<b>melatih</b> (vt)	to train smn
<b>laksana*</b>		<b>latihan</b> (n)	training
<b>melaksanakan</b> (vt)	to implement	<b>pelatih</b>	trainer
<b>perlaksanaan</b> (n)	implementation	<b>laut</b>	sea
<b>laku*</b>		<b>layak*</b>	
<b>berlaku</b> (vi)	to happen	<b>kelayakan</b> (n)	qualifications
<b>melakukan</b> (vt)	to do	<b>layan</b>	
<b>kelakuan</b> (n)	behaviour	<b>melayan</b> (vt)	to entertain
<b>lalu</b>	to pass by	<b>melayani</b> (vt)	
<b>melalui</b> (vt)	via	<b>pelayan</b>	waitress/waiter
<b>lalu lintas</b>	traffic	<b>layanan</b> (n)	treatment
<b>lama</b>	old, a long time	<b>layang-layang</b>	kite
<b>lambat</b> (adj)	late	<b>lazat</b> (adj)	delicious
<b>memperlambatkan</b> (vt)	to delay	<b>lebih</b>	more
<b>lampu</b>	light, lamp, lighting	<b>lega</b>	to feel relief
<b>lancar*</b>		<b>lekas</b>	fast, quick
<b>melancarkan</b> (vt)	to launch	<b>lemah</b> (adj)	weak
<b>pelancaran</b> (n)	launching of	<b>kelemahan</b> (n)	weakness
<b>langgan*</b>		<b>lemak</b> (n)	fat
<b>pelanggan</b>	clients,	<b>berlemak</b>	fatty
		<b>lembaga</b>	figure
		<b>lembut</b> (adj)	soft
		<b>lemah lembut</b>	gentle
		<b>lengah</b>	
		<b>berlengah</b> (vi)	to delay
		<b>lesen</b>	licence
		<b>letak</b>	
		<b>terletak</b>	located at

<b>meletakkan</b> (vt)	to place st	<b>macam</b>	forgiveness
<b>letih</b>	tired	<b>mahal</b> (adj)	like
<b>keletihan</b>	exhaustion	<b>mahasiswa</b>	expensive
<b>licin</b> (adj)	smooth	<b>mahu, mau</b>	undergraduate
<b>lihat*</b>		<b>main*</b>	to want
<b>melihat</b> (vt)	to see	<b>bermain</b> (vt)	
<b>penglihatan</b> (n)	sight	<b>pemain</b>	player
<b>kelihatatan</b>	is seen	<b>permainan</b> (n)	a game, toy
<b>lima</b>	five	<b>majikan</b>	employer
<b>liput*</b>		<b>majlis</b>	party
<b>meliputi</b> (vt)	to cover	<b>maju</b>	to advance, progress
<b>liputan</b> (n)	coverage	<b>kemajuan</b> (n)	progress
<b>lompat*</b>		<b>mak</b>	mother; also <b>emak</b>
<b>berlompat-</b> <b>lompat</b> (vi)	to jump up and down	<b>Mak Cik</b>	aunty ( <i>an older woman whose name you do not know</i> )
<b>lorong</b>	lane		
<b>luar</b>	outside	<b>makan*</b>	
<b>luar bandar</b>	rural areas	<b>memakan</b> (vt)	to eat
<b>luar negeri</b>	overseas	<b>makanan</b> (n)	food
<b>luas</b> (adj)	wide	<b>-tengah hari</b>	lunch
<b>meluas</b>	widespread	<b>maksud</b>	meaning
<b>lucu</b> (adj)	funny	<b>malam</b>	night
<b>lukis*</b>		<b>semalam</b>	last night
<b>melukis</b> (vt)	to draw	<b>selamat</b>	good night
<b>lukisan</b> (n)	drawing	<b>malam</b>	
<b>pelukis</b>	artist	<b>malang</b> (adj)	unfortunate
<b>lulus</b> (vt)	to pass	<b>kemalangan</b> (n)	accident
<b>kelulusan</b>	pass	<b>malas</b> (adj)	lazy
<b>lumba</b>		<b>malu</b>	to be ashamed
<b>berlumba</b>	to race	<b>memalukan</b> (vt)	to embarrass
<b>perlumbaan</b>	a race	<b>mampu</b>	to afford
<b>lupa</b>	to forget	<b>mana</b>	where
<b>terlupa</b>		<b>mandi</b>	to bathe
<b>maaf</b>	sorry, excuse me	<b>memandikan</b> (vt)	to bathe someone
<b>memaaafkan</b> (vt)	to forgive	<b>bilik mandi</b>	bathroom
<b>meminta maaf</b>	to ask for forgiveness	<b>manis</b>	sweet
<b>bermaaf-</b> <b>maafan</b>	to forgive and ask for		

<b>marah</b>	to be angry, to scold	<b>kementerian</b>	ministry
<b>memarahkan</b> (vt)	to scold	<b>merah</b>	red
<b>kemarahan</b> (n)	anger	<b>merah jambu</b>	pink
<b>naik marah</b>	to lose one's temper	<b>merah tua</b>	dark red
<b>markah</b>	marks, points	<b>merah muda</b>	light red
<b>masa</b>	time	<b>mercun</b>	fireworks
<b>semasa</b>	at the time	<b>mereka</b>	they, them, their
<b>buang masa</b>	to waste time	<b>meriam</b>	canon
<b>masak*</b>		<b>mesti</b>	must
<b>memasak</b> (vt)	to cook	<b>mesyuarat</b>	meeting
<b>masakan</b> (n)	dish/meal	<b>bermesyuarat</b> (vi)	to have a meeting
<b>tukang masak</b>	chef, cook	<b>mimpi</b>	dream
<b>masalah</b>	problem	<b>bermimpi</b> (vi)	to dream
<b>masih</b>	still	<b>minat</b> (n)	interest
<b>masing-masing</b>	each	<b>berminat</b> (vi)	to be interested
<b>masjid</b>	mosque	<b>meminat</b>	fan
<b>masuk*</b>		<b>minggu</b>	week
<b>memasukkan</b> (vt)	to enter	<b>minta*</b>	
<b>termasuk</b>	including	<b>meminta</b> (vt)	to ask for
<b>mati</b>	die	<b>minum*</b>	
<b>mematikan</b> (vt)	to switch off	<b>meminum</b> (vt)	to drink
<b>kematian</b> (n)	death	<b>minuman</b> (n)	drinks
<b>meja</b>	table	<b>peminum</b>	drinker (unusually of alcoholic drinks)
<b>mekanik</b>	mechanic	<b>minyak</b>	oil
<b>Melayu (orang)</b>	Malay	<b>miskin</b>	poor
<b>memang</b>	true	<b>kemiskinan</b>	poverty
<b>menang</b>	to win	<b>moden</b>	modern
<b>kemenangan</b>	victory	<b>memper-modenkan</b> (vt)	to modernize
<b>pemenang</b>	winner	<b>moga-moga</b>	hopefully
<b>mendung</b> (adj)	cloudy	<b>motosikal</b>	motorcycle
<b>mengapa</b>	why	<b>muat*</b>	
<b>tak mengapa</b>	never mind, that's all right	<b>muatan</b>	load
<b>menteri</b>	minister	<b>muda</b> (adj)	young
<b>menteri besar</b>	chief minister	<b>termuda</b>	the youngest
<b>perdana</b>	prime minister	<b>mudah</b> (n)	easy

<b>mula*</b>		<b>nelayan</b>	fishermen
<b>bermula</b> (vi)	to start	<b>nganga</b>	to open the mouth wide
<b>memulakan</b>	to start st	<b>(ter)nganga</b>	
(vt)		<b>nikmat</b>	enjoyment
<b>permulaan</b> (n)	the start of st	<b>menikmati</b>	to enjoy
<b>mulia</b>	auspicious	<b>nilai</b>	value
<b>muncul*</b>	to appear	<b>nombor</b>	number
<b>kemunculan</b> (n)	appearance	<b>nyaman</b>	fresh
<b>mungkin</b>	perhaps, may be	<b>penyaman</b>	air conditioner
<b>muntah</b>	to vomit	<b>nyanyi*</b>	
<b>murah</b> (adj)	cheap	<b>menyanyi</b> (vt)	to sing
<b>murah hati</b>	generous	<b>penyanyi</b>	singer
<b>murid</b>	pupil	<b>nyanyian</b> (n)	song
<b>musim</b>	season	<b>nyata</b>	obvious
<b>tengkujuh</b>	monsoon	<b>kenyataan</b>	a reality
<b>musuh</b>	enemy	<b>olah*</b>	
<b>permusuhan</b>	enmity	<b>mengolah</b> (vt)	to put together
<b>mutu</b>	quality	<b>oleh</b>	by
<b>bermutu</b>	with quality	<b>memperolehi</b> (vt)	to obtain
<b>muzik</b>	music	<b>orang</b>	people
<b>naik</b>	to ride	<b>seorang</b>	alone
<b>menaiki</b> (vt)		<b>seseorang</b>	someone
<b>menaikkan</b> (vt)	to raise st	<b>pada</b>	at, on, in
<b>nakal</b> (adj)	naughty	<b>padan</b>	to match, to suit
<b>nama</b>	name	<b>padang</b>	field
<b>nampak</b>	to see	<b>pagi</b>	morning
<b>nampaknya</b>	it seems	<b>selamat pagi</b>	good morning
<b>nanti</b>	wait	<b>pakai*</b>	
<b>menanti</b>	to wait	<b>memakai</b> (vt)	to wear, to use
<b>nasib</b>	luck	<b>pemakai</b>	wearer
<b>bernasib baik</b>	to be fortunate	<b>pakaian</b> (n)	clothes
<b>nasi</b>	rice (i.e. cooked)	<b>paksa</b>	to force
<b>nasi goreng</b>	fried rice	<b>terpaksa</b>	must
<b>nasihat</b> (n)	advice	<b>pameran</b>	exhibition
<b>menasihatkhan</b> (vi)	to advise	<b>pampang</b>	
<b>menasihati</b> (vt)	to advise	<b>terpampang</b>	to be displayed
<b>negara</b>	country		
<b>negeri</b>	state		

<b>panas</b> (adj)	openly	<b>pejabat</b>	office
<b>memanas</b> (vi)	hot	<b>jabatan</b>	department
<b>memanaskan</b>	to become hot	<b>pekkak</b>	deaf
(vt)		<b>pelamin</b>	dais for bride and groom
<b>kepanasan</b> (n)	heat	<b>pelancong</b>	tourist
<b>pancar</b>		<b>melancong</b> (vi)	to tour
<b>memancar</b> (vi)	to shine	<b>pelancongan</b>	tourism
<b>pandang*</b>			(n)
<b>memandang</b>	to look	<b>peluk</b>	
(vt)		<b>berpeluk</b> (vi)	to embrace
<b>pandangan</b> (n)	view	<b>memeluk</b> (vt)	to embrace
<b>pemandangan</b>	scenery	<b>pelukan</b> (n)	embrace
(n)		<b>berpeluk-peluk</b>	to embrace repeatedly
<b>pandu*</b>		<b>pena</b>	pen
<b>memandu</b> (vt)	to drive	<b>penat</b>	tired
<b>pemandu</b>	driver	<b>pendek</b>	short
<b>panggil</b>		<b>penjara</b>	jail
<b>memanggil</b> (vt)	to call	<b>pengantin</b>	bride and groom
<b>pangkat</b>		<b>penghuni</b>	occupants
<b>naik pangkat</b>	to be promoted	<b>penting</b>	important
<b>panjang</b> (adj)	long	<b>mementingkan</b>	to regard as important
<b>panjat</b>		<b>Perancis</b>	French
<b>memanjat</b> (vt)	to climb	<b>percaya</b>	
<b>pantai</b>	beach	<b>mempercayai</b>	to believe
<b>antas</b>	swiftly, quickly	<b>kepercayaan</b>	belief
<b>pantun</b>	<i>Malay rhyme</i>	<b>perempuan</b>	woman
<b>papan</b>	wood	<b>periksa*</b>	
<b>papan tingkat</b>	shelves	<b>memeriksa</b>	to check
<b>pasang</b>		<b>pemeriksaan</b>	check up
<b>memasang</b> (vt)	to fit, to fix	<b>periksa</b>	to test
<b>pasar</b>	market	<b>peperiksaan</b>	examinations
<b>pasar raya</b>	supermarket	<b>perintah</b>	order
<b>pasu</b>	pot (flower)	<b>memerintah</b>	to order
<b>pasukan</b>	team	<b>pemerintah</b>	ruler
<b>payung</b>	umbrella	<b>pemerintahan</b>	reign, rule
<b>pecah</b>		<b>periuk</b>	pots (for cooking)
<b>memecah</b> (vt)	to break	<b>perkara</b>	thing, matter
<b>pedas</b> (adj)	hot (taste)	<b>perlu</b>	
<b>pegawai</b>	officer	<b>memerlukan</b>	to need
<b>pegun</b>			
<b>terpegun</b>	to be stunned		

<b>memerlukan</b>	necessity	<b>mempraktikan</b>	to practise
<b>keperluan</b>	carpet	<b>kan</b>	
<b>permaidani</b>	to have done or experienced	<b>presiden</b>	president
<b>pernah</b>	something	<b>produser</b>	producer
		<b>projek</b>	project
		<b>puas*</b>	
		<b>berpuas hati</b>	to be satisfied
		<b>memuaskan</b>	satisfied
		<b>puasa</b>	
		* <b>berpuasa</b>	to fast
		<b>bulan puasa</b>	fasting month
		<b>publisiti</b>	publicity
		<b>puji*</b>	
		<b>memuji</b>	to praise
		<b>pujian</b>	praise
		<b>pukul*</b>	
		<b>memukul</b>	to hit, to strike
		<b>pukul</b>	o'clock
		<b>pulang</b>	to return, to go home
		<b>memulangkan</b>	
		<b>kepulangan</b>	the homecoming
		<b>pulau</b>	island
		<b>Pulau Pinang</b>	Penang
		<b>puluh</b>	ten
		<b>punya*</b>	
		<b>mempunyai</b>	to have
		<b>kepunyaan</b>	belonging to
		<b>pusat</b>	centre
		<b>pusing</b>	to turn
		<b>putera/i</b>	prince/princess
		<b>putih</b>	white
		<b>putus*</b>	
		<b>memutuskan</b>	to decide
		<b>keputusan</b>	result
		<b>Rabu</b>	Wednesday
		<b>ragu*</b>	
		<b>meragui</b>	to feel
			apprehensive
			apprehension
		<b>keraguan</b>	king
		<b>raja</b>	

<b>kerajaan</b>	government	<b>kolam</b>	swimming pool
<b>rajin</b>	hardworking, diligent	<b>renang</b>	
<b>kerajinan</b>	diligence	<b>rendah</b>	short, low
<b>rakyat</b>	citizen	<b>merendahkan</b>	to lower
<b>kerakyatan</b>	citizenship	<b>restoran</b>	restaurant
<b>Ramadan</b>	<i>the month of fasting for Muslims</i>	<b>rehat</b>	
<b>ramah</b>	friendly, talkative	<b>berehat</b>	to rest
<b>ramai</b>	many (applied to people)	<b>istirehat</b>	
<b>rambutan</b>	<i>round fruit with hairy skin, sweet and succulent</i>	<b>ribu</b>	thousand
		<b>rindu</b>	to long for
		<b>merindui</b>	
<b>rancang*</b>		<b>ringan (adj)</b>	light
<b>berancang</b>	to plan	<b>ringgit</b>	<i>Malaysian currency</i>
<b>merancangkan</b>		<b>ringkas</b>	brief
<b>rancangan</b>	programme	<b>riuh rendah</b>	noisy
<b>rantai</b>	chain, necklace	<b>rokok</b>	cigarette
<b>rapi</b>	neat, tidy	<b>merokok</b>	to smoke
<b>rasa*</b>		<b>rosak</b>	faulty
<b>berasa</b>	to feel	<b>merosakan</b>	to make faulty
<b>merasakan</b>		<b>kerosakan</b>	fault
<b>perasaan</b>	feelings, emotions	<b>roti</b>	bread
<b>ratap*</b>		<b>rujuk*</b>	
<b>meratap</b>	to mourn	<b>merujuk</b>	to refer
<b>rawat*</b>		<b>rujukan</b>	reference
<b>merawat</b>	to treat	<b>rumah</b>	house
<b>rawatan</b>	treatment	<b>perumahan</b>	housing
		<b>rumah sakit</b>	hospital
<b>raya</b>		<b>runding*</b>	
<b>merayakan</b>	to celebrate	<b>berunding</b>	to discuss
<b>Hari Raya</b>	Muslim religious festival	<b>rundingan</b>	conference
<b>reban</b>	coop (chicken coop)	<b>runsing</b>	worried, anxiety
<b>reben</b>	ribbon	<b>sabar</b>	
<b>renang</b>		<b>kesabaran</b>	to be patient
<b>berenang</b>	to swim	<b>Sabtu</b>	patience
		<b>sabun</b>	Saturday
<b>reban</b>	coop (chicken coop)	<b>sahabat</b>	close friend
<b>reben</b>	ribbon	<b>sahabat pena</b>	pen friend
<b>renang</b>		<b>sains</b>	science
<b>berenang</b>		<b>saiz</b>	size
		<b>saja</b>	only, just

<b>sakit</b>	ill	<b>menyapu</b>	to sweep
<b>kesakitan</b>	pain	<b>sapu tangan</b>	handkerchief
<b>penyakit</b>	illness	<b>sara*</b>	
<b>saksi</b>	witness	<b>bersara</b>	to retire
<b>menyaksikan</b>	to witness	<b>persaraan</b>	retirement
<b>salah (n)</b>	wrong	<b>sarung</b>	sarong
<b>bersalah</b>	to be guilty	<b>_ tangan</b>	gloves
<b>kesalahan (n)</b>	wrongdoing	<b>satu</b>	one
<b>salam</b>	regards	<b>kesatuan</b>	association
<b>bersalam</b>	to shake hands in	<b>saudara</b>	<i>a term used to address a male</i>
<b>bersalam-</b>	greetings	<b>saudari</b>	<i>a term used to address a female</i>
<b>salji</b>	snow		
<b>sama</b>	same	<b>saudara mara</b>	relatives
<b>bersama</b>	to be together	<b>saya</b>	I, me, my
<b>sama-sama</b>	<i>reply to thank</i>	<b>sayang</b>	love
	<i>you meaning</i>	<b>tersayang</b>	much-loved
	<i>you're welcome</i>	<b>kesayangan</b>	pet, favourite
<b>sama ada</b>	whether	<b>sayang sekali</b>	what a pity
<b>sambilan</b>	part-time	<b>sayur</b>	vegetables
<b>sambung</b>		<b>sebab</b>	because
<b>bersambung</b>	to continue	<b>sebab apa</b>	why
<b>menyambung</b>		<b>sebentar</b>	a while
<b>sambungan</b>	continuation	<b>sedap</b>	delicious
<b>sambut*</b>		<b>sedar</b>	to be aware
<b>menyambut</b>	to welcome, to greet	<b>sedia*</b>	
		<b>menyediakan</b>	to prepare
<b>sampah</b>	rubbish	<b>sedih (adj)</b>	sad
<b>sampai</b>	to reach, until	<b>bersedih</b>	to be sad
<b>sampan</b>	sampan, boat	<b>menyedihkan</b>	to make sad
<b>sana</b>	there	<b>kesedihan</b>	sadness
<b>sandar*</b>		<b>sedikit/sikit</b>	a little/a few
<b>tersandar</b>	to sit back (in- voluntarily)	<b>segar</b>	fresh
<b>sanding*</b>		<b>segera</b>	immediately, at once
<b>bersanding</b>	to sit side by side (in marriage ceremony)	<b>roti segera</b>	instant bread
		<b>sejak</b>	since
<b>persandingan</b>	marriage ceremony	<b>sejarah</b>	history
		<b>sejuk (adj)</b>	cold
<b>sanggup</b>	willing	<b>kesejukan</b>	cold
<b>sapu*</b>		<b>sekali</b>	once

<b>_ sekala</b>	once in a while	<b>kan</b>	
<b>sekarang</b>	now	<b>senarai</b>	list
<b>sekian</b>	that's all	<b>sengaja</b>	purposely
<b>sekitar</b>	around	<b>sentiasa</b>	always
<b>sekolah</b>	school	<b>sentuh*</b>	
<b>selalu</b>	always	<b>menyentuh</b>	to touch
<b>selamat</b>	safe	<b>sentuhan (n)</b>	touch
<b>selamat pagi</b>	good morning	<b>senyap</b>	silence
<b>-petang</b>	afternoon	<b>senyum(ter)</b>	to smile
<b>-tengah hari</b>	afternoon	<b>sepah*</b>	
<b>-datang</b>	welcome, etc.	<b>bersepah</b>	to be in a mess
<b>keselamatan</b>	safety	<b>sepak takraw</b>	<i>a game of rattan ball</i>
<b>Selasa</b>	Tuesday	<b>separuh</b>	half, middle
<b>selendang</b>	long scarf	<b>separuh umur</b>	middle age
<b>selerak*</b>		<b>seperti</b>	like
<b>berselerak</b>	to be in a mess	<b>sepi</b>	quiet
<b>selesa</b>	comfortable	<b>serah*</b>	
<b>selesai</b>		<b>menyerah</b>	to hand over
<b>menyelesaikan</b>	to finish, to complete	<b>seri*</b>	
<b>seledik</b>		<b>menyerikan</b>	to brighten up, enhance
<b>penyelidikan</b>	research	<b>sering</b>	often
<b>seluar</b>	trousers	<b>seronok</b>	to be happy, to enjoy
<b>seludup*</b>		<b>serta merta</b>	immediately
<b>menyeludup</b>	to smuggle	<b>sesal/meny</b>	to regret
<b>penyeludup</b>	smuggler	<b>sesat</b>	to lose one's way
<b>sembahyang</b>	to pray	<b>sesuai</b>	apt, matching
<b>semai*</b>		<b>setem</b>	stamp
<b>tersemai</b>	implanted	<b>seterika</b>	iron
<b>sembang</b>		<b>setia</b>	loyal
<b>bersempang</b>	to chit-chat	<b>kesetiaan</b>	loyalty
<b>sembelih</b>	to slaughter	<b>setiausaha</b>	secretary
<b>sembilan</b>	nine	<b>setuju*</b>	
<b>sempat</b>	to have the opportunity	<b>bersetuju</b>	to agree
<b>semua</b>	all	<b>persetujuan</b>	agreement
<b>kesemuanya</b>	all of it	<b>sewa*</b>	
<b>senam*</b>		<b>menyewa</b>	to rent
<b>bersenam</b>	to exercise	<b>disewakan</b>	to rent out
<b>senaman</b>	exercise	<b>siap</b>	
<b>senang (adj)</b>	easy, happy	<b>menyiapkan</b>	to get ready
<b>menyenang-</b>	to make happy		

<b>bersiap sedia persiapan</b>		<b>menyuntik suntikan</b>	to inject vaccination
<b>siapa</b>	preparation who, whom whose	<b>sungkur*</b>	
<b>siar*</b>		<b>tersungkur</b>	to fall flat on the face
<b>bersiar-siar</b>	to go sightseeing	<b>supaya</b>	so that
<b>siasat*</b>		<b>surat</b>	letter
<b>menyiasat</b>	to investigate	<b>surat khabar</b>	newspaper
<b>penyiasatan</b>	investigation	<b>suruh*</b>	
<b>sibuk</b>	busy	<b>menyuruh</b>	to ask smn to do st
<b>kesibukan</b>		<b>susah</b>	difficult, hard
<b>sihat</b>	fine, healthy	<b>kesusahan</b>	difficulty
<b>kesihatan</b>	health	<b>susu</b>	milk
<b>sikap</b>	attitude	<b>menyusukan</b>	to feed milk to a child
<b>bersikap</b>	to have a certain attitude	<b>susun</b>	
<b>sila</b>	<i>polite request to mean 'please, do'</i>	<b>menyusun</b>	to arrange
<b>silap</b>	mistake	<b>tersusun</b>	ready arranged
<b>tersilap</b>	to unintentionally make a mistake	<b>swasta</b>	private
<b>simpan*</b>		<b>syak*</b>	
<b>menyimpan</b>	to keep	<b>mensyaki</b>	to suspect
<b>simpanan</b>	in the care of	<b>syarah*</b>	
<b>singgung</b>		<b>bersyarah</b>	to make a speech
<b>tersinggung</b>	to feel upset, offended	<b>pensyarah</b>	lecturer
<b>sisi</b>	by the side	<b>syukur</b>	to thank God
<b>sistem</b>	system	<b>tadbir*</b>	
<b>situ</b>	there	<b>mentadbir</b>	to administer
<b>soal</b>	to question	<b>pentadbir</b>	administrator
<b>soalan</b>	question	<b>pentadbiran</b>	administration
<b>stesen</b>	station	<b>tadi</b>	just now
<b>suami</b>	husband	<b>tahan*</b>	
<b>sudah</b>	already	<b>menahan</b>	to stop
<b>suka</b>	to like	<b>tahi latat</b>	mole
<b>bersuka-suka</b>	to have fun	<b>tahu/tau*</b>	
<b>kesukaan</b>	favourite	<b>memberitahu/ tau</b>	to tell
<b>sumbangan</b>	contribution	<b>pengetahuan</b>	knowledge
<b>suntik*</b>		<b>berpen-getahuan</b>	with knowledge

<b>taip*</b>		<b>menarik</b>	attractive
<b>menaip</b>	to type	<b>tarikh</b>	date
<b>tahun</b>	year	<b>tasik</b>	lake
<b>takut*</b>		<b>tawar*</b>	
<b>menakutkan</b>	to frighten, to scare	<b>tawaran</b>	offer
<b>ketakutan</b>	fear	<b>tatap</b>	
<b>tali</b>	rope	<b>menatap</b>	to watch
<b>tali pinggang</b>	belt	<b>tebal</b> (adj)	thick
<b>tali leher</b>	neck tie	<b>tegur</b>	
<b>tamak</b>	greedy	<b>menegur</b>	to speak
<b>taman</b>	garden	<b>telatah</b>	antics
<b>taman haiwan</b>	zoo	<b>telefon</b>	telephone
<b>tamat</b>	to finish/to know	<b>menelefon</b>	to phone
<b>menamatkan</b>		<b>teliti</b>	with care
<b>tambah*</b>		<b>telur</b>	egg
<b>menambah</b>	to add, to increase	<b>tembak*</b>	
<b>tamu, tetamu</b>	guest	<b>menembak</b>	to shoot
<b>tanam</b>		<b>tempat</b>	place
<b>menanam</b>	to plant	<b>temu*</b>	
<b>tanaman</b>	plants	<b>bertemu</b>	to meet
<b>tanda*</b>	a sign	<b>menemui</b>	meet
<b>menandakan</b>	to mean	<b>pertemuan</b>	meeting
<b>tanda tangan</b>	signature	<b>temu janji</b>	appointment
<b>menandatangani</b>	to sign	<b>tenaga</b>	energy
<b>tanding*</b>		<b>bertenaga</b>	with energy
<b>berstanding</b>	to complete	<b>tengah</b>	middle, centre
<b>petandingan</b>	competition	<b>tengkujuh</b>	monsoon
<b>tangis*</b>		<b>tentera</b>	soldier, army
<b>menangis</b>	to cry	<b>tentu</b>	sure, certain
<b>tangisan (n)</b>	cry	<b>tepat</b>	exactly
<b>tangkap*</b>		<b>tepi</b>	side
<b>menangkap</b>	to catch	<b>terang</b>	bright
<b>tani</b>		<b>terbang</b>	to fly
<b>pertanian</b>	agriculture	<b>penerbangan</b>	flight
<b>tapi, tetapi</b>	but	<b>terbit*</b>	
<b>taraf</b>	standard	<b>menerbit</b>	to publish
<b>- hidup</b>	standard of living	<b>penerbit</b>	publisher
<b>tarik</b>	to pull	<b>teriak</b>	to scream, to shout out
		<b>terik</b>	to shine brightly
		<b>terima*</b>	

<b>menerima</b>	to receive	<b>tumbuk*</b>	
<b>terima kasih</b>	thank you	<b>menumbuk</b>	to punch
<b>terlalu</b>	too	<b>tumpang*</b>	
<b>terpesona</b>	fascinated	<b>menumpang</b>	to share
<b>teruk</b>	hard, worse, serious	<b>penumpang</b>	passenger
<b>terus</b>	straightaway, straight ahead	<b>tumpu</b>	
<b>tetamu, tamu</b>	guests	<b>menumpu</b>	to concentrate
<b>para tamu</b>	guests	<b>tunang</b>	fiancé
<b>tetapi/tapi</b>	but	<b>bertunang</b>	to be engaged, to have a fiancé
<b>tiada</b>	none	<b>tunggu*</b>	
<b>ketiadaan</b>	the absence of	<b>menunggu</b>	to wait
<b>tiap</b>	every	<b>tunjuk*</b>	
<b>setiap</b>	every	<b>menunjuk</b>	to show
<b>tiap-tiap</b>		<b>pertunjukan</b>	a performance, show
<b>tiba</b>	to arrive	<b>turun</b>	to descend
<b>ketibaan</b>	arrival	<b>menurunkan</b>	to bring down st
<b>tiba-tiba</b>	suddenly	<b>turut*</b>	
<b>tidak/tak</b>	no/not	<b>menurut</b>	according to
<b>tidur</b>	to sleep	<b>ubat (n)</b>	medicine
<b>menidurkan</b>	to put to sleep	<b>berubat</b>	to go for treatment
<b>tiga</b>	three	<b>mengubati</b>	to treat
<b>tiket</b>	ticket	<b>perubatan</b>	medicine
<b>timbang*</b>		<b>ucap*</b>	
<b>menimbang</b>	to weigh, to give consideration	<b>berucap</b>	to give a speech, to talk
<b>timur</b>	east	<b>mengucap</b>	to say
<b>Tuhan</b>	God	<b>ucapan</b>	speech
<b>tukang</b>	worker trained for a certain skill	<b>udang</b>	prawn
		<b>udara</b>	air
<b>tukang masak</b>	chef, cook	<b>ujian</b>	test
<b>tukang kebun</b>	gardener	<b>ukur*</b>	
<b>tukar</b>		<b>mengukur</b>	to measure
<b>menukar</b>	to change	<b>ulang</b>	to repeat
<b>pertukaran</b>	exchange	<b>ulang kaji</b>	to revise
<b>tulis*</b>		<b>umat</b>	followers of a religion
<b>menulis</b>	to write	<b>umum</b>	general
<b>penulis</b>	writer	<b>mengumum-</b>	to announce
<b>penulisan</b>	result of writing		
<b>tulisan</b>	writing		

<b>ken</b>		<b>stora</b>	<b>noth</b>
<b>pengumuman</b>	announcement		
<b>umur</b>	age	wah	wow
<b>berumur</b>	to be of a certain age	wajah	the looks
<b>undang-undang</b>	law	wakil	representative
<b>universiti</b>	university	waktu	time, when
<b>untuk (prep)</b>	for	walaupun	nevertheless
<b>upacara</b>	event	wanita	although
<b>upah</b>	pay	wang	woman, lady
<b>mengupah</b>	to pay	wangi	money
<b>urus*</b>			aromatic, nice
<b>menguruskan</b>	to manage, to arrange	wartawan	smell
<b>pengurusan</b>	manager		reporter,
<b>usaha</b>	effort		journalist
<b>berusaha</b>	to try	ya	yes
<b>perusahaan</b>	industry	yang	that, which,
<b>utama</b>	main		who